TRADING TECHNOLOGIES®

X_TRADER®

User Manual

Version 7.7.5

Document Version 7.7.5.X.DV1 3/24/2010

Legal Notices

This document and all related computer programs, example programs, and all source code are the exclusive property of Trading Technologies International, Inc. (TT), and are protected by licensing agreements, copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized possession, reproduction, duplication, or dissemination of this document, or any portion of it, is illegal and may result in severe civil and criminal penalties.

Unauthorized reproduction of any TT software or proprietary information may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. Companies, names, and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of TT.

All trademarks displayed in this document are subject to the trademark rights of TT, or are used under agreement by TT. These trademarks include, but are not limited to, service brand names, slogans and logos and emblems including but not limited to: Trading Technologies®, the Trading Technologies Logo, TT™, X_TRADER®, X_RISK®, MD Trader®, Autospreader®, X_STUDY®, TT_TRADER®, TT CVD®, Autotrader™, TT Trainer™, TTNET™. All other referenced companies, individuals and trademarks retain their rights. All trademarks are the property of their respective owners. The unauthorized use of any trademark displayed in this document is strictly prohibited.

Copyright © 2004-2010 Trading Technologies International, Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

WHAT'S NEW IN 7.7.5 ..... **15**

JAPANESE GUI RELEASE 16
CONTROL PANEL MENUS 16
MARKET WINDOW 17
MD TRADER 18
PROPERTY TABS 18
MARKET EXPLORER 19
AUDIT TRAIL 20
ORDER BOOK, FILL WINDOW AND TRADE BOOK 20
TIME AND SALES AND CUSTOMER DEFAULTS 22
QUOTE BOARD AND SPREAD MATRIX 22
AUTOSPREADER AND AUTOTRADER 24

ABOUT THIS MANUAL **25**

INTRODUCTION TO X_TRADER® 25
CONVENTIONS 25
KEYBOARD FORMATS 26
RELATED DOCUMENTATION 26
X_TRADER TRADING SYSTEM 27
GLOBAL CUSTOMER SUPPORT CENTER 28
AUTOMATED PHONE MENU 28

GETTING STARTED **29**

LOGIN PROCEDURES 30
UNIVERSAL LOGIN PROCEDURES 34
RECOGNIZING ACTIVE EXCHANGES 37
MARKET EXPLORER 37
GUARDIAN 37
X_TRADER® PRO LICENSE 38
CREATING A CUSTOMER PROFILE 39
USING WORKSPACES 40
ENTERING A MARKET ORDER 40
NEW ELECTRONIC TRADERS 40
ORDER MESSAGES IN THE AUDIT TRAIL 41
EXITING X_TRADER 42
AUTOMATIC SHUTDOWN OF X_TRADER 42
USING CONTEXT SENSITIVE HELP 43

COMMON ADMINISTRATIVE TASKS **45**

POPULATING WINDOWS WITH CONTRACTS 46
USING THE TT MINIMIZER 48
FILTERING OVERVIEW 50
SETTING A COLUMN FILTER 50
CLEARING A COLUMN FILTER 51
CLEARING ALL FILTERS 51
SETTING AUTO FILTERS 52

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

EFFECTS OF FILTERS 53
FORMATTING FONTS 53
CHANGING THE FONT STYLE 54
CHANGING GLOBAL COLORS OF WINDOWS OR TEXT 54
CHANGING INDIVIDUAL COLORS OF GRIDS OR TEXT 55
FORMATTING GRIDS 57
SETTING THE DEFAULT VISIBLE COLUMNS 57
MOVING ROWS OR COLUMNS 58
HIDING ROWS OR COLUMNS 58
RESTORING HIDDEN ROWS OR COLUMNS 59
CHANGING THE HEIGHTS OF ROWS OR THE WIDTHS OF COLUMNS 60
FRAME COMMAND BAR OVERVIEW 61
RESIZING A WINDOW GRID 61
PRINTING 62

CONTROL PANEL OVERVIEW 63

OPENING A FUNCTIONAL WINDOW 64
WINDOW MENU 64
THE TOOLBAR 66
CHANGING THE SIZE OF THE TOOLBAR 67
WORKSPACE SETUP 68
MULTIPLE WORKSPACES 68
CREATING A WORKSPACE 69
SAVING A WORKSPACE 70
OPENING A WORKSPACE 71
MANAGING A STARTUP WORKSPACE 72
FIXING A WORKSPACE 73
DELETING A WORKSPACE 73
PRODUCT GROUP INFORMATION SETUP 74
PRODUCT GROUP INFORMATION FIELD/COLUMN DESCRIPTIONS 75
ADDING A PRODUCT GROUP 77
CHANGING A PRODUCT GROUP SETTINGS 79
DELETING A PRODUCT GROUP 79
ASSOCIATING A PRODUCT TO A PRODUCT GROUP 80
DISASSOCIATING A PRODUCT FROM A PRODUCT GROUP 81
SPREAD TABLES SETUP 82
ADDING A SPREAD TABLE 83
COPYING A SPREAD TABLE 84
SAVING A SPREAD TABLE 84
REMOVING A SPREAD TABLE 84
CUSTOMER DEFAULTS SETUP 85
CUSTOMER DEFAULT FEATURES 86
TTUS INTEGRATION WITH CUSTOMER DEFAULTS 86
CUSTOMER DEFAULTS DIALOG BOX FIELD DESCRIPTIONS 87
CREATING A CUSTOMER DEFAULTS PROFILE 89
CHANGING A CUSTOMER DEFAULTS PROFILE 90
DELETING A CUSTOMER DEFAULTS PROFILE 90
SETTING CUSTOMER DEFAULTS TO READ-ONLY 91
SHARING YOUR CUSTOMER DEFAULTS PROFILE 92
USING THE CUSTOMER LIST 93
One Customer Name Entry 93
ORDER ENTRY CUSTOMER SELECTION OVERVIEW 94

PROPERTIES MENU OVERVIEW 95
PROPERTY TAB NAMES 95
TRADING TAB 96
Admin Alert Messages 101
ORDER ENTRY TAB 102
FILL TAB 106
ORDERS TAB 109
AUDIT TRAIL TAB 111
SOUNDS TAB 113
Suggestions 114
Contract High and Low Sounds 114
Adding an Event Sound 115
Changing or Removing an Event Sound 115
COLOR TAB 116
CHANGING GLOBAL COLORS OF WINDOWS OR TEXT 119
SPREAD MATRIX TAB 121
Example: Spread Matrix Outright Price Display 123
TIME AND SALES TAB 124
MD TRADING TAB 125
Managing TradeSounds 129
Hearing TradeSounds 130
MD DISPLAY TAB 131
MD COLOR TAB 135
MD ADVANCED TAB 138
QUOTE BOARD TAB 142
HOTKEYS TAB 143
Hotkey Restrictions 144
PROPERTIES AUTOSPREADER TAB 145
CONTROL PANEL ICON AND MENU DESCRIPTIONS 146
FILE MENU 147
SETTINGS MENU 148
HELP MENU 149
ADDING HIGH AND LOW ALERTS 150
STARTING PLUG-INS 151

AUDIT TRAIL OVERVIEW 155

HELD ORDERS 156
FILTERS 156
AUDIT TRAIL HISTORY 156
AUDIT TRAIL COLUMN DESCRIPTIONS 157

AUDIT TRAIL CONTEXT MENU 158

AUDIT TRAIL MESSAGE TYPES 159
ORDER MESSAGES 159
EXCHANGE ANNOUNCEMENTS 159
GATEWAY ALERTS 159
ERROR MESSAGES 159
CUSTOMIZING EXCHANGE ANNOUNCEMENTS 160
PROPERTIES FOR THE AUDIT TRAIL WINDOW 161
STORING FILES 162
CONCISE AUDIT TRAIL 162

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

MARKET EXPLORER OVERVIEW **163**

MARKET EXPLORER FIELD DESCRIPTIONS 164
MARKET EXPLORER ADVANCED FIELD DESCRIPTIONS 165
SEARCHING FOR A PRODUCT 166
RENAMING CONTRACTS 167
POPULATING WINDOWS WITH CONTRACTS 168

MARKET WINDOW OVERVIEW **171**

ORDER ENTRY PANE OVERVIEW 172
ORDER ENTRY PANE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS 172
USING FLOATING ORDER ENTRY 176
Floating Order Entry Notes 178
USING MULTIPLE FLOATING ORDER ENTRY WINDOWS 179
SUBMITTING AN ORDER USING THE ORDER ENTRY PANE 180
SUBMITTING A MUTUAL OFFSET ORDER 181
USING THE MOUSE TO CONTROL ORDER QUANTITY AND PRICE 182
CUSTOMIZING THE QUANTITY BUTTONS 182
SETTING THE DEFAULT QUANTITY 183
CLOSING THE ORDER ENTRY PANE 184
CONFIRMING THE STATUS OF MARKET ORDERS 184
ESTABLISHING AVAILABLE CREDIT 185
SYNTHETIC DISCLOSED QUANTITY ORDERS 185
MARKET GRID PANE OVERVIEW 186
CUSTOMIZING THE VIEWABLE MARKET GRID COLUMNS 186
MARKET GRID PANE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS 187
USING THE MARKET GRID CONTEXT MENU 190
USING TABBED WINDOWS 193
ADDING SPACER ROWS 195
HIGHLIGHTING IN THE MARKET GRID 196
Highlighting Your Orders 196
Best Price Highlighting 196
VIEWING PRICE TREND INDICATORS IN THE MARKET GRID 197
OPENING WHOLESALE ORDERS 197
USING THE MARKET DEPTH FEATURE 198
Adding Price Averages and Accumulations to the Market Grid 199
Market Depth Color Coding 199
MANAGING LINKS TO EXCEL 200
Creating Links 200
GENERATING AN RTD FORMULA 202
VIEWING YOUR ESTIMATED POSITION IN QUEUE 203
Market Grid 203
VIEWING LIVE-ONLY CONTRACTS 204
FLOATING DEPTH WINDOW 205
FLOATING DEPTH WINDOW EXAMPLES 206
TRADING WITH THE ORDER BAR 207
ORDER BAR FEATURES 207
ORDER BAR PROCEDURES 207
MODIFYING AN ORDER WITH THE ORDER BAR 209
Keyboard Trading with the Order Bar 210
TT Default Map 210
Description 210

Keyboard Trading Procedures 211
CROSS TRADES OVERVIEW 212
CROSS AND CROSS WITH TRADES 213
CROSS ORDER EXECUTION AND CBOT 214
CLICK TRADING OVERVIEW 215
ENABLING/DISABLING CLICK TRADING 215
SETTING DEFAULT PROPERTIES FOR CLICK TRADING 216
USING CLICK TRADING IN THE MARKET GRID 216
EUREX BLOCK ORDER OVERVIEW 218
SUBMITTING A EUREX BLOCK ORDER (BUY SIDE) 219
MODIFYING A EUREX BLOCK ORDER TRADE 219
ACCEPTING A EUREX BLOCK OR VOLATILITY ORDER (SELL SIDE) 220
MAKING A BLOCK OR VOLATILITY ORDER INQUIRY 221
ENTERING ORDERS USING THE KEYBOARD 222
KEYBOARD ENTRY 222
BUY AND SELL HOTKEYS 223
CONTROLLING QUANTITY OR PRICE USING THE KEYBOARD 223
ORDER CHANGE DIALOG BOX OVERVIEW 224
USING THE ORDER CHANGE DIALOG BOX 224
SETTING IMPLIEDS 225
VIEWING IMPLIEDS 226
IMPLIED IN 227
IMPLIED OUT 227
IMPLIEDS FROM IMPLIEDS 228
IMPLIED QUANTITIES 228
QUOTING OVERVIEW 229
QUOTING ADDITIONS TO THE MARKET GRID PANE 229
ENABLING QUOTING 231
EDITING, GENERATING, AND SENDING QUOTES 233
TRACKING QUOTES 234
ACTIVATING OR DEACTIVATING A STRIKE OR AN EXPIRATION 234
ACTIVATING/DEACTIVATING MULTIPLE STRIKES OR EXPIRATIONS 235
DELETING MASS OR INDIVIDUAL QUOTES 235
DISABLING QUOTING 236
STATUS OF QUOTES AT X_TRADER SHUTDOWN 236
TRADING EURODOLLAR OPTIONS 237
Market Grid Changes 237
Request For Quote (RFQ) Window 237
Sequence of Events 238
STRATEGIES OVERVIEW 239
CREATED OUTRIGHTS AND X_TRADER 240
SFE CUSTOM MARKET STRATEGIES 240
CREATING A NEW STRATEGY 241
ADDING A STRATEGY TO THE MARKET WINDOW 242
TRADING A SPREAD OR STRATEGY 242
Trading Strategies with a Maximum Limits 242
RENAMING AN EXISTING STRATEGY 243
RECREATING A SPREAD STRATEGY 243
AMENDING A STRATEGY 244
DELETING AN EXISTING STRATEGY 244

MD TRADER® OVERVIEW 245

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

MD TRADER FIELD DESCRIPTIONS 246
MD TRADER FEATURES 249
POPULATING MD TRADER 250
USING THE MD TRADER CONTEXT MENU 252
USING MD TRADER 253
RECOGNIZING AVERAGE PRICE OF OPEN POSITION 253
CENTERING THE MARKET 253
CHANGING ORDER QUANTITY USING A MOUSE 254
CHANGING WORKING ORDERS 255
DELETING ORDERS 255
READING THE NET CHANGE INDICATOR IN MD TRADER 256
SELECTING A CUSTOMER PROFILE IN MD TRADER 256
SETTING THE DEFAULT QUANTITY 257
SETTING THE TRADE QUANTITY 257
SETTING TIME IN FORCE 258
TEXT AND GRID COLORS 259
SETTING MD TRADER PROPERTIES 260
AUTO CENTERING IN MD TRADER 261
AVERAGE PRICE HIGHLIGHTING 261
CONSOLIDATING PRICES 262
CREATING A USER-DEFINED PRICE COLUMN 263
Invalid Calculations in the UDP 264
DISPLAYING A SMALL MD TRADER 265
Titlebar Buttons 265
DISPLAYING THE MID-POINT OF INSIDE MARKET 266
KEEPING MD TRADER ON TOP 266
ONE-CLICK TRADING WITH MD TRADER 267
PLACING STOP ORDERS 268
SETTING THE MAXIMUM TRADE QUANTITY 270
TRADING OUT OF A POSITION 270
VIEWING YOUR ESTIMATED POSITION IN QUEUE 272
MD Trader 272
Color Codes 272
CUSTOMIZING MD TRADER 273
ADDING SOUND TO MD TRADER 273
ADDING TIME AND SALES 274
CUSTOMIZING THE DEFAULT QUANTITY BUTTONS IN MD TRADER 275
MANAGING LINKS IN MD TRADER 276
Using the Laser Line 277
MOVING GRID COLUMNS 278
RESIZING THE MD TRADER WINDOW 278
USING THE MOUSE TO CONTROL THE ZOOM FEATURE 278
KEYBOARD TRADING IN MD TRADER 279
FUNCTION HOTKEYS 279
TT Default Map 279
MAIN HOTKEYS 280
TT Default Map 280
UNRESTRICTED KEYBOARD FUNCTIONS 281
ENABLING KEYBOARD TRADING IN MD TRADER 282
CHANGING HOTKEYS IN MD TRADER 283
KEYBOARD PROCEDURES 284
Entering a Buy Order Using the Keyboard 284
Entering a Sell Order Using the Keyboard 285

Enter the Order Quantity Using the Keyboard 285
Deleting All Orders, Working Bids, or Working Offers Using the Keyboard 285
Loading the Net Position in the Order Entry Field Using the Keyboard 286
Sending a Market Order Using the Keyboard 286
Setting the Limit Price Using the Keyboard 286
Sweeping the Market Using the Keyboard 287
Hitting the Bid Using the Keyboard 287
Taking the Offer Using the Keyboard 287
Dime the Offer Using the Keyboard 288
Dime the Bid Using the Keyboard 288
Join the Bid Using the Keyboard 288
Join the Offer Using the Keyboard 289
Combo Dime the Bid or Offer Using the Keyboard 289
Combo Join the Bid and Offer Using the Keyboard 289
Game Pad Control in MD Trader 290

ORDER TYPES 291

EXCHANGES AND ORDER TYPES 292
ORDER RESTRICTION DEFINITIONS 292
BEST LIMIT 293
ICEBERG 294
Characteristics 294
Deleting 294
Rounding 294
Procedure 294
IF TOUCHED 296
Market Grid 296
MD Trader 296
MARKET 297
Market Grid 297
MD Trader 297
MARKET ON OPEN (MOO) 297
MARKET ON CLOSE (MOC) 298
MARKET TO LIMIT 299
MINIMUM VOLUME 300
ORDER CANCELS ORDER 300
Cursor Changes 301
Strategy Types 301
Order Book Additions 301
Invalid OCO Price Levels 301
Placing OCO Orders 302
STOP ORDER 303
Stop Trigger Rules 303
Invalid Price Levels 303
Placing Stop Orders 304
TRAILING STOPS 305
Trailing Stop Sell 305
Trailing Stop Buy 305
Trailing Stop Limit Orders 305
VOLATILITY 305

SPREAD MATRIX OVERVIEW 307

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

GENERATING A SPREAD MATRIX 308
CUSTOMIZING THE SPREAD MATRIX 309
READING THE SPREAD MATRIX 310
TRADING WITH THE SPREAD MATRIX 311
CHANGING A WORKING ORDER – SPREAD AND BUTTERFLY CONDOR MATRICES 312
CANCELING ORDERS 312
SETTING OUTRIGHT OR SPREAD PRICES 313
SPREAD AND BUTTERFLY CONDOR MATRIX PROPERTIES 313
SPREAD MATRIX CALCULATIONS 314
SPREAD MATRIX CONTEXT MENU 315
BUTTERFLY CONDOR MATRIX OVERVIEW 316
GENERATING A BUTTERFLY CONDOR MATRIX 317
BUTTERFLY MATRIX CALCULATIONS 318

QUOTE BOARD OVERVIEW 319

QUOTE BOARD FEATURES 320
POPULATING QUOTE BOARD 320
READING THE QUOTE BOARD 323
MANAGING THE QUOTE BOARD PROPERTIES 324
QUOTE BOARD COLOR PROPERTIES 324
USING A FLOATING ORDER ENTRY IN QUOTE BOARD 325
USING THE QUOTE BOARD CONTEXT MENU 325

ORDER BOOK OVERVIEW 327

FILTERS 328
TRADER IDENTIFICATION 328
TOP PANE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS 329
GRID SUMMARY 330
ORDER BOOK CONTEXT MENU 331
PERFORMING ORDER STATUS INQUIRIES 332
REMOVING STALE ORDERS 332
ALTERING ORDERS IN THE ORDER BOOK 333
CHANGE AN ORDER 334
CANCELING/REPLACING AN ORDER 335
MODIFYING AN ORDER WITH THE ORDER BAR 336
CHANGING TRIGGER PRICE ORDERS 337
USING THE HOLD FEATURE 337
USING TIF OPTIONS 339
DELETING AN ORDER 340
AFTER THE DELETE REQUEST IS SENT 341
FLOATING ORDER BOOK OVERVIEW 342
USING THE FLOATING ORDER BOOK 343
KEYBOARD TRADING IN THE FLOATING ORDER BOOK 345
TT Default Map 345
Description 345

FILL WINDOW OVERVIEW 347

MANUAL FILLS 348
FILTERS 348

FILLS ALERT DIALOG BOX 349
FILLS PANE OVERVIEW 350
FILLS PANE GRID SUMMARY 351
FILLS PANE CONTEXT MENU 352
START OF DAY FILLS 353
POSITION PANE OVERVIEW 354
POSITION PANE GRID SUMMARY 355
POSITION PANE CONTEXT MENU 356
CALCULATING PROFIT AND LOSS 357
Open P/L Based On Formula 357
P/L Column Display 358
MANAGING MANUAL FILLS 359
ADD MANUAL FILLS DIALOG BOX FIELD DESCRIPTIONS 360
ADDING A MANUAL FILL 360
DELETING A MANUAL FILL 362
SAVING A MANUAL FILL 362
FAST FILLS PANE OVERVIEW 363
FAST FILL NOTES 363
EUREX FAST FILLS INFORMATION 364
FFNet and NetQty Synchronization 364
FAST FILLS PANE CONTEXT MENU 364

TRADE BOOK OVERVIEW 365

TRADE BOOK GRID SUMMARY 366
TRADE BOOK CONTEXT MENU 367
SHOWING OR HIDING PARTIAL FILLS 368
DISPLAYING FILL DETAILS IN THE TRADE BOOK WINDOW 368
SORTING TRADE BOOK DATA 369

TIME AND SALES OVERVIEW 371

COLUMN DESCRIPTIONS 372
FILTERS 372
POPULATING THE TIME AND SALES WINDOW 373
READING THE TIME AND SALES WINDOW 375
RECOGNIZING COLOR CODES 375
HIDING TIME AND SALES COLUMNS 376
TIME AND SALES CONTEXT MENU 377
TIME AND SALES FILTERS OVERVIEW 377
FILTERING ON QUANTITY FOR SPECIFIC CONTRACTS 378
SAVING TIME AND SALES INFORMATION 378
TIME AND SALES PROPERTIES TAB 379

WHOLESALE TRADING OVERVIEW 381

WHOLESALE TRADING AUDIT TRAIL MESSAGES 381
WHOLESALE TRADING TYPES 382
WHOLESALE TRADING TYPES AND SUPPORTING EXCHANGES 382
BLOCK TRADE OVERVIEW 383
BLOCK TRADE WINDOW 384
SUBMITTING A BLOCK TRADE 385

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

BASIS TRADE OVERVIEW 386
BASIS TRADE WINDOW 387
SUBMITTING A BASIS TRADE 388
AGAINST ACTUALS TRADE OVERVIEW 389
AGAINST ACTUALS TRADE WINDOW 390
SUBMITTING AN AGAINST ACTUALS TRADE 391
EXCHANGE FOR SWAP OVERVIEW 392
EXCHANGE FOR SWAP WINDOW 393
SUBMITTING AN EXCHANGE FOR SWAP TRADE 394
FLEX OPTIONS OVERVIEW 395
FLEX OPTIONS WINDOW 395
SUBMITTING A FLEX OPTIONS TRADE 396
ENTERING PROF TRADES 397
PROF TRADE FIELDS 397
TRADABLE INSTRUMENTS 398
STRATEGY WHOLESALE TRADES 399
EURONEXT AND GUARANTEED CROSSING 401
ASSET ALLOCATION METHODS 402
ENTERING ASSET ALLOCATION ORDERS 403
Half Trades Example: 403
One Trader Example: 404

TRADING SPECIALTY EXCHANGES 405

TRADING BROKERTEC 406
TRADABLE PRODUCTS 406
ORDER TYPES 406
PRICING NOTATIONS 407
PRICING FORMAT 407
MARKET GRID 407
MD TRADER 408
EXCEL LINKS 408
AUTOTRADER AND AUTOSPREADER 409
CLICK TRADING 409
UNIQUE FUNCTIONALITY IN BROKERTEC 409
Placing Passive and Aggressive Orders 410
The Auto Aggressive Property 410
Working-Up Orders 412
Flashing Quantity and Price during Workup 412
Send Quote Order Property 413
Leave Checkbox 413
Hold In Timer 413
Autotrader Tick Formula 414
TRADING EBS 415
FOREX 415
NDFS 415
TRADING CONTRACTS IN THE EBS QUOTE BOARD 416
Keyboard Configuration 418
Reading the EBS Quote Board 419
CUSTOMIZING THE EBS QUOTE BOARD 420
Quote Board tab 421
Hotkeys tab 422
MD Trading tab 422

Color tab ... 423
TRADING EBS CONTRACTS IN MD TRADER ... 424
EBS CONTRACT NOTES ... 426
TRADING ICE ... 427
CLEARING ... 427
MARKET EXPLORER ... 428
Listing ... 428
IMPLIED PRICING ... 429
TRADING ... 429
SWITCHING BETWEEN CONTRACTS AND FLOW ... 429
CONTRACTS VS. FLOW EXAMPLES ... 430
ORDER TYPE AND RESTRICTIONS ... 430
TRADING STATES ... 431
FILL WINDOW AND P&L ... 431
UNDERSTANDING DELIVERY AND FLOW ... 432
Further Examples ... 432
TRADING SFE ... 433
IMPLIED ASTERISK ... 433
CUSTOM MARKET STRATEGY ... 433
POST-FILL ACCOUNT NUMBERS ... 433
ADDING AN ACCOUNT NUMBER ... 434
TRADING TOCOM ... 435

APPENDIX: GRID COLUMN DESCRIPTIONS ... 437

INDEX ... 443

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

What's New in 7.7.5

Trading Technologies continues its effort to provide you with the quickest, most efficient and versatile trading software with the release of X_TRADER®.

New Features in X_TRADER include:	
Japanese GUI Release	X_TRADER now offers a fully localized interface in Japanese.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

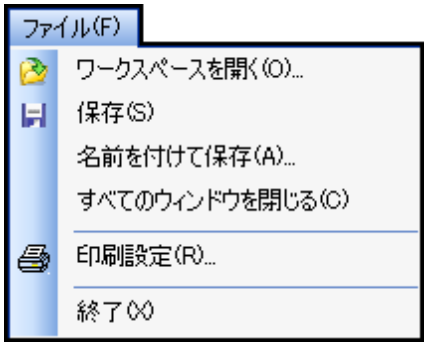
Japanese GUI Release

X_TRADER now offers a fully localized interface in Japanese. The localization includes major windows, fields, context menus, properties and some audit trail messages. In addition, the online Help and user manuals are also available in Japanese.

Here is a sample of some of the screens which have been translated:

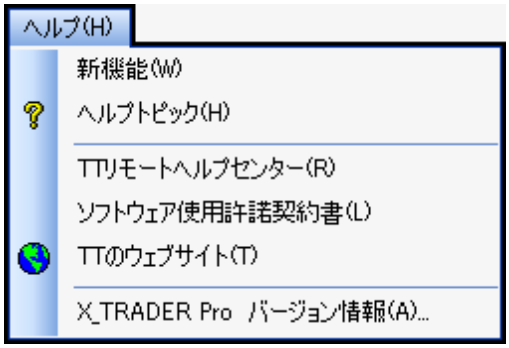
Control Panel Menus

Window Menu English and Japanese



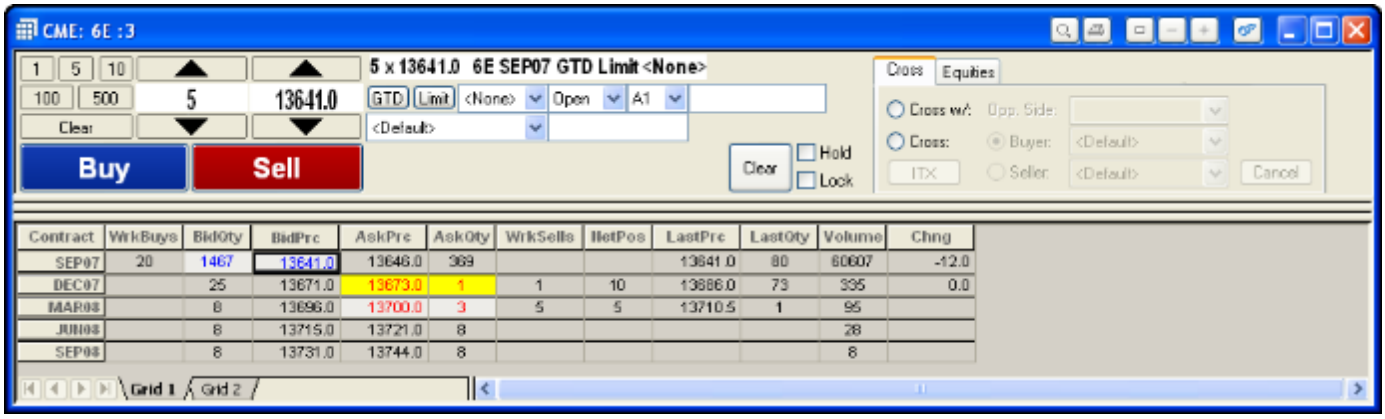
File Menu Japanese

Settings Menu Japanese

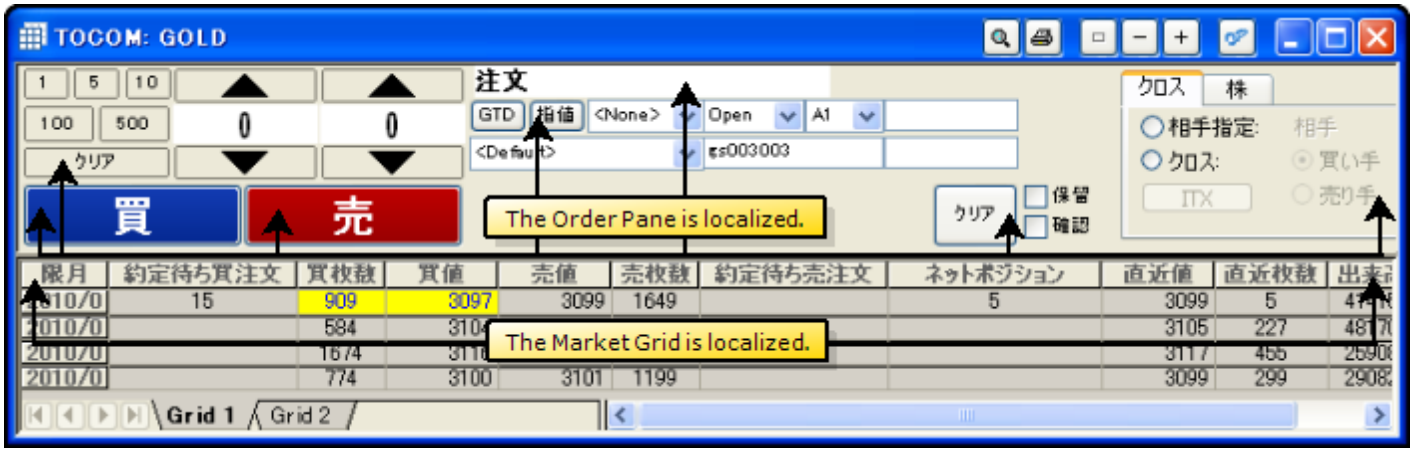


Help Menu Japanese

Market Window



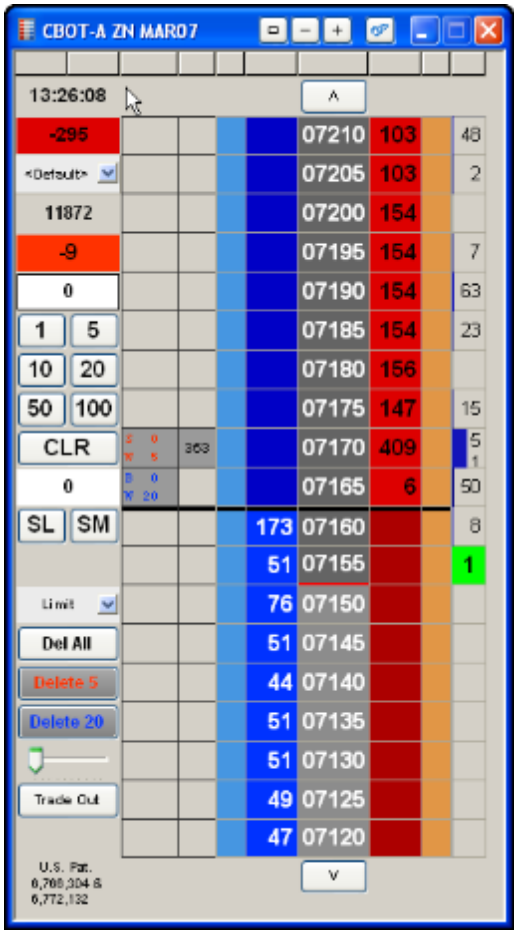
Market Window English



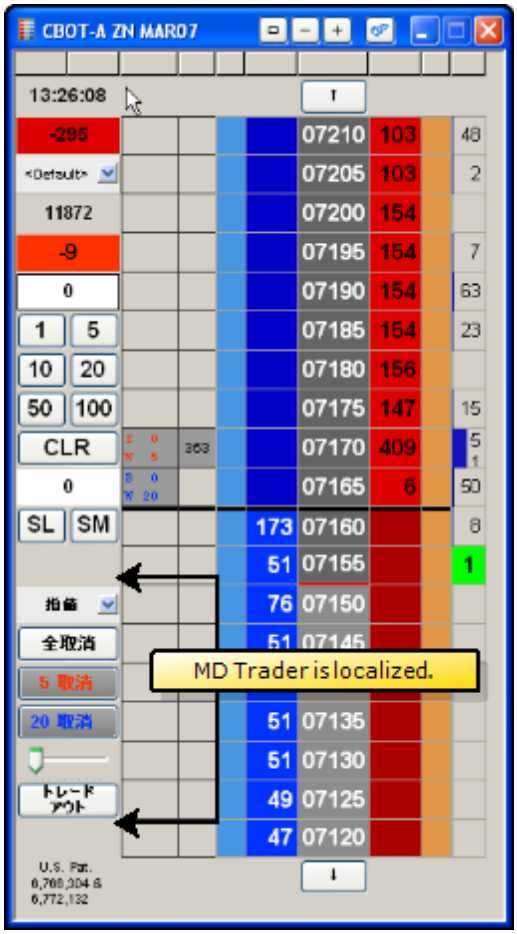
Market Window Japanese

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

MD Trader



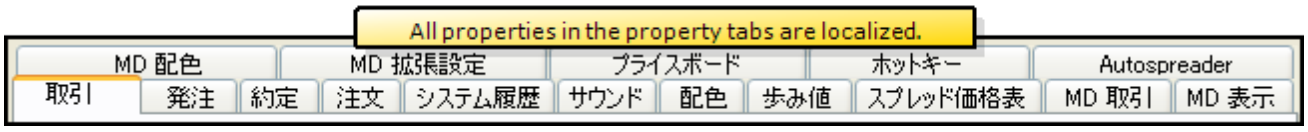
MD Trader English



MD Trader Japanese

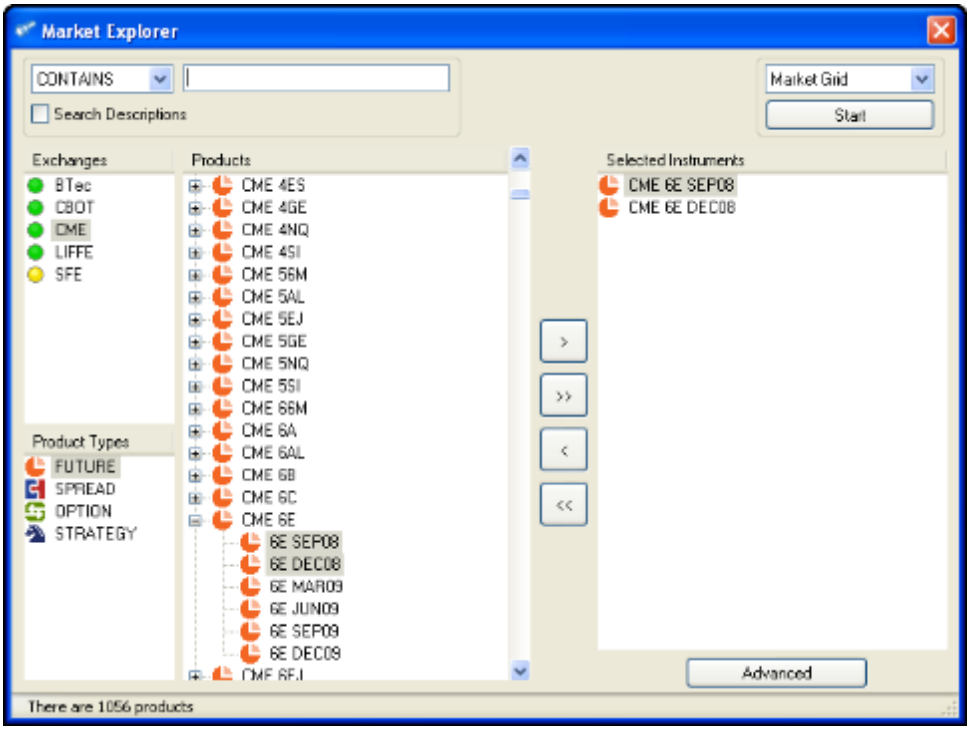
Property Tabs

Properties English

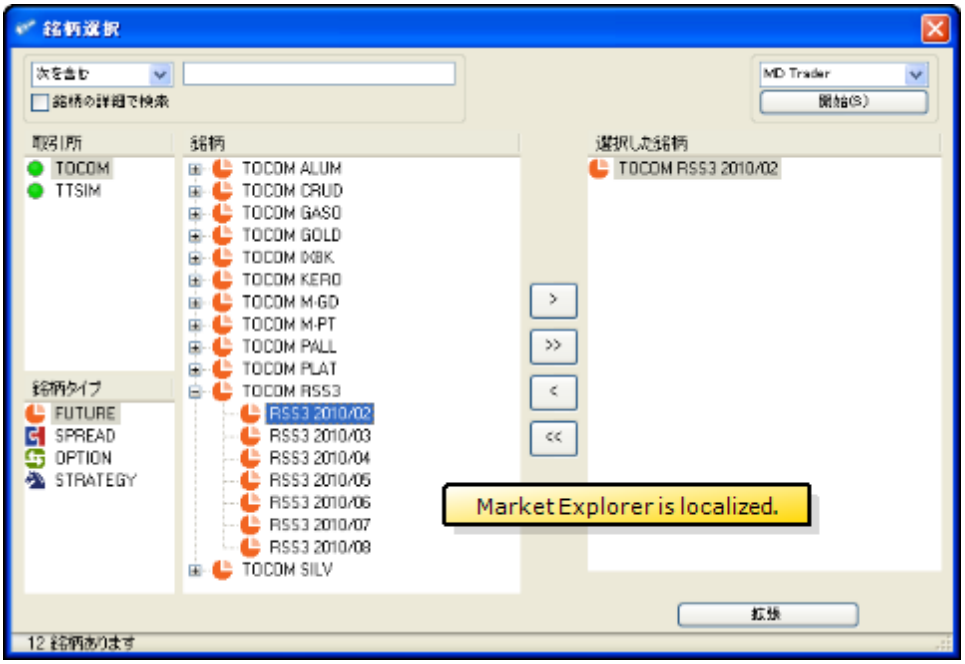


Properties Japanese

Market Explorer



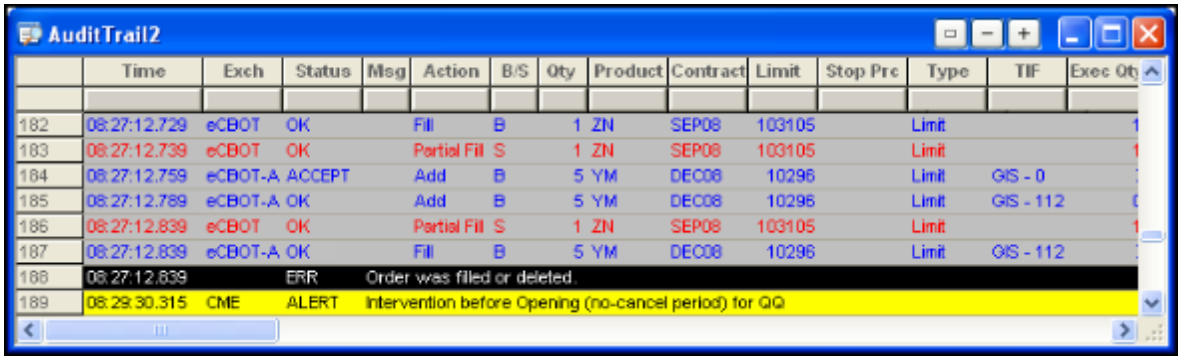
Market Explorer English



Market Explorer Japanese

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

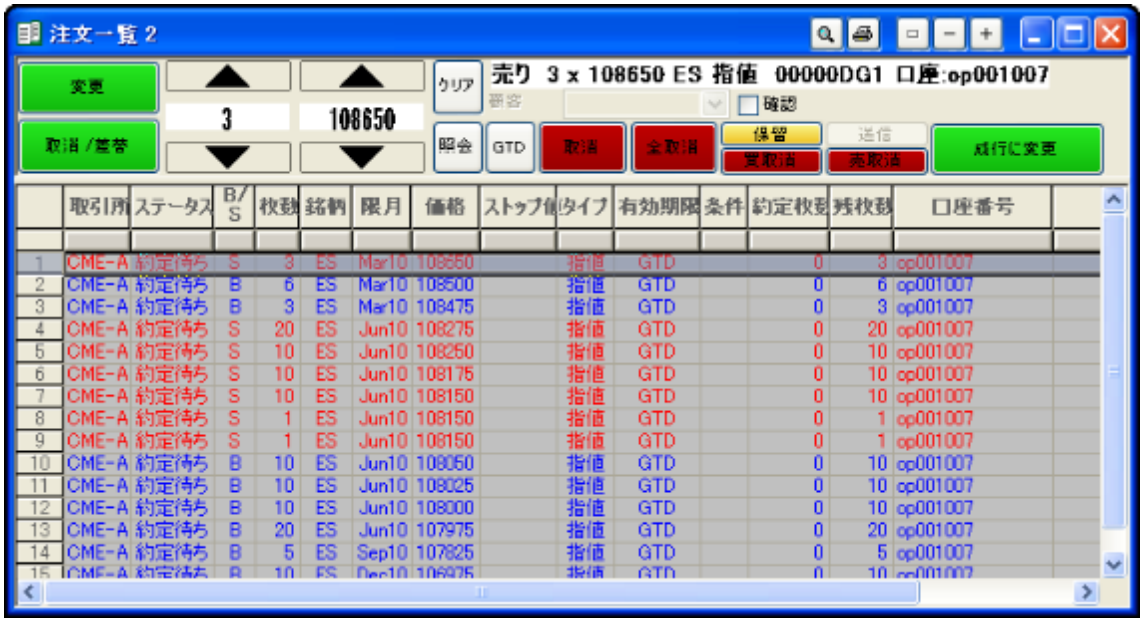
Audit Trail



Audit Trail English

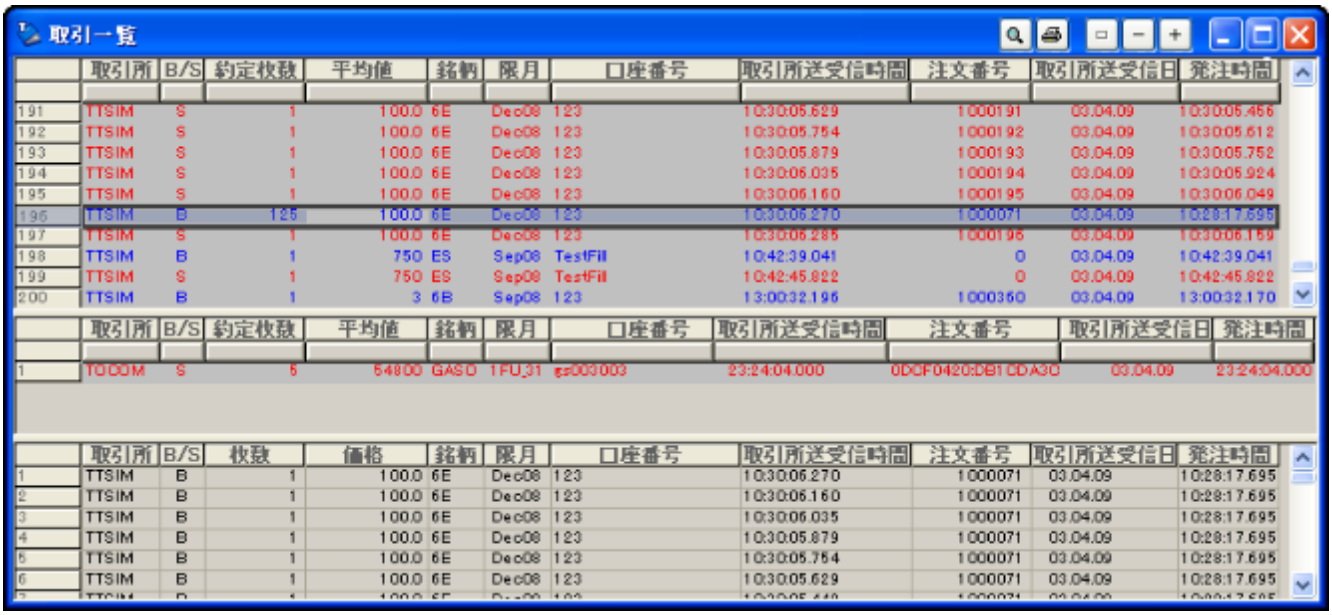
Audit Trail Japanese

Order Book, Fill Window and Trade Book



Order Book Japanese

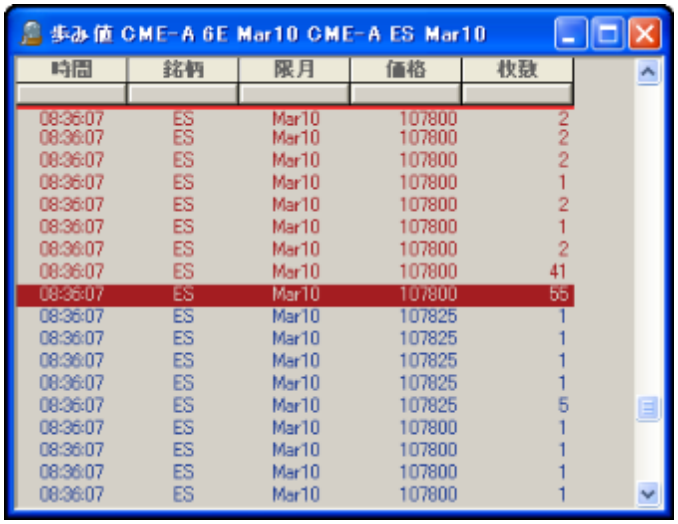
Fill Window Japanese



Trade Book Japanese

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

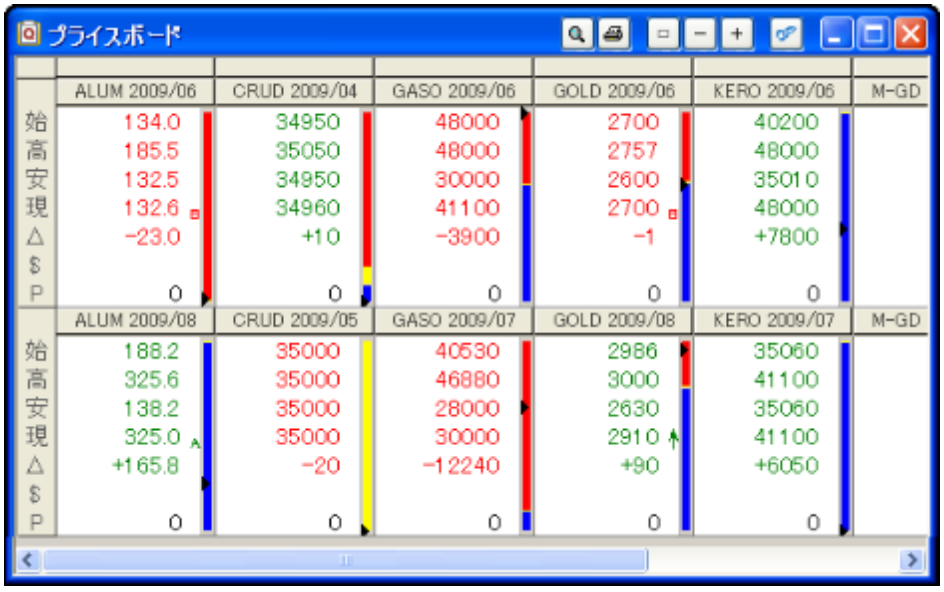
Time and Sales and Customer Defaults



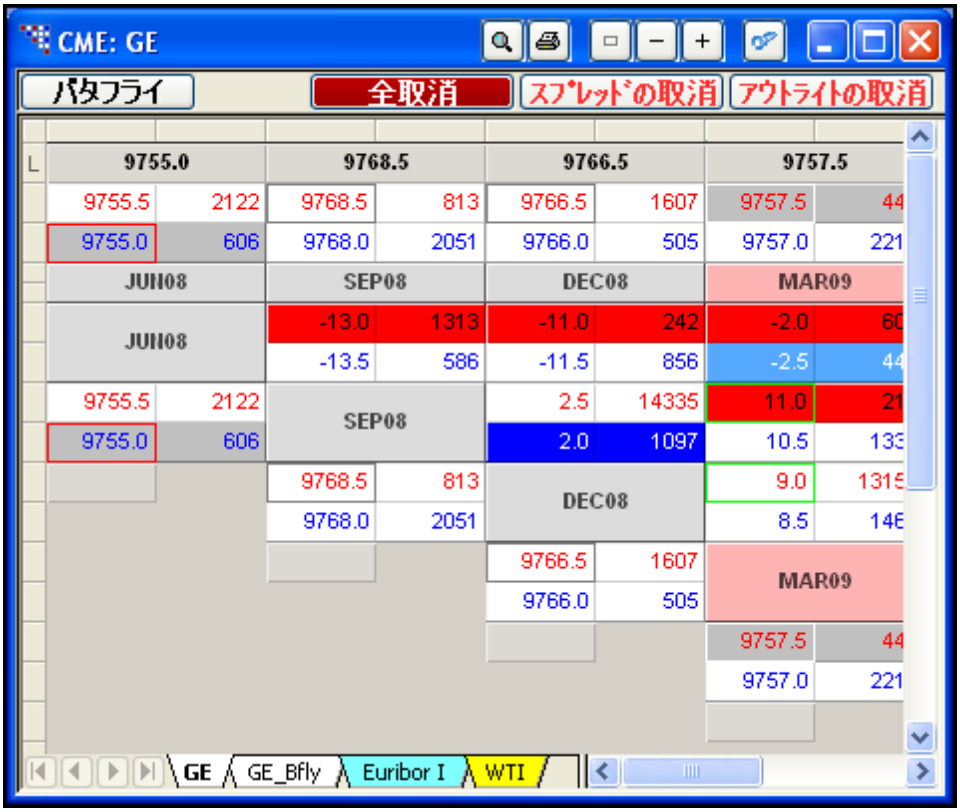
Time and Sales Japanese

Customer Defaults Japanese

Quote Board and Spread Matrix



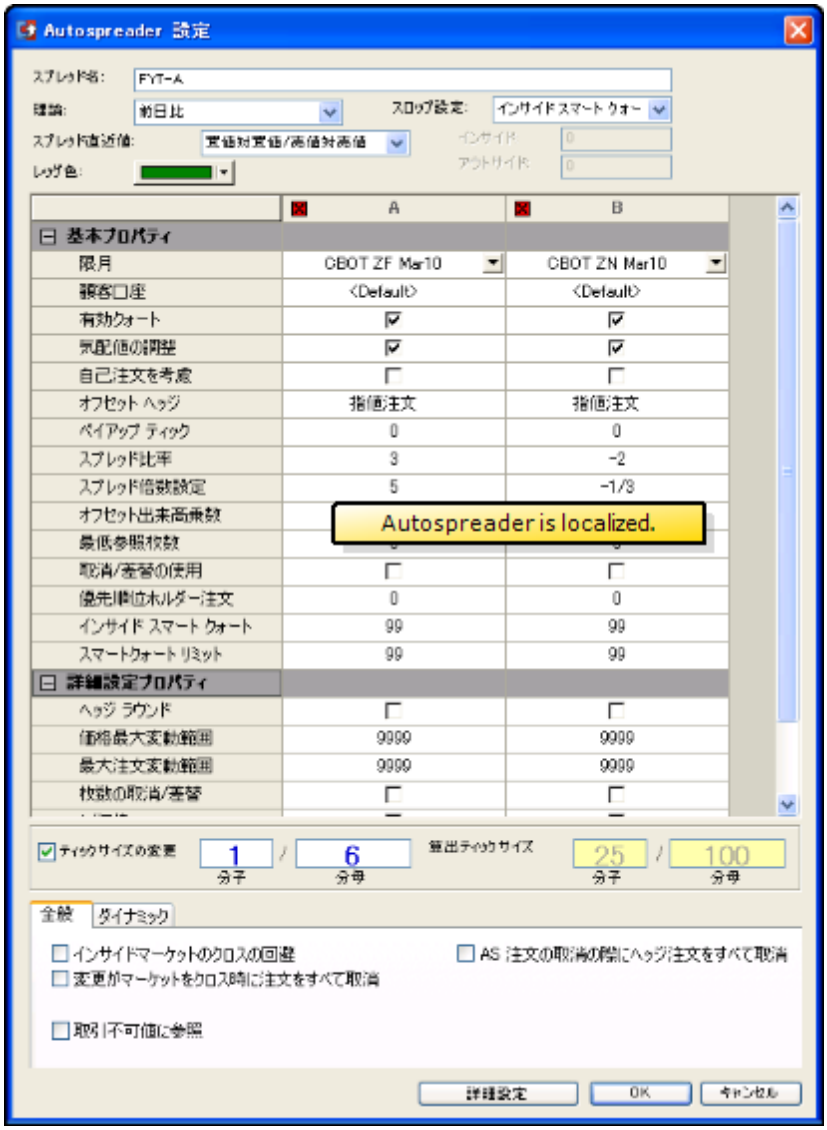
Quote Board Japanese



Spread Matrix Japanese

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Autospreader and Autotrader



Autospreader Japanese

Autotrader Japanese

About This Manual

Introduction to X_TRADER®

This documentation contains both general and specific information, including procedures designed to aid you in getting started with the application. This is not intended as a tutorial of every function and option available in X_TRADER, nor will it substitute for the training you receive from your Trading Technologies representatives.

Warning! TT recommends you practice trading with TT products in a simulated environment before actually performing live trades.

Conventions

This guide uses a set of terms, symbols, and typographic conventions to categorize specific information. Familiarity with these conventions helps you use this guide more effectively.

This guide uses the following icon:

▶: A procedure that you should follow to complete a task.

This guide uses the following text conventions:

Convention	Use
ALL CAPITALS	Indicates operating system commands, and acronyms
`Courier`	Indicates examples and anything that you must type exactly as it appears. For example, if you are asked to type show version, you would type all the characters shown in Courier exactly as they are printed.
Bold	Indicates menu items, command buttons, folder/directory names, file names, window names, dialog box names and field names. Procedures contain bolded items as well.
Italic	Indicates variables, including variable text. Variable text is used when dialog boxes or their components are not labeled. Variable text is also used for labels that change dynamically based on their current context. The wording of variable text does not exactly match what you see on your screen.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Keyboard Formats

All key names are shown using small capital letters. For example, the Control key is shown as CTRL. The UP ARROW, DOWN ARROW, LEFT ARROW, and RIGHT ARROW KEYS are collectively referred to as the arrow keys.

Key combinations and key sequences appear in the following formats:

Format	Meaning
Key1+Key2	A plus sign (+) between key names means to press and hold down the first key, while pressing the second key. For example, "Press ALT+TAB" means to hold down the ALT key while pressing the TAB key.
Key1, Key 2	A comma between key names means to press and release the keys one after another. For example, "Press ALT, F, O means to press and release the ALT key, press and release the F key, and then press and release the O key.

Related Documentation

This guide is part of comprehensive Trading Technologies documentation and online Help systems that include:

- Guardian Help
- X_RISK 7.3 Help
- X_STUDY Feature Guide
- X_STUDY Online Help
- X_TRADER Autospreader Feature Guide
- X_TRADER Autotrader Feature Guide
- X_TRADER Online Help

X_TRADER Trading System

Trading Technologies X_TRADER Trading System gives you and your customers the best technological edge in the business. X_TRADER is the fastest, most adaptable front-end trading screen for futures trading. Combining universal exchange access, high performance, and full customization, X_TRADER, with its sophisticated trading tools, enhances your presence in all the world's open-access electronic markets.

X_TRADER is designed to meet the demands of institutional brokers and professional traders globally. It facilitates easy order entry, order routing, and position management. Its customizable windows allow you to execute and track the complete life cycle of a trade:

- Flexible market window for easy order entry and depth of market
- Extensive order book displaying working orders and editing functions
- Real-time position management window including fill details and real time P&L
- Comprehensive audit trail detailing transactions over a ten-day period

X_TRADER enables you to execute trades fast. Speed combined with flexibility gives X_ TRADER users a distinct advantage in today's fiercely competitive global market.

X_TRADER Pro is an add-on to the standard X_TRADER software package. This add-on automatically installs with X_TRADER, but can only be activated by the purchase of an X_ TRADER Pro license. X_TRADER Pro consists of the Autotrader and Autospreader tools.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Global Customer Support Center

Trading Technologies Global Customer Support Center (CSC) has three primary locations: Chicago, London and Singapore.

For a comprehensive list of phone numbers and our email address, please see our support Web site at: http://www.tradingtechnologies.com/support.aspx.

Automated Phone Menu

To ensure your call is routed to the Customer Support Representative who can best answer your question, TT uses an automated menu to route calls for the Client Support Center.

Upon calling the Customer Support Center, you hear the following prompts:

- For Non-Support related calls, press 0.

  Example: Use to reach specific individuals or other departments such as Sales, Account Management or Finance.

- For front-end "how-to" questions, relating to applications such as X_TRADER or X_RISK, press 1.

  Example: Use for questions regarding functional, setup, or optimization.

- To report front-end software issues, press 2.

  Example: Use when reporting software issues relating to applications such as X_TRADER, X_RISK.

- To report gateway or server software issues, press 3.

  Example: Use when reporting software issues relating to TT Gateways - including TTSIM/Trainer, WAN Routers, Remote Host Servers and TTM.

- To report FIX Adapter or FIX Gateway software issues, press 4.

  Example: Use when reporting software issues specifically related to a TT FIX Adapter or a TT FIX Gateway.

CHAPTER 1

Getting Started

This section lists the minimum steps necessary to begin using X_TRADER. In addition, your particular trading environment (e.g., back office requirements or quoting) may require you to perform additional steps.

Advanced features and functionality are described in their respective sections. For advanced customization refer to **Common Administrative Tasks** on page 45.

Warning! This section is not intended to replace training provided by Trading Technologies, but rather to supplement it. We strongly suggest that you perform these steps in a simulation environment prior to submitting live trades.

Note: Simulation mode points to an exchange's dedicated simulation environment. You must have an appropriate multicast address and/or access to make it work.

To set X_TRADER to Simulation mode:

After installing X_TRADER, you may want to practice trading in a simulated environment.

1. From your desktop toolbar in the lower right corner of your screen, double-click the TT icon.
2. From the **Guardian** window, click the **Mode** menu.
3. Click to select **Simulation**.
4. Click the **X** in the upper right corner to close the **Guardian** window.

You successfully set X_TRADER to Simulation mode.

To set X_TRADER to Production Mode:

When you are comfortable using X_TRADER and want to begin live trading, you can set it back to Production mode.

1. Exit X_TRADER.
2. From your desktop toolbar in the lower right corner of your screen, double-click the TT icon.
3. From the **Guardian** window, click the **Mode** menu.
4. Click to select **Production**.
5. Click the **X** in the upper right corner to close the **Guardian** window.
6. Restart X_TRADER.

You successfully set X_TRADER to Production mode.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To begin working with X_TRADER:

1. Log into X_TRADER.
2. Create a Customer Profile.
3. Select a product from the Market Explorer and populate a functional window.
4. Enter a Market Order.
5. Track messages using the Audit Trail.
6. Track Orders using the Order Book.
7. Track fills using the **Fill** window.
8. Save your workspace.

You successfully begun working with X_TRADER.

Login Procedures

To begin trading you must first log into X_TRADER. You do this in the **TT Exchange Login** dialog box. Your System Administrator supplies the login data.

After your first login, all data excluding the password is retained. Memorize or keep a record of your login data. This data is not retained after a software upgrade.

Follow these procedures to log into an exchange:

- Logging into an exchange when starting X_TRADER
- Logging into an exchange during a session
- Logging into X_TRADER with a different trader ID

To log into X_TRADER:

1. On your Windows desktop, double click the icon.
   The **TT Exchange Login** dialog box appears.

2. Select the appropriate exchange tab or double-click the name from the **Exchange List**.
3. Enter the login data provided by your X_TRADER Administrator.
4. Click the **Login** button.
   After your password is authenticated, a checkmark appears in the box to the left of the exchange name.
5. Repeat Steps 2-4 for each exchange/marketplace on which you want to trade.

Note: The **Change Password** option is not functional at this time.

6. Click **Close**.
   After a short delay, while your workstation establishes a connection to the server and loads any undelivered fills, the X_TRADER**Control Panel** becomes fully enabled.

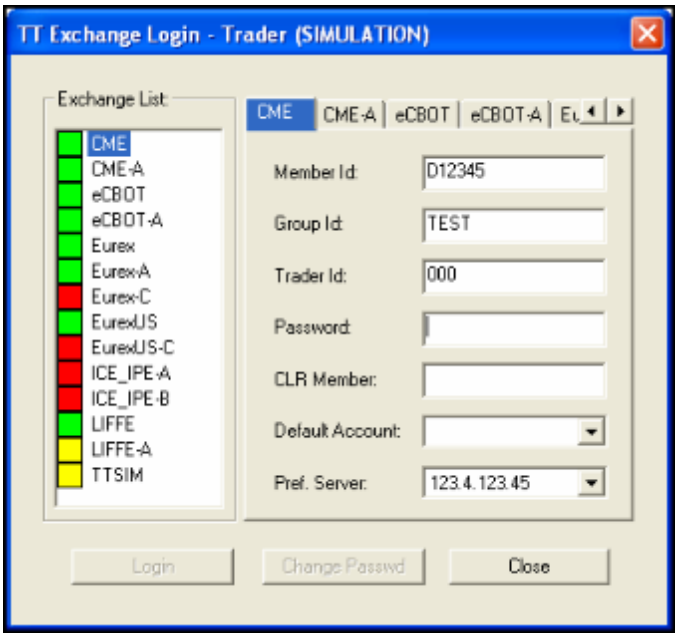
You successfully logged into X_TRADER.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To log into another exchange during a session:

1. In the bottom right-hand corner of your desktop, in the system tray, double-click the TT icon.
2. From the **Guardian** menu bar, click the **File** menu and choose **Trader Login**.

   The **TT Exchange Login** dialog box appears.



3. Select the appropriate exchange tab or double-click the name from the **Exchange List**.
4. Enter the login data provided by your X_TRADER Administrator.
5. Click **Login**.

   After your password is authenticated, a checkmark appears in the box to the left of the exchange name.
6. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 for any additional exchanges.
7. Click **Close**.
8. From the **Guardian** menu bar, click the **File** menu and choose **Exit** to exit Guardian.

You successfully logged into another exchange during a session.

To log into X_TRADER with a different Trader ID:

1. Close X_TRADER.

   Warning! If you attempt to log in via the **Guardian Trader Login** option without closing X_TRADER, the login appears successful and the **Guardian** window **Status** column changes to reflect the 'new' trader ID. However, all subsequent trades will still be attributed to the original trader's account. For example, all Audit Trail messages point to the original trader.

2. Restart X_TRADER.

   The **TT Exchange Login** dialog box appears.

3. Select the appropriate exchange tab or double-click the name from the **Exchange List**.
4. Enter the login data provided by your X_TRADER Administrator.
5. Click the **Login** button.

   After your password is authenticated, a checkmark appears in the box to the left of the exchange name.

6. If you want to log in to another exchange, select the appropriate exchange tab and enter the login information.
7. Click **Close**.

You successfully logged into an exchange with a different Trader ID.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Universal Login Procedures

The universal login lets you login to many exchanges at once using one user name and password. Your System Administrator supplies the login data.

Follow these procedures to log into an exchange:

- Logging in using the universal login
- Changing your universal login password

To login using the universal login:

1. If X_TRADER is started, go to step 2.

   - or -

   If X_TRADER is not started, double-click the icon. Then, at the **TT Exchange Login** dialog box, click **Close**.

2. Double-click the icon in the system tray.

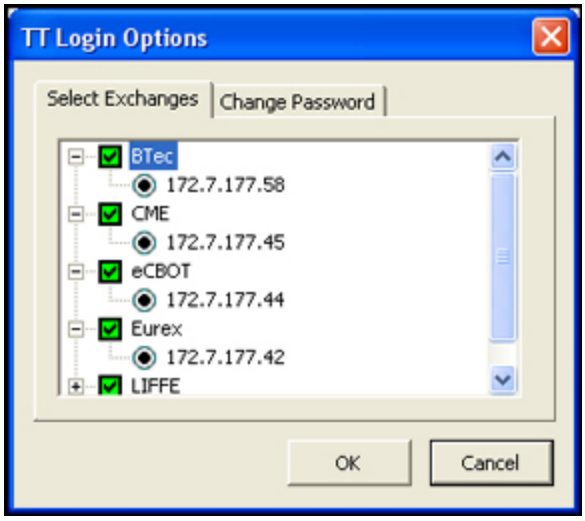
   The **Guardian** application appears.

3. On the **Guardian File** menu, click **Universal Login**.

   The **TT Login** dialog box appears.

4. Type your **User Name** and **Password**.
5. To choose the exchanges to which you want to log in, click the **Options** button.

The **TT Login Options** dialog box appears.



6. Click the green boxes to select an exchange.

Note: To unselect an exchange, click in a green box that already contains a checkmark.

7. Click **OK**.
8. On the **TT Login** dialog box, click **OK**.

You successfully logged in using the universal login.

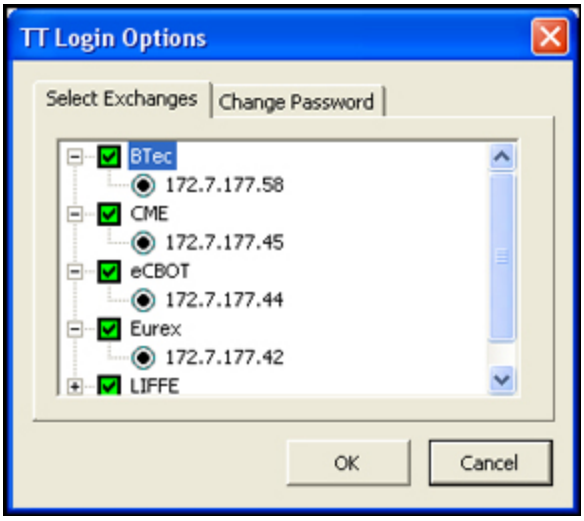
▶ To change your universal login password:

1. Double-click the icon in the system tray.
   The **Guardian** application appears.
2. On the **Guardian File** menu, click **Universal Login**.
   The **TT Login** dialog box appears.

3. Type your **User Name** and **Password**.
4. To choose the exchanges to which you want to log in, click the **Options** button.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

The **TT Login Options** dialog box appears.



5. Click the **Change Password** tab.
6. In the **New Password** field, type any alphanumeric entry for your new password.
7. In the **Confirm Password** field, retype your new password.
8. Click **OK**.

You successfully changed your universal login password.

Recognizing Active Exchanges

A list of active exchanges appears in the following locations:

- The **Market Explorer** window
- The **Guardian** dialog box

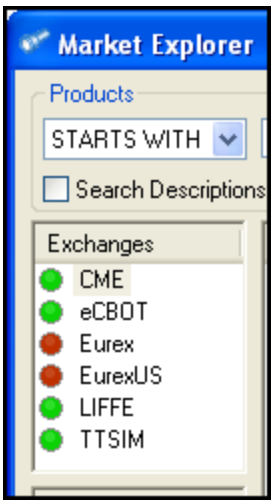
Status lights appear next to each exchange, indicating its availability.

- A green [ ] light indicates all services are running.
- A red [ ] light indicates all services are down.
- A yellow [ ] light indicates one or more services may be running but not active. This may be normal for your trading network.

Market Explorer

Access Market Explorer through the **Window** menu or the toolbar icon.

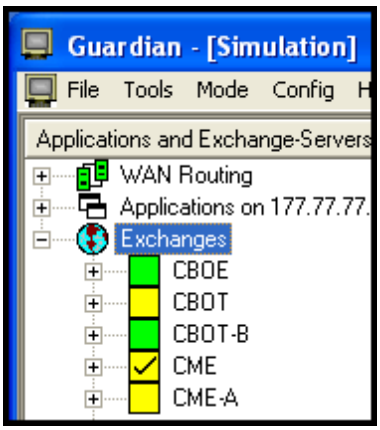
The left side of the screen lists the exchanges and color-codes their availability.



Guardian

Access Guardian by double-clicking the icon in your system tray at the bottom of your screen.

The left side of the screen lists the exchanges and color-codes their availability.



Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

X_TRADER® Pro License

Autospreader and Autotrader are only available with anX_TRADER Pro license. Although both modules install during the regular X_TRADER installation process, they require a separate X_ TRADER Pro license to function. These tools are not available for use unless you purchase this separate license. Contact a Trading Technologies representative or your System Administrator for further details.

Once you obtain an X_TRADER Pro license, you must activate the license using the **Control Panel**. Once activated, Autospreader and Autotrader work as long as the license remains current and you continue to log into the host machine with the same user name. If you upgrade to a different version of X_TRADER, you must re-activate the license.

To activate an X_TRADER Pro license:

1. Have your TT representative enable the X_TRADER Pro option.
2. Open X_TRADER from the desktop icon and log onto an exchange.
3. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **X_TRADER Pro**.

   A prompt appears telling you to close X_TRADER and restart it to access X_TRADER Pro.
4. Exit X_TRADER.
5. Open X_TRADER from the desktop icon and log into an exchange.

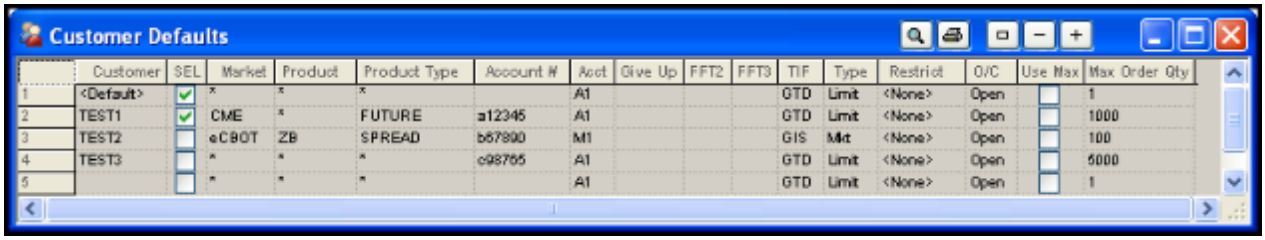
   The X_TRADER Pro license is now activated, and you can access Autotrader and/or Autospreader.

You successfully activated an X_TRADER Pro license.

Creating a Customer Profile

Define a Customer Defaults profile to establish all of the most common order variables by customer name.

Customer Defaults can be set by an administrator using TT User Setup. If you cannot change your Customer Defaults an administrator may need to make changes for you. Refer to **TTUS Integration with Customer Defaults** on page 86.



Note: You can immediately trade with the <Default> profile as long as you set up an account in its row.

To define a Customer Defaults profile:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Customer Defaults**.
2. Enter the customer profile information in the **Customer Defaults** window.

   Note: The first profile has a customer name of <Default> which you cannot change.
3. Change data as needed and press TAB or ENTER to save your changes.

   Note: If you enter your change without using the tab key to advance to the next field, or if you do not press ENTER, your changes will not be saved.
4. Click to select the **SEL** box to add the name to the **Customer List** dialog box throughout X_TRADER.
5. Close the **Customer Defaults** window.

   The new customer name will be added to the **Customer List** dialog box.

You successfully defined a Customer Defaults profile.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Using Workspaces

Your X_TRADER workspace holds a snapshot of your desktop. It records all your open and minimized windows, their spatial relationships, color, font, column/row sizing, placement, selection and saves them so that each time you launch X_TRADER, it looks the same way.

You can create one or more workspaces to fully customize X_TRADER to fit your trading style and environmental requirements. For example, you may have morning and afternoon workspaces to reflect the opening and closing of different exchanges. You may also have a report printing workspace in order to avoid reformatting your windows to display needed data.

Refer to **Workspace Setup** on page 68 for a further discussion of this feature.

Entering a Market Order

You can enter orders in the **Market** window and MD Trader by using a mouse or a keyboard.

Refer to **Market Window Overview** and **MD Trader® Overview** for complete descriptions of their functionality.

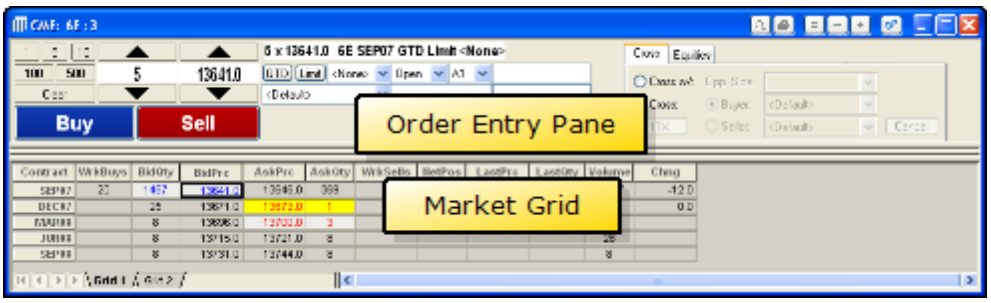
New Electronic Traders

TT recommends new electronic traders use the **Lock** safety feature until accustomed to using X_TRADER. Every **Order Entry** pane and **Order Book** window has a **Lock** check box.

When enabled, this feature requires you to confirm your actions before sending an order to market. For example, if you click the **Sell** button, the button title changes to **Apply Sell**. You must then click the **Apply Sell** button to confirm your sell order and send it to market.

To enter a manual order:

1. Click the **BidPrc** or **AskPrc** cell to feed the **Price** field on the **Order Entry** pane.
2. Click the **BidQty** or **AskQty** cells to feed both **Quantity** and **Price** fields on the **Order Entry** pane.



3. Add or change the quantity, price and order type information as necessary.
4. Click **Buy**.

   - or -

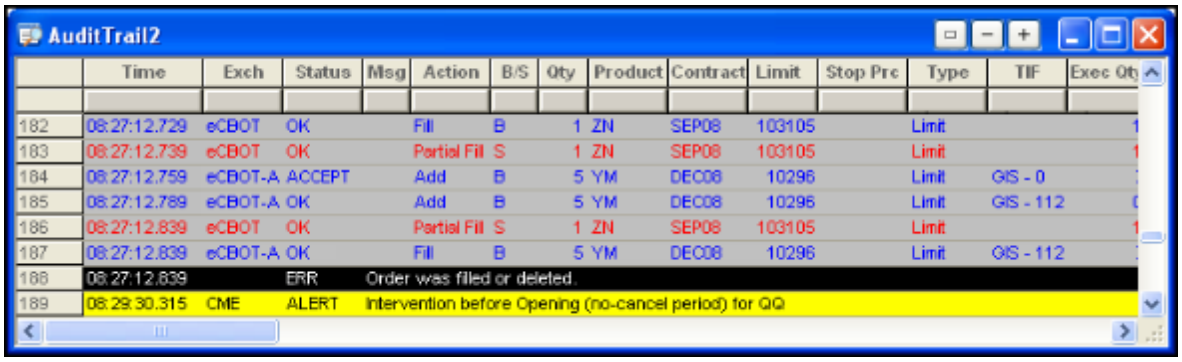
   Click **Sell**.

   If you have entered valid data, the order is sent to market. The **Audit Trail** window displays a message with a status of OK and an Action of Add.

You successfully entered a manual order.

Order Messages in the Audit Trail

The **Audit Trail** window displays messages regarding your actions and exchange announcements.



	Time	Exch	Status	Msg	Action	B/S	Qty	Product	Contract	Limit	Stop Prc	Type	TIF	Exec Qty
182	08:27:12.729	eCBOT	OK		Fill	B	1	ZN	SEP08	103105		Limit		1
183	08:27:12.739	eCBOT	OK		Partial Fill	S	1	ZN	SEP08	103105		Limit		1
184	08:27:12.759	eCBOT-A	ACCEPT		Add	B	5	YM	DEC08	10296		Limit	GIS - 0	
185	08:27:12.789	eCBOT-A	OK		Add	B	5	YM	DEC08	10296		Limit	GIS - 112	
186	08:27:12.839	eCBOT	OK		Partial Fill	S	1	ZN	SEP08	103105		Limit		1
187	08:27:12.839	eCBOT-A	OK		Fill	B	5	YM	DEC08	10296		Limit	GIS - 112	
188	08:27:12.839		ERR	Order was filled or deleted.										
189	08:29:30.315	CME	ALERT	Intervention before Opening (no-cancel period) for QQ										

Three messages appear for successful Buy (blue text) or Sell (red text) orders:

- The first message provides order details, including the time the order was sent from the workstation (**Time** column) to the TT Gateway (i.e., server), an order status of Accept, and an action of Add.
- The second message immediately follows the first and indicates acceptance by the TT Gateway. The order has been routed to the exchange trading host.
- The third message displays sometime after the previous two. This message is the confirmation received from the exchange's trading host. The information detailed includes the time the confirmation was received by the workstation (**Time** column), an order status (OK), and the time the confirmation was sent by the exchange's host machine (**Exch Time** column).

When the order fills, the fill notification message displays a status of OK and an action of Fill.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Exiting X_TRADER

Exit X_TRADER at the end of each trading session. Not doing so could adversely affect how you see your position at the beginning of the next trading session.

To exit X_TRADER:

From the **Control Panel**, click the **File** menu and choose **Exit**.

- or -

In the top right-hand corner of the **Control Panel**, click the Windows **Exit** button.

If you have working orders in the market, you are prompted. At that time you can choose to continue exiting, or return to X_TRADER and resolve them.

You successfully exited X_TRADER.

Automatic Shutdown of X_TRADER

X_TRADER automatically closes after eight hours of inactivity when there are no orders in the Order Book and no new fills or price updates have been received.

X_TRADER displays a message informing you that it is closing. If you do not take any action, or if you click **OK**, the X_TRADER application closes.

At this time this feature is not configurable.

Using Context Sensitive Help

From many X_TRADER windows, you can access online help pertinent to the task you are performing.

To access context-sensitive help:

1. Click the X_TRADER window for which you want to view Help.
2. Press the `F1` key.

You successfully accessed context-sensitive Help.

The X_TRADER windows that feature this context-sensitive help are:

- Add Manual Fill
- Alerts Manager
- Autospreader Manager, Autospreader Configuration, Advanced Settings, Dynamic Settings
- Autotrader, Autotrader Profile Setup Page
- Audit Trail
- Available Credit
- Butterfly Condor Matrix
- Control Panel
- Create New Strategy
- Customer Defaults
- Customer List
- Fill window
- Floating Order Entry windows
- Keyboard Entry on the Order Entry pane
- Market Explorer
- Market Window
- MD Trader

  Note: When Keyboard Trading is enabled in MD Trader, the `F1` key Lifts the Offer and `Shift+F1` enters a market Buy order. Context sensitive help is disabled.
- Open Workspace
- Order Block
- Order Book, Floating Order Book
- Order Change
- Plug-Ins
- Product Group Information
- Property tabs (all)
- Quote Audit Trail
- Quote Board
- RTD
- Save Workspace
- Spread Matrix
- Spread Tables
- Time and Sales
- Trade Book

Note: The **Help** menu on the **Control Panel** still brings up the **What's New** and **Introduction** topics in the online help.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

CHAPTER 2

Common Administrative Tasks

Some functionality in X_TRADER is common among many different screens in the application.

Follow these procedures to perform common tasks:

- **Populating Windows with Contracts**: Put contracts into various X_TRADER windows.
- **Using the TT Minimizer**: Minimize or display an open X_TRADER window.
- **Filtering Overview**: Control the amount of data displayed in the various windows used in X_ TRADER.
- **Formatting Fonts**: Change the font, outline, and size of the typeface in your windows.
- **Formatting Grids**: Customize the visible columns or rows.
- **Frame Command Bar Overview**: Control printing functions and window sizing options.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Populating Windows with Contracts

Follow these procedures to populate windows with contracts:

- Populating a window from Market Explorer
- Populating a window using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer
- Populating a window using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid

To populate a window from Market Explorer:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
3. In the **Products** section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
4. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Instruments** field updates as you type.
5. From the **Instrument Type** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
6. Press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.

   - or -

   To open all products in the **Instruments** field, click the >> button and skip to step 8.
7. Click the > button to transfer the products from the **Instruments** box to the **Selected Instruments** box.
8. Click the **Function** box in the upper right corner of the Market Explorer and choose the function you want to populate with the contract.
9. Click **Start**.

You successfully populated a window from Market Explorer.

To populate a window using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer:

1. If the window you want to populate with a contract is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open the window.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
3. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
4. In the **Products** section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
5. Type your search criteria in the available space

   The **Instructments** field updates as you type.
6. From the **Instrument Type** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
7. From the **Instruments** box, press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.
8. With the cursor over one of the selected products in the **Instruments** box, click and hold the mouse button.
9. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the open window.

   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters a window, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
10. Release the mouse button.

You successfully populated a window using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer.

To populate a window using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid:

1. If the window you want to populate with a contract is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open the window.
2. From an open Market Grid, click the product and hold the mouse button.
3. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the open window.

   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters a window, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
4. Release the mouse button.

You successfully populated a window using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Using the TT Minimizer

The **TT Minimizer** appears as a tray icon in the lower right corner of your screen when you first log on to X_TRADER.

It keeps a running list of every X_TRADER screen you open during your session. As screens are closed, they are removed from the **TT Minimizer**.

Tip: The size and position of the **TT Minimizer** can be changed and saved with your workspace.

Follow these procedures to use the **TT Minimizer**:

- Minimizing or displaying a window
- Minimizing or displaying all windows
- Listing all windows
- Opening or closing the **TT Minimizer**
- Locking your X_TRADER windows

▶ To minimize or display a window:

In the **TT Minimizer** window, click a window name to either minimize or display the window on your desktop.

Screen Names with...	Are...
A dark blue background	Currently displayed on your desktop
A light blue background	Currently minimized on your desktop

You successfully minimized or displayed a window.

▶ To minimize or display all windows:

Double-click the **TT Minimizer** tray icon.

You successfully minimized or displayed all windows.

To list all windows:

Right-click the **TT Minimizer** and click **List All Windows**.

You successfully listed all windows.

To open or close the TT Minimizer:

Click the **TT Minimizer** tray icon.

The **TT Minimizer** appears or disappears from your desktop. When minimized, it also appears in your taskbar.

You successfully opened or closed the **TT Minimizer**.

To lock your X_TRADER windows:

1. If it is not visible, open the **TT Minimizer**.
2. Click the **Lock All** button.

   - or -

   Right-click the **TT Minimizer** and click **Lock All Windows**.

   Your X_TRADER windows cannot be altered.
3. To unlock your screen, click the **Unlock All** button.

You successfully locked your screen.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Filtering Overview

Use filters to control the amount of data displayed in X_TRADER windows.

Example: Filtering on product (FGBL) and action (Sell) eliminates extraneous orders from the grid. Any combination of filters can be set to make your workspace unique.

Any combination of filters can be set to make your workspace unique. Once you set filters the way you want them, save your workspace. Refer to **Workspace Setup** on page 68.

Filters:

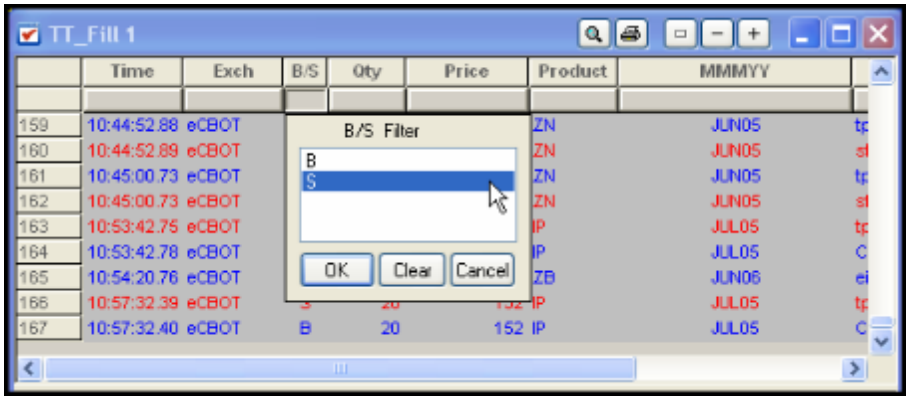
- Can be set in one or more columns in most windows.
- Generally only affect the window in which you set them.
- Can be set globally using the **Auto Filter** option in a window's context menu. This filters the **Order Book**, **Fill**, **Trade Book**, and **Audit Trail** windows by a particular customer.

Refer to **Effects of Filters** on page 53 for more information.

Follow these procedures to manage filters:

- Setting a Column Filter
- Clearing a Column Filter
- Clearing All Filters
- Setting Auto Filters

Setting a Column Filter



To set a column filter:

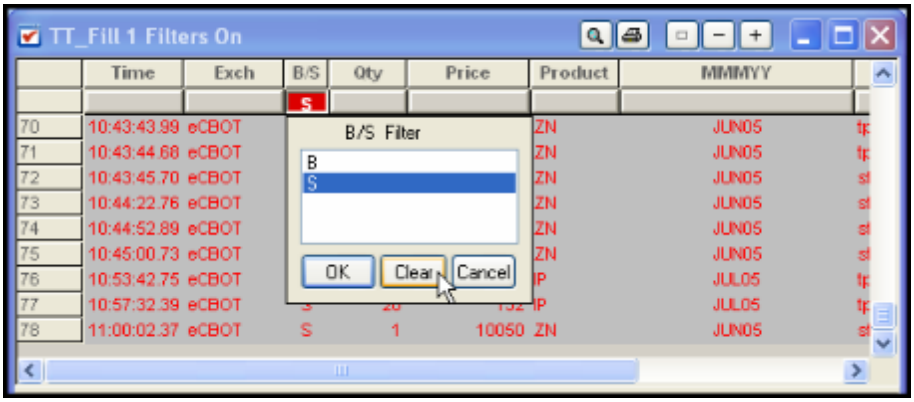
1. Click the box immediately below any column heading.

   A list of all currently referenced variables for the selected column displays.
2. Select one or more of the variables to set the filter.
3. Click **OK** to activate the filter.

   When you set a filter, the box below the column heading turns red and displays the filter you selected. If you selected multiple filter variables, a row of asterisks displays.

You successfully set a column filter.

Clearing a Column Filter



To clear a column filter:

1. Click the red column box.

   A list of all currently referenced variables for the selected column displays.
2. Select one or more of the variables to remove the filters.
3. Click **Clear**, followed by **OK** to remove the filter.

   The filters box will change from red to gray.

You successfully cleared a column filter.

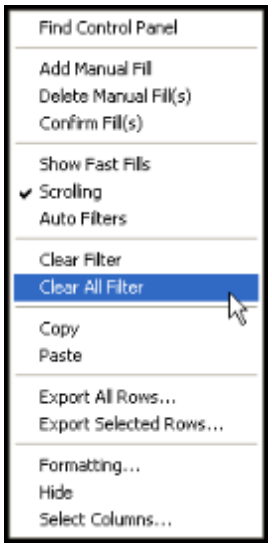
Clearing All Filters

Warning! Use of the **Clear All Filters** context options clears only the filters from the particular window in which you enable it. If you enable **AutoFilters** (or individual column filters) in other windows, they remain in effect.

To clear all filters:

1. Right-click any grid cell to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.
2. Click **Clear All Filters**.



You successfully cleared all filters.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

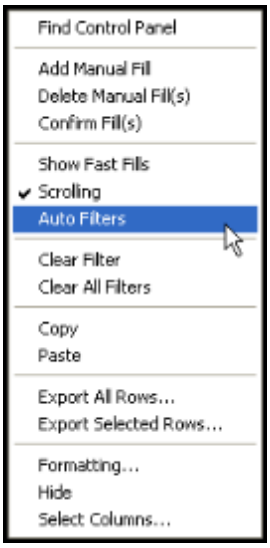
Setting Auto Filters

The **Auto Filters** option sets filters for a particular customer's (trader) account number. If there are numerous working orders for an account shared by a number of traders, it can be difficult to sort and review the orders for a particular trader. Filtering by customer name, as it appears in the **Customer List** window, displays all orders for that particular customer.

Follow these procedures to manage Auto Filters:

- Setting the Auto Filter
- Removing the Auto Filter

▶ To set the Auto Filter by customer:



1. Right-click in the window grid to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Click **Auto Filters**.

   A check mark indicates that the filter is applied for this customer's account number.

3. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Customer List**.
4. Select a customer from the list.

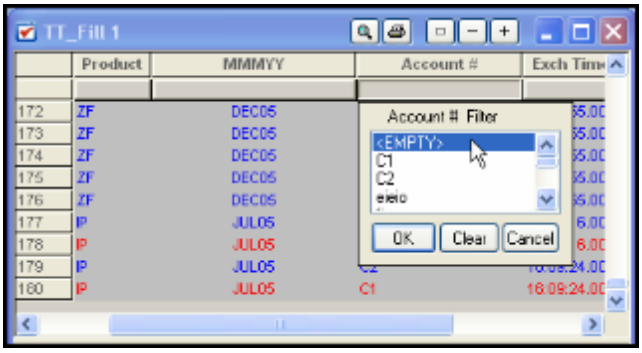
   This provides the filter definition. The top heading on the list, <Default> is the equivalent to no filter. The titlebar contains a *Filters On* message.

You successfully set the Auto Filter by customer.

▶ To remove the customer Auto Filter, use one of these options:

1. Click on the red push button directly below the column whose Auto Filter you want to remove.

   The following screen is taken from the **Fill** window:



2. Click <EMPTY> to remove the Auto Filter. (For any window except the Audit Trail.)

   - or -

   Right-click to display the context menu and click **Autofilters**.

You successfully removed the customer Auto Filter.

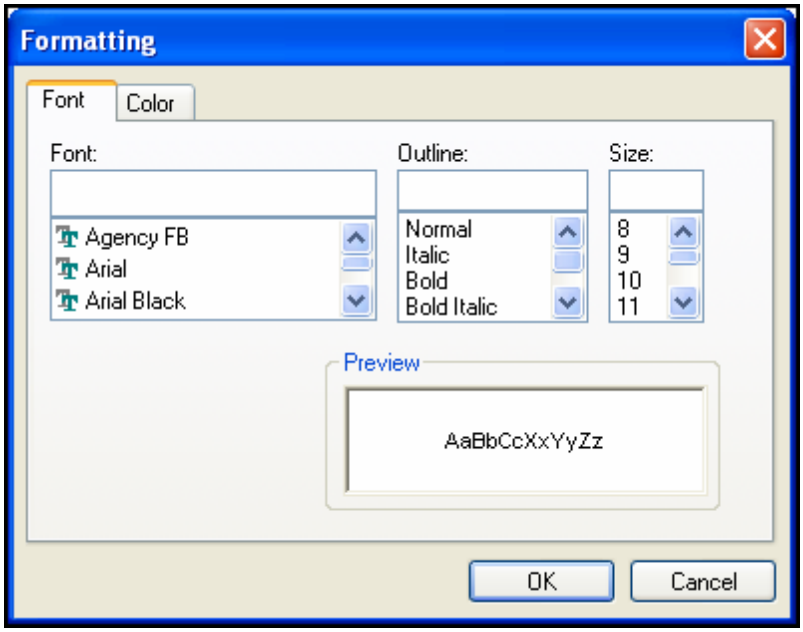
Effects of Filters

Filters have the following noteworthy effects on certain windows in X_TRADER:

Window	Effect
All windows	A *Filters On* notice appears in the title bar of the widow when a filter has been applied to one or more columns. If you hide a column using the context menu's **Hide Column** selection, this notice changes to *Filters On (Hidden)*.
Audit Trail window	If you select <EMPTY> as a column filter in the AuditTrail, the filter applies to all cells that are empty. This is unique behavior to the **Audit Trail** window.
Fill window	Filters set in the **Fills** pane filters carry over to the **Position** pane. In addition, Fast Fills are disabled when filters are on.
Order Book window	The **Order Book** window does not support filters using multiple variables.

Formatting Fonts

X_TRADER includes a number of useful methods for customizing its look and feel. You can customize your windows and save them in a workspace so that each time you launch X_TRADER, you open the workspace and avoid having to customize each individual window's appearance. (Refer to **Workspace Setup** on page 68.)



Follow these procedures to format fonts:

- **Changing the Font Style**: Change the font, outline, and size of the typeface displayed in your windows.
- **Changing Individual Colors of Grids or Text**: Change the color of text and window backgrounds. Change the color of rows, columns, or individual cells.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Changing the Font Style

Change the font, outline, and size of the typeface displayed in your windows.

To change the font style:

1. Select the area you want to change or click the top left column heading to select the entire grid.
2. Right-click in the window to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.
3. Click **Formatting**.

   The **Grid Styles** dialog box appears.
4. Click the **Font** tab and make your changes.

   The results display in the **Preview** box.
5. Click **OK**.

   The new font options are applied to your workspace.
6. To retain these font style changes, save your workspace.

You successfully changed the typeface characteristics.

Changing Global Colors of Windows or Text

You can change many of the colors used in X_TRADER. The two property tabs that house the color options are the **Color** tab and the **MD Color** tab.

Follow these procedures to change the color of a window or text:

- Use a standard color for a window or text
- Create and use a custom color for a window or text

To use a standard color for a window or text:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Color** tab.
3. Click the name of the color setting you want to change.
4. Click a color from the palette.

   The **Preview** section displays your chosen color.
5. Click **Apply** and then **OK** to exit.

You successfully changed the colors for X_TRADER display windows.

To create and use a custom color for a window or text:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Color** tab.
3. Click the name of the color setting you want to change.
4. From the **Color** section, click the **Other** button.
   The **Color** dialog box appears.
5. Under the **Custom Colors** section, click the first available white box.
   Note: This ensures you will not copy a new custom color over an existing custom color.
6. Under the **Basic Colors** section, click a base color to create your custom color from.
   Note: This ensures you can see your custom color as you create it.
7. On the right side, select your custom color from the blended rainbow grid.
   The cross hairs pin-point your selection and the color appears in the **Color/Solid** square.
8. Click and drag the triangle up or down the skinny luminosity grid to select the hue of your color.
   The **Color/Solid** square changes as you drag the triangle.
9. Click the **Add to Custom Colors** button.
   Your selection in the **Color/Solid** square appears in the **Custom colors** palette on the left side.
10. Click **OK**.
    On the **Color** tab, the **Preview** section displays your chosen color.
11. Click **Apply** and then **OK** to exit.

You successfully created and used a custom color for X_TRADER windows or text.

Changing Individual Colors of Grids or Text

You can change the color of text and window backgrounds. Change the color of rows, columns, or individual cells.

Notes:

- When you have **LTP background** coloring enabled on the **Trading** tab in the **Properties** menu, the **Last Prc** column colors cannot be changed in the Market Grid.
- Buy and Sell orders are colored blue and red by default. Selecting new colors using the **Formatting** option does not change these colors. To change colors this way, disable the **Color Code Buy/Sell** property from the appropriate tab on the **Properties** menu.
- All colors for the Spread Matrix are managed in the **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu. They cannot be altered with the **Formatting** window.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

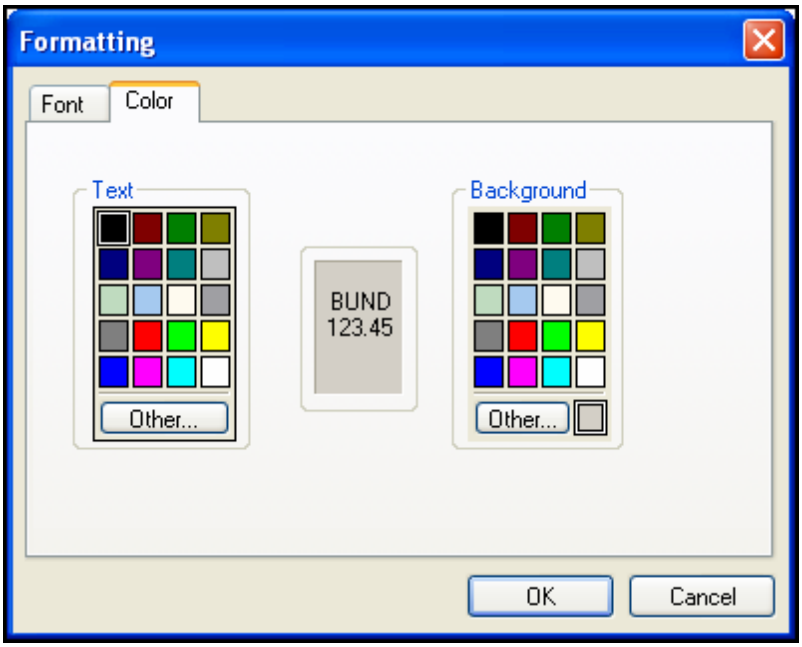
To change grid text and background colors:

1. If you want to apply the same text and background colors to the entire grid for all windows, select the window area you want to change, or click the top left-hand column heading to select the entire grid.
2. Right-click in the window to access the context menu

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.
3. Click **Formatting**.

   The **Grid Styles** dialog box appears.
4. Click the **Color** tab.

   Text colors display in the left palette. Background colors display in the right palette.



5. Click a color in the displayed palette or click **Other** to see additional colors. You can also create custom colors.

   The color preview window displays the specified colors.
6. Click **OK** to exit.
7. To retain these changes, save your workspace.

You successfully changed grid text and background colors.

Formatting Grids

X_TRADER includes a number of useful methods for customizing its look and feel. You can customize your windows and save them in a workspace so that each time you launch X_TRADER, you open the workspace and avoid having to customize each individual window's appearance. (Refer to **Workspace Setup** on page 68.)

Follow these procedures to format grids:

- Setting the Default Visible Columns
- Hiding Rows or Columns
- Restoring Hidden Rows or Columns
- Moving Rows or Columns
- Changing the Heights or Rows or the Widths of Columns

Setting the Default Visible Columns

Use the **Properties** menu to customize the default columns that display in a new Market Grid, Fill pane, Position pane, Order Book, Trade Book, or Audit Trail.

Note: You do not have to save your workspace to save these settings.

To set the default column selection:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Select the tab related to the window whose columns you want to set: **Trading**, **Fill**, **Orders**, or **Audit Trail**.
3. Click the **Columns** button.

   The **Columns** dialog box appears. All checked columns are visible in a new window.
4. Click the boxes to select or de-select the column.
5. Click **OK** to exit and save.

You successfully set the default column selections.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Moving Rows or Columns

Some windows let you customize the order in which rows and columns are displayed. You do this by dragging and dropping the appropriate rows or columns where you want them to go.

To move rows or columns:

1. Click the row or column heading to select the entire row or column.

   Note: Press and hold the CTRL key and continue clicking rows or columns to select multiple rows or columns. Then release the CTRL key.

2. Click and hold the mouse button on the header and drag the row(s) or column(s) to its new position.

   A red line appears to indicate where the column or row will be dropped.

3. Release the mouse button.
4. To retain these settings, save your workspace.

You successfully moved rows or columns.

Hiding Rows or Columns

Follow these procedures to hide rows or columns:

- Hiding selected rows or columns using the context menu
- Hiding unselected rows or columns using the context menu
- Hiding a row or column by manually sliding it closed
- Hiding multiple rows or columns by sliding them closed

To hide selected rows or columns using the context menu:

1. Click the row or column heading to select the entire row or column.
2. Press and hold the CTRL key and continue clicking rows or columns to select multiple rows or columns. Then release the CTRL key.
3. Right-click a grid cell to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

4. Click **Hide Row(s)** or **Hide Column(s)**.
5. To retain these settings, save your workspace.

You successfully hidden selected rows or columns.

To hide unselected rows or columns using the context menu:

1. Right-click a grid cell to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Click **Hide/Show Row(s)** or **Hide/Show Column(s)**.
3. Click to de-select the rows or columns you want to hide.
4. To retain these settings, save your workspace.

You successfully hidden unselected rows or columns.

▶ **To hide a row or column by manually sliding it closed:**

1. Move the cursor between two row or column headings until the cursor turns into a double-headed arrow.
2. Click and hold the mouse button and slide the row or column closed.
3. Release the mouse button.

   This automatically de-selects the row or column from the **Hide/Show Columns/Rows** options.
4. To retain these settings, save your workspace.

You successfully hidden a row or column.

▶ **To hide multiple rows or columns by manually sliding them closed:**

1. Click the row or column heading to select the entire row or column.
2. Press and hold the CTRL key and continue clicking rows or columns to select multiple rows or columns. Then release the CTRL key.
3. Move the cursor to the end of the largest selected row or column heading until the cursor turns into a double-headed arrow.
4. Click and hold the mouse button and slide the row or column closed.
5. Release the mouse button.

   All highlighted rows or columns are hidden. This automatically de-selects the row or column from the **Hide/Show Columns/Rows** options.
6. To retain these settings, save your workspace.

You successfully hidden multiple rows or columns.

Restoring Hidden Rows or Columns

Restore hidden rows or columns using the context menu, regardless of how they were hidden.

▶ **To restore hidden rows or columns:**

1. Right-click a grid cell to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.
2. Click **Hide/Show Rows** or **Hide/Show Columns**.
3. Click to select the rows or columns you want to restore.

You successfully restored a hidden row or column.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Changing the Heights of Rows or the Widths of Columns

The heights of rows and widths of columns can be changed one at time, or several rows or columns can be changed at once.

Follow these procedures to change the heights of rows and widths of columns:

- Changing the height or width of one row or column
- Changing the height or width of multiple rows or columns

To change the height or width of one row or column:

1. Move the cursor between two row or column headings until the cursor turns into a double-headed arrow.
2. Click and hold the mouse button and slide the row or column to the desired size.
3. Release the mouse button.
4. To retain these settings, save your workspace.

You successfully changed the width or height of a column or row.

To change the height or width of multiple rows or columns:

1. Click the row or column heading to select the entire row or column.
2. Press and hold the CTRL key and continue clicking rows or columns to select multiple rows or columns. Then release the CTRL key.
3. Move the cursor to the end of one selected row or column heading until the cursor turns into a double-headed arrow.
4. Click and hold the mouse button and slide the row or column to the desired size.
5. Release the mouse button.

   All highlighted rows or columns change to the desired size.
6. To retain these settings, save your workspace.

You successfully changed the height or width of multiple rows or columns.

Frame Command Bar Overview

Some windows have sizing and printing buttons in the titlebar. These buttons are located to the immediate left of the standard Windows **Close Window**, **Minimize**, and **Maximize** buttons.

Button	Command	Action
	Print Preview	Displays the standard **Print Preview** dialog box. Here you can preview the information before printing it.
	Print	Displays the **Print** dialog box. Here you can select your printer and other options, as well as submitting the document to the print queue.
	Reset	Resets the window view back to the original (default) size.
	Zoom Out	Expands the contents of the active window, making less of the grid visible in the window.
	Zoom In	Contracts the contents of the active window, making more of the grid visible in the window.
	Market Explorer	Displays the **Market Explorer** window.

Follow these procedures to use the Frame Command Bar buttons:

- Resizing a Window Grid
- Printing in X_TRADER

Note: Not all X_TRADER windows contain **Print** or **Print Preview** buttons.

Resizing a Window Grid

Resize the window grid by using the (**Reset**), (**Zoom in**) and (**Zoom out**) buttons in the graphic above. The **Reset** button sets the window back to its default size.

Note: In certain instances, it is possible to also use the mouse wheel to perform a zoom function. Refer to **Using the Mouse to Control the Zoom Feature** on page 278 for a procedure.)

▶ **To resize a window grid:**

1. Click a grid to make it active.
2. Click the **Zoom Out** or **Zoom In** button to shrink or enlarge the text.

You successfully resized the grid of a window.

▶ **To reset a window grid:**

1. Click a grid to make it active.
2. Click the **Reset** button to return the window grid to the workspace settings.

You successfully reset the window grid.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Printing

Most X_TRADER windows offer (**Print**) and (**Print Preview**) frame buttons located in the top right-hand corner of the window.

Tip: If you regularly print data from X_TRADER, you may want to create a workspace that is pre-formatted to display only the information you require. You will format the window only once, save the workspace under a new name, and will not have to change the workspace you use for trading.

Notes:

- You must have installed a printer (usually a shared network printer) on your work-station for you to print.
- The **Print Setup** dialog box does not save your printing preferences.
- Not all windows contain **Print** or **Print Preview** buttons.

Follow these procedures to print:

- Previewing a window grid
- Printing a window grid

To preview a window grid:

1. Click a grid to make it active.
2. Click the **Print Preview** button.

   The print preview appears.
3. Review the screen as needed.
4. Click **Print** to print the screen.

   - or -

   Click **Close** to cancel the print.

You successfully print previewed a window grid.

To print a window grid:

1. Click a grid to make it active.
2. Click the **Print** button.

   The **Print** dialog box displays if you have printer services installed through Windows. You can click a printer, print range, and number of copies, or you can print to a file. Additional print settings are available by choosing the **Properties** button, located to the right of the **Printer Name** list. The additional print settings include such items as paper size, orientation, and reduction.
3. Select your print options and click **OK** to print.

You successfully printed a window grid.

CHAPTER 3

Control Panel Overview

The **Control Panel** appears after you start X_TRADER. It is your main hub for accessing functional windows, and setting default properties within the application.

To quickly display the **Control Panel** on top of your other windows, most context menus offer a Find **Control Panel** option.

Note: Establishing a connection to an exchange may result in a short delay before the **Control Panel** buttons are enabled.

Follow these procedures to use the **Control Panel**:

- Opening a functional window
- Changing the size of the toolbar
- Workspace setup
- Product group setup
- Spread tables setup
- Customer Defaults setup
- Properties setup
- Adding high and low sound alerts
- Starting plug-ins

To quickly display the **Control Panel** on top of your other windows, most context menus offer a **Find Control Panel** option.

To find the Control Panel:

1. Right-click in one of the main X_TRADER windows to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Click **Find Control Panel**.

   Note: If the context menu does not include this option, right-click a different window to access the context menu.

You successfully found the **Control Panel**.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Opening a Functional Window

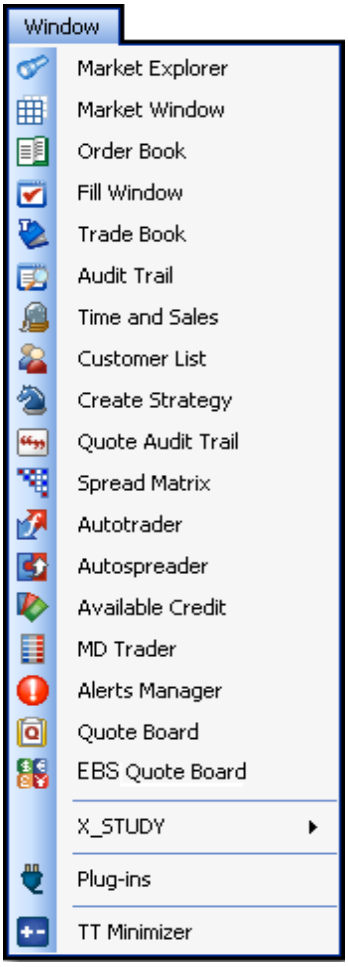
You use the **Control Panel** to open functional windows within X_TRADER.

You can open these windows using:

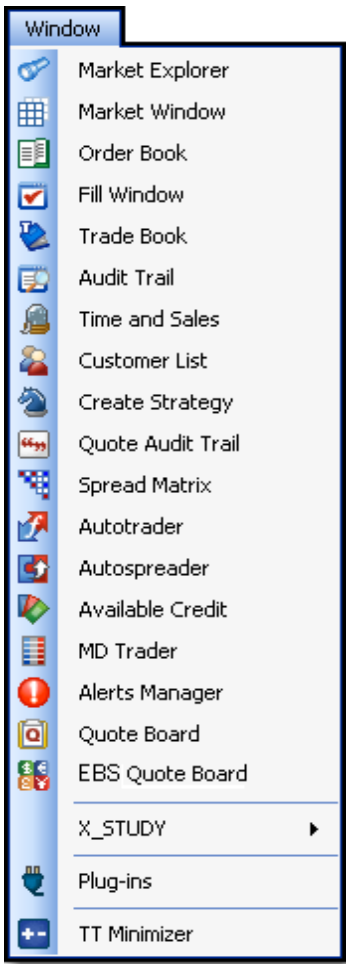
- The **Window** menu
- The Toolbar icons

Window Menu

The following options are available from the **Window** menu on the **Control Panel**:



- **Market Explorer**: Lists products by exchange/marketplace. Open one or more functional windows with one or more products.
- **Market Window**: Opens a blank Market Grid with the **Order Entry** pane on top. Used for watching the market and placing orders.
- **Order Book**: Manages your open orders. Monitor, change, or delete orders, or perform a status inquiry about any open order.
- **Fill Window**: Lists the current day's trades.
- **Trade Book**: Displays an aggregate fill for a single order number on a separate line.
- **Audit Trail**: Displays data sent to the exchange and the responses received from the exchange. Order add, delete, change, inquiry, trader, and customer detail, as well as error messages and all exchange announcements are detailed in this window.
- **Time and Sales**: Provides the ability to track, record, and save time and information for products traded through X_TRADER.
- **Customer List**: Displays all accounts by customer name, based on information obtained from the **Customer Defaults Settings** window.
- **Create Strategy**: Creates multiple-legged spreads, strips, packs, and bundles.
- **Quote Audit Trail**: Monitors addition, deletion, and related error messages for both manual and autoquoting for Market Makers. You can also monitor both inbound and outbound RFQs.
- **Spread Matrix**: Opens the **Spread Matrix** window.



Autospreader: Sets up two sided spreads that trade automatically in a three-pane window.

Note: You need an X_TRADER Pro license to use Autospreader.

- **Autotrader**: Creates and maintains a two-sided market for selected sets of contracts and allows automatic bids and offers.

Note: You need an X_TRADER Pro license to use Autotrader.

- **Available Credit**: Displays the amount of credit left in your trading account. A green total indicates a positive balance; a red total indicates a deficit.
- **MD Trader**: Displays the market depth for a given product and allows you to buy or sell products with one click.
- **Alerts Manager**: Assigns alert sounds to contracts so X_TRADER plays a sound whenever the contract trades above its high price or below its low price for the day.
- **Quote Board**: Displays the open, high, low, last, net change, trader position and P/L for several markets at once.
- **X_STUDY**: Lets you start/stop X_STUDY and access its components. Refer to the *X_STUDY User Manual* for an overview.
- **Plug-ins**: Starts X_TRADER Plug-in applications.

Note: To use each individual Plug-in, you must obtain proper licensing

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

The Toolbar

You can access most X_TRADER functions using the Toolbar.

Button	Description
	Open Workspace: Displays a list of workspace names to open.
	Save Workspace: Saves your current workspace under the workspace name that appears in the **Control Panel** title bar. If no name appears in the **Control Panel** title bar, you are prompted to enter a name. Refer to **Workspace Setup** on page 68.
	Market Explorer: Lists products by exchange/marketplace. Open one or more functional windows with one or more products.
	Market Window: Opens a blank Market Grid with the **Order Entry** pane on top. Used for watching the market and placing orders.
	Order Book: Manages your open orders. Monitor, change, or delete orders, or perform a status inquiry about any open order.
	Fill Window: Lists the current day's trades, including your P/L.
	Trade Book: Displays an aggregate fill for a single order number.
	Audit Trail: Displays data sent to the exchange and the responses received from the exchange. Details order add, delete, change, inquiry, trader, and customer detail, as well as error messages and exchange announcements.
	Time and Sales: Provides the ability to track, record, and save time and information for products traded through X_TRADER.
	Customer List: Displays all accounts by customer name, based on information obtained from the **Customer Defaults Settings** window.
	Create Strategy: Creates multiple-legged spreads, strips, packs, and bundles.
	Spread Matrix: Opens the **Spread Matrix** window.
	Autotrader : Creates and maintains a two-sided market for selected sets of contracts, allowing automatic bids and offers. **Note**: You need an X_TRADER Pro license to use Autotrader.
	Autospreader: Sets up two sided spreads that trade automatically in a three-pane window. **Note**: You need an X_TRADER Pro license to use Autospreader.
	Available Credit: Displays the amount of credit left in your trading account. A green total indicates a positive balance; a red total indicates a deficit.
	MD Trader: Displays the market depth for a given product and allows you to buy or sell products with one click.
	Alerts Manager: Assigns alert sounds to play whenever contracts trade above their high price or below their low price for the day.
	Quote Board: Displays the open, high, low, last, net change, trader position and P/L for several markets at once.

Button	Description
	X_STUDY Chart: Opens a blank chart. Refer to the *X_STUDY User Manual* for an overview.
	Plug-ins: Starts X_TRADER Plug-in applications. **Note**: You must obtain proper licensing to use each individual Plug-in.

Changing the Size of the Toolbar

You can increase or decrease the size of the icons on the toolbar.

To change the size of the icons on the toolbar:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu.
2. Highlight the **Toolbar** option.
   Three options appear: **Small**, **Medium**, **Large**, or the **Classic Look**.
3. Click the size you wish to make the icons on the toolbar.

You successfully changed the size of the icons on the toolbar.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Workspace Setup

Your X_TRADER workspace holds a snapshot of your desktop. It records all your open and minimized windows, their spatial relationships, color, font, column/row sizing, placement, selection and saves them so that each time you launch X_TRADER, it looks the same way.

Create one or more workspaces to customize X_TRADER to fit your trading style and environmental requirements.

Follow these procedures to manage workspaces:

- Creating a workspace
- Opening a workspace
- Saving a workspace
- Managing a startup workspace
- Fixing a workspace
- Deleting a workspace

Multiple Workspaces

You can create as many workspaces as you want. Each workspace is saved on your workstation's hard drive and are retained after an upgrade. Workspace files save to:

<root drive>:\tt\datfiles\TTCONFIG

The workspace folder is named the same as your workspace.

Use multiple workspaces to:

- Create separate workspaces for different markets
- Reflect your changing trading environment
- Create a workspace that has a preformatted **Fill** window set to print specific information

Note: If you open a workspace, change it and save it under a different name, the saved and closed workspace retains its settings.

Creating a Workspace

A workspace is just a snapshot of your X_TRADER desktop. The procedure below walks you through steps used to customize your workspace. However, what is in your workspace is completely up to you.

Warning! Close the Market Depth feature in the Market Grid before saving the workspace. Leaving Market Depth open may render the feature temporarily inoperable when you reopen the workspace.

To create a personalized workspace:

1. Set your default visible column preferences using **Properties** dialog box tabs.

   Tip: If you plan to set up multiple workspaces with the same default columns, save time by setting your default columns and saving them in a workspace (Skip to step 5). Then, continue with step 2 and create your second workspace with your default columns set.

2. Open the products and windows you want open on your desktop.
3. Adjust the window sizes, filters, fonts, grids, sounds and colors to your liking.
4. Adjust the placement of the windows on your screen.

   Note: Your saved workspace remembers the windows you minimize.

5. From the **Control Panel**, click the **File** menu and choose **Save As**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
6. Type a name for the workspace and click **OK**.

   Note: Your workspace name must adhere to your Operating System's naming conventions.

You successfully created a personalized workspace. You can reopen this workspace at any time.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Saving a Workspace

If you have a workspace open, the workspace name appears in the **Control Panel** titlebar. Any changes you make save under this name by default. However, if you opened an existing workspace to create a new workspace, make sure you save the new workspace under a new name to retain the settings in your original workspace.

Follow these procedures to save a workspace:

- Saving a workspace
- Saving a workspace under a new name

To save a workspace:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **File** menu and choose **Save Workspace**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the button.
2. If this is a new workspace, you are prompted to enter a workspace name. If you have a workspace open, changes are automatically saved under the same name.
3. If the **Save Workspace** dialog box appears, type a new name for the workspace or select a workspace name to overwrite from the list.

   Note: Your workspace name must adhere to your Operating System's naming conventions.
4. Click **OK**.

   If you choose to overwrite a workspace name from the list, you are prompted to confirm.

You successfully saved a workspace.

To save your current workspace under a new name:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **File** menu and choose **Save As**.
2. In the **Save Workspace** dialog box, type a new workspace name and click **OK**.

   Note: Your workspace name must adhere to your Operating System's naming conventions.

You successfully saved your current workspace under a new name.

Opening a Workspace

When you open a workspace your desktop appears as it was the last time you saved the workspace.

Note: Increasing the resolution of your monitor provides more desktop space because windows and fonts appear smaller. If you decrease the resolution of your monitor the opposite is true.

▶ **To open a previously saved workspace:**

Warning! Save changes in your open workspace before opening a previously saved workspace or all changes will be lost.

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **File** menu and choose **Open Workspace**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the button.
2. Click the name of the workspace you want to open and click **OK**.

   If the workspace you open contains a product from an exchange you did not log into, you are prompted to log into that exchange.

   If any part of a workspace is corrupt, an error message informs you not all windows could be opened. This happens when the Market Grid contains an expired contract. The unopened window is deleted from the workspace, and the message does not reappear.

You successfully opened a previously saved workspace.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Managing a Startup Workspace

You can set a workspace to start automatically when you log into X_TRADER.

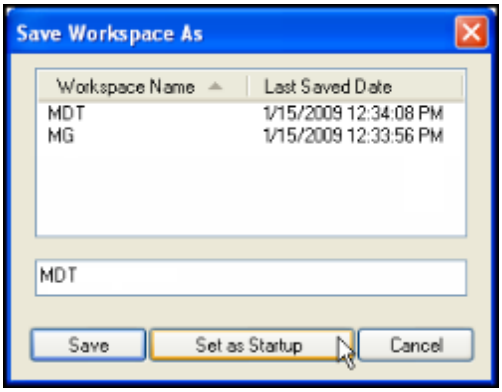
- Setting your startup workspace
- Clearing your startup workspace

To set your startup workspace:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click **File** and choose **Save As**.

   Note: Alternatively, you can do this from the **Open Workspace** dialog box.

2. In the **Save Workspace As** dialog box, click the workspace you want to start every time you log in.



3. Click **Set as Startup**.

   The workspace is marked as startup.

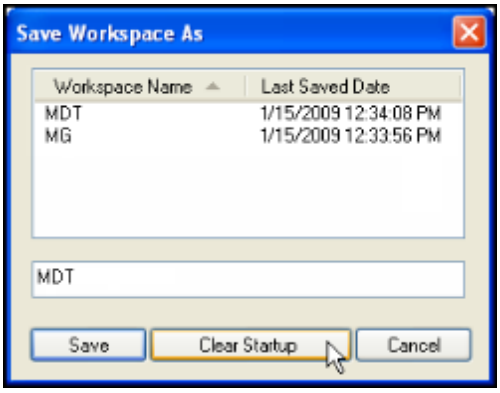
You successfully set your startup workspace.

To clear your startup workspace:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click **File** and choose **Save As**.

   Note: Alternatively, this can be done from the **Open Workspace** dialog box.

2. In the **Save Workspace As** dialog box, click the workspace designated as your startup.



3. Click **Clear Startup**.

You successfully cleared your startup workspace.

Fixing a Workspace

A workspace might appear broken if contracts do not appear correctly in a functional window.

This can occur:

- After you upgrade from X_TRADER 6.X to X_TRADER 7.X
- At the beginning of the month, after a saved contract expires

To fix a workspace:

1. Open Market Explorer.
2. Find the products you want to drag into the functional window.
3. Drag and drop contracts from Market Explorer to the appropriate functional window.
4. From the **Control Panel**, click **File** and click **Save**.

You successfully fixed a workspace.

Deleting a Workspace

To delete an existing workspace:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Open Workspace** button.
2. In the **Open Workspace** dialog box, select the workspace you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.

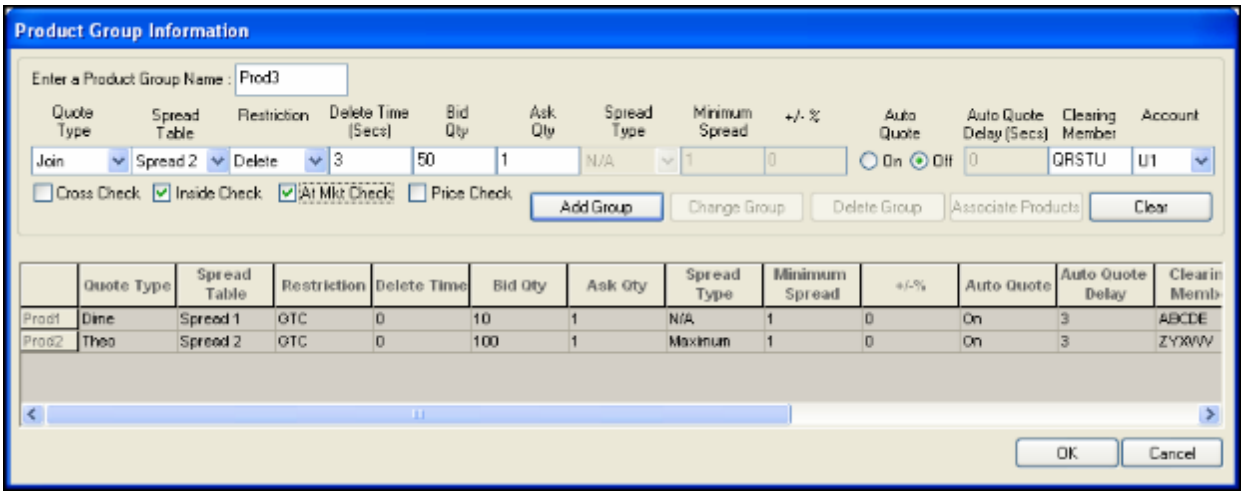
   The workspace is deleted from the list.

You successfully deleted an existing workspace.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Product Group Information Setup

Product groups let you define how the bid/ask values are calculated. Enter product group information in the top pane of the **Product Group Information** dialog box, specifying the quote type, spread table, delete time, account, and other parameters. Once you add the group to the grid, you can associate products to the product group.



Follow these procedures to manage product groups:

- Adding a product group
- Changing a product group
- Deleting a product group
- Associating a product to a product group
- Disassociating a product from a product group

To access the Product Group Information dialog box:

1. Ensure **Quoting** is enabled in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties**.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Product Group Information**.

You successfully accessed the **Product Group Information** dialog box.

Product Group Information Field/Column Descriptions

The fields in the **Product Group Information** dialog box are defined as follows:

Field	Description
Product Group Name	Sets the name of the product group
Quote Type	Sets the type of quote received: • **Dime**: A tick better on both bid and ask. • **Join**: Current price of both bid and ask. • **Mkt Ave**: The average between bid and ask is the mid-point for calculating the spread. The Maximum or Percent spread type is divided by 2. This figure is added and subtracted from the Market Average to define the upper and lower limits. • **Theo**: Similar to the **Mkt Ave** except the theoretical price is used as the mid-point for calculating the spread. • **Theo Bid/Ask**: Current theoretical bid and ask.
Spread Table	Associates the product group with a pre-defined spread table for time, price, and spread limits. Choose any spread table from theb list.
Restriction	Sets the time restriction: • **Delete** (delete the quote after a specified number of seconds) • **GTC**
Delete Time (Secs)	Sets the number of seconds the quote remains in the market if you choose **Delete** in the **Restriction** field. (The minimum time for EUREX is 20 seconds.)
Bid Qty	Sets the bid quantity to be quoted. (The minimum quantity for EUREX is 50.)
Ask Qty	Sets the ask quantity to be quoted. (The minimum quantity for EUREX is 50.)
Spread Type	Sets the spread type: • **Maximum**: The spread defined in the spread table is used to generate the quote. If the center price used for the calculation is 50 and the spread is 4 ticks, the quote will be 48-52. • **N/A**: When you set the quote type to Dime, Join, or Theo Bid/Ask, the spread type defaults to N/A (not applicable). • **Percent**: The chosen percentage of the price is used to calculate the spread. The +/- % field is used to define the exact percentage. The **Percent Spread Type** is subject to the spread table's defined **Maximum Spread** and the product group's defined **Minimum Spread**. If the calculated quote is greater than the **Maximum Spread**, the **Maximum Spread** is quoted. For example, if the percent calculated is 6 ticks and the spread table max is 4 ticks, 4 ticks is used.
Minimum Spread	Sets the smallest number of ticks allowed to generate a quote. If the calculated quote is less than the minimum defined, this minimum is used to generate the quote. For example, if the calculated spread is 1 tick and your minimum is 2 ticks, the quote will have a 2-tick spread. Not applicable for **Dime**, **Join**, and **Theo Bid/Ask** Quote types.
+/-%	Defines the percentage of the price on either side used to calculate the spread when you select **Percent Spread Type**. Not applicable for **Dime**, **Join**, and **Theo Bid/Ask** Quote Types.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Field	Description
Auto Quote	Sends quotes in a time interval as defined with **Auto Quote Delay**.
Auto Quote Delay (Secs)	Sets the number of seconds the quote is delayed before being sent to the market after an RFQ is received.
Clearing Member	Sets your clearing member ID.
Account Section	Sets the account type as defined by the exchange: • **A1**: Agent 1. • **A2**: Agent 2. • **A3**: Agent 3. • **G1**: Pre-designated Giveup Trade 1. • **G2**: Designated Giveup Trade 2. • **M1**: Market Maker 1. • **M2**: Market Maker 2. • **M3**: Market Maker 3. • **P1**: Principal 1. • **P2**: Principal 2. • **P3**: Principal 3. • **U1**: Unallocated—for orders that have not been allocated to a customer account or where allocation is a middle/back office function.
Quote Viability Checks Section	The following checks are optional
Cross Check	Prevents putting in quote that would immediately get hit. The quote is not sent if the bid is greater than the current market ask price; or the ask is less than the current market bid.
Inside Check	Prevents beating the market. The quote is not sent if the bid is greater than the current bid; or the ask is less than the current ask. This check does not apply when the **Dime Quote Type** is selected.
At Mkt Check	Prevents putting in quote that would join best bid or best ask. The quote is not sent when the bid and/or ask are equal to the current market price.
Price Check	Prevents putting in quote with no market. The quote is not sent if there is no current bid or ask price.

Adding a Product Group

To add a product group:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Product Group Setup**.
   The **Product Group Information** dialog box appears.
2. In the **Product Group Name** field, enter your product group name.
3. In the **Quote Type** field, click one of the following:
   - **Dime**: A tick better on both bid and ask.
   - **Join**: Current price of both bid and ask.
   - **Mkt Ave**: The average between bid and ask is the mid-point for calculating the spread. The Maximum or Percent spread is divided by 2. This figure is added and subtracted from the Market Average to define the upper and lower limits.
   - **Theo**: Similar to the Mkt Ave except the theoretical price is used as the mid-point for calculating the spread.
   - **Theo Bid/Ask**: Current theoretical bid and ask.
4. In the **Spread Table** field, associate the product group with a pre-defined Spread Table for time, price, and spread limits.
5. In the **Restriction** field, set the quote to either be deleted after a specified number of seconds or GTC.
6. In the **Delete Time** field, if you chose the **Delete Restriction**, set the number of seconds the quote remains in the market before it is deleted. (The minimum time for EUREX is 20 seconds.)
7. In the **Bid Qty** field, specify the bid quantity to be quoted. (The minimum quantity for EUREX is 50.)
8. In the **Ask Qty** field, specify the ask quantity to be quoted. (The minimum quantity for EUREX is 50.)
9. In the **Spread Type** field, click one of the following:

Note: This field is not applicable for Dime, Join and Theo Bid/Ask quote types.

- **Maximum**: The spread defined in the spread table is used to generate the quote. If the center price used for the calculation is 50 and the spread is 4 ticks, the quote is 48-52.
- **N/A**: When you set the quote type to Dime, Join and Theo Bid/Ask the spread type defaults to N/A (not applicable).
- **Percent**: The chosen percentage of the price is used to calculate the spread. The +- % field is used to define the exact percentage.
  The **Percent** spread type is subject to the spread table's defined **Maximum Spread** and the product group's defined **Minimum Spread**.
  If the calculated quote is greater than the **Maximum Spread**, the **Maximum Spread** is quoted. For example, if the percent calculated is 6 ticks and the spread table max is 4 ticks, 4 ticks is used.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

10. In the **Minimum Spread** field, set the minimum spread used to generate a quote.

    Note: This is the smallest number of ticks allowed to generate a quote. If the calculated quote is less than the minimum defined, then this minimum is used to generate the quote.

    For example, if the calculated spread is 1 tick and your minimum is 2 ticks, the quote has a 2-tick spread. Not applicable for Dime, Join and Theo Bid/Ask quote types.

11. In the **+/-%** field, if you chose the **Percent Spread Type**, define the percentage of the price that will be used to calculate the spread.

    Note: Not applicable for Dime, Join and Theo Bid/Ask quote types.

12. In the **Auto Quote** field, select **On** or **Off** to set up automatic quoting in response to an RFQ.
13. In the **Auto Quote Delay (Secs)** field, enter the number of seconds the quote is delayed before being sent after an RFQ is received.
14. In the **Clearing Member** field, enter your clearing member ID.
15. In the **Account** field, enter the account type.
16. In the **Quote Viability Checks** field, you can select from the following checks:
    - **Cross Check**: The quote is not sent if the bid is greater than the current market ask price, or the ask is less than the current market bid.
    - **Inside Check**: The quote is not sent if the bid is greater than the current bid, or the ask is less than the current ask. This check does not apply when you select the Dime quote type.
    - **At Mkt Check**: The quote is not sent when the bid and/or ask are equal to the current market price.
    - **Price Check**: The quote is not sent if there is no current bid or ask price.
17. Click **Add Group** before closing the window.

    The new **Product Group** displays in the bottom portion of the window.
18. After adding, deleting, or changing product group information, click the appropriate button (**Add**, **Change**, **Delete**).
19. Associate the products as needed.
20. Click **OK** to close the product window and save your changes.

You successfully added a product group.

Changing a Product Group Settings

To change a product group's settings:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Product Group Setup**.
   The **Product Group Information** dialog box appears.
2. Click the Product Group in any cell on the bottom half of the screen.
   Note: If no product groups display, you have no product groups to change.
3. Make any desired changes in the entry section of the top half of the window.
4. Click the **Change Group** button.
   Note: The changes are not saved until you close the **Product Group Information** dialog box.
5. Click **OK** to save and exit.

You successfully changed a product group's settings.

Deleting a Product Group

To delete a product group:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Product Group Setup**.
   The **Product Group Information** dialog box appears.
2. Click the Product Group in any cell on the bottom half of the screen.
   Note: If no product groups display, you have no product groups to delete.
3. Click the **Delete Group** button.
4. Click **OK** to save and exit.

You successfully deleted a product group.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Associating a Product to a Product Group

Each quoted product must be associated to a product group that you have created. It is the product group that determines how a quote is generated. Therefore, each product must be associated with one (and only one) product group in order to generate quotes.

Note: Each product can be associated with only one product group at a time. If you require quotes for the same product to be constructed using different parameters (for example, max vs. percentage or a different clearing member), you must first disassociate the product and then re-associate it with another product group.

To associate a product to a product group:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Product Group Setup**.
   The **Product Group Information** dialog box appears.
2. Click the Product Group in any cell on the bottom half of the screen.
   All the product group settings display in the top half of the window.

   Note: If no product group displays, you must create a custom product group before associating products.
3. Click the **Associate Products** button.

   Note: If this button is grayed out, you have not selected a product group.

   The following screen appears.

4. From the **Exchange** field, click the appropriate exchange.
5. From the **Product** field, click the appropriate product.
6. Click the **Add to List** button.
   The exchange and product now display on the product list.
7. Repeat steps 4-6 to associate more products.
8. Click **OK** to exit.

You successfully associated a product to a product group.

Disassociating a Product from a Product Group

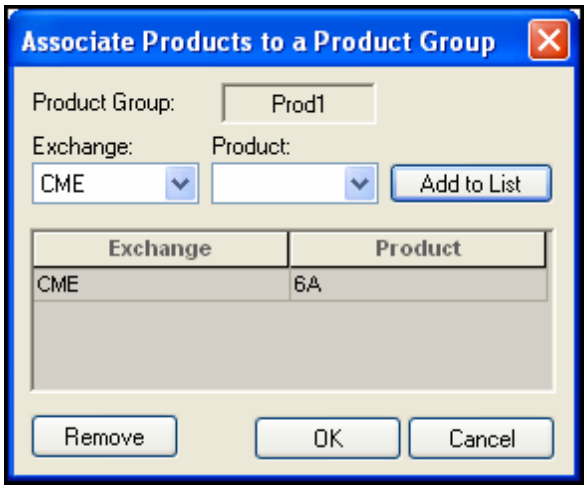
To disassociate a product from a product group:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Product Group Setup**.
   The **Product Group Information** dialog box appears.
2. Click the Product Group in any cell on the bottom half of the screen.
   All the product group settings display in the top half of the window.

   Note: If no product group display, you have no products to disassociate.
3. Click the **Associate Products** button.

   Note: If this button is grayed out, you have not selected a product group.

   The following screen appears.



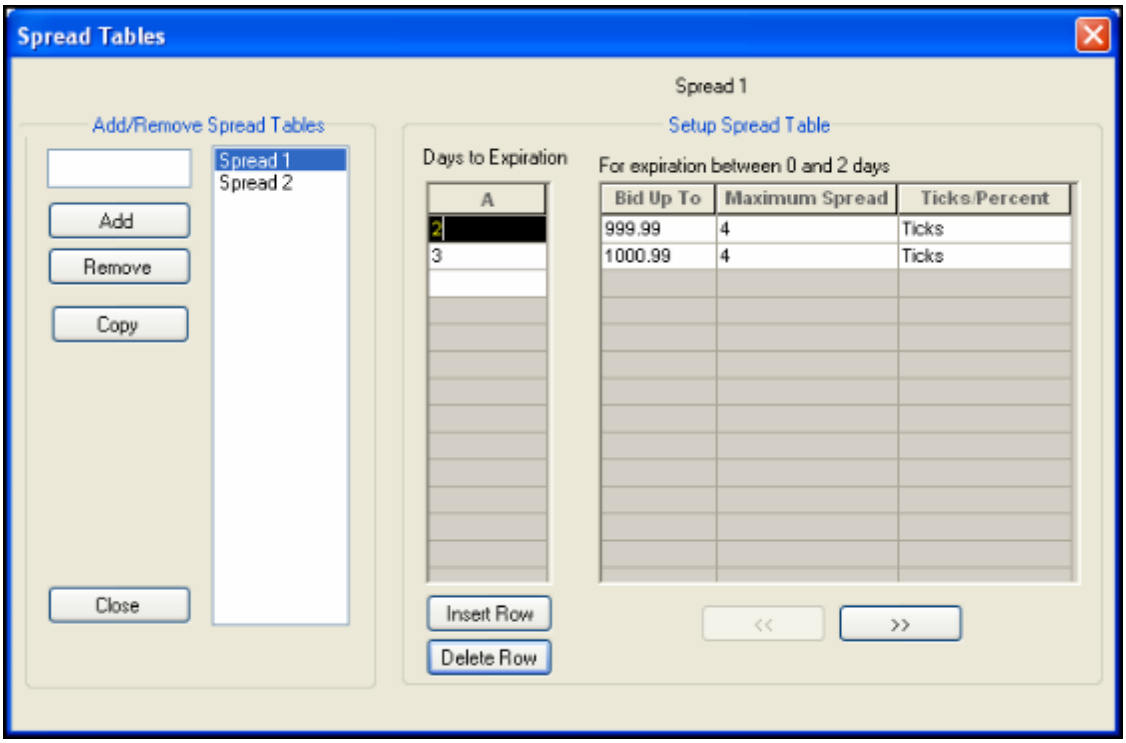
4. Click the product to be removed.
5. Click the **Remove** button.
   The exchange and product no longer appears on the product list.
6. Repeat steps 4-5 to disassociate more products.
7. Click **OK** to exit.

You successfully disassociated a product from a product group.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Spread Tables Setup

Spread tables allow you to define how wide quote spreads should be based on a product's time to expiration and price. You may create any number of strategies, which are then maintained in a file and are available from a drop-down list. After creation, you can then use the new strategy in the course of your trading.



Follow these procedures to manage spread tables:

- Adding a spread table
- Copying a spread table
- Saving a spread table
- Removing a spread table

To access the Spread Tables dialog box:

1. Ensure Quoting is enabled in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Spread Table Setup**.

You successfully accessed the **Spread Tables** dialog box.

Adding a Spread Table

To add a spread table:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Spread Table Setup**.
   The **Spread Tables** dialog box appears.
2. In the **Add/Remove Spread Tables** section, type a name for your table.
3. Click **Add**.
   The table name displays in the column to the right.
4. Click the table name you just created.
   The fields in the **Setup Spread Table** section activate.
5. In the **Days to Expiration** column, click the first cell and type the maximum number of days the first row of bids will be active for before expiring.

   Note: Use the **Days to Expiration** column (A) to set the upper boundary for any given time period. For example:
   - Entering 30 in the top cell creates a 0 to 30-day time-to-expiration period for the **Bid Up To** price and criteria you enter in the top row.
   - Entering 90 in the cell below the 30 creates a 31 to 90-day time-to-expiration period for the **Bid Up To** price and criteria you enter in the second row.
   - Entering 99999 in the cell below the 90 creates the 91–99999 day time period for the **Bid Up To** price and criteria you enter in the third row.
6. In the **Bid Up To** column, click in the first cell and type the maximum amount to bid for the number of days you set in column A. (e.g., 30 days)
7. In the **Maximum Spread** column, click the first cell and type the largest spread to be used (in ticks by default).

   Note: Setting the **Bid Up To** price to 1000 and the **Maximum Spread** to 4 means for all prices up to 1000, the **Maximum Spread** for any quote is 4 ticks wide.
8. In the **Ticks/Percent** column, click the down arrow and select Ticks or Percent to measure the spread by.
9. To set further bidding parameters for this spread table, click the next available row in the **Days of Expiration** column and repeat steps 5-8.

   Notes:
   - You must increase the size of the **Days to Expiration** and **Bid Up to** columns when you add a new row.
   - Use 99999 to indicate 'or longer.' A **Days to Expiration** last entry of 30 goes out to 30 days. If you set the next cell to 99999, you create a time period of 31 days or longer.
10. To verify your settings, click any cell in the **Days to Expiration** column.
    The text above the **Bid Up To** cell confirms the exact time period for the bidding parameters.
11. Click the **Close** button to save.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

You successfully added a spread table.

Copying a Spread Table

To copy a spread table:

1. Click the name of an existing spread table.
2. Click the **Copy** button.
3. Enter a new table name and press ENTER.

   All spread table data is copied to the new table.
4. Click the name of the new table and edit the bidding parameters as necessary.
5. Click the **Close** button to save your changes.

You successfully copied spread table data from one spread table to a new one.

Saving a Spread Table

To save a spread table:

After entering the information into the spread table in the **Spread Tables** dialog box, click the **Close** button.

You successfully saved a spread table.

Removing a Spread Table

To remove a spread table:

1. Click the name of an existing spread table.
2. Click the **Remove** button.

You successfully removed a spread table.

Customer Defaults Setup

You define profiles on the **Customer Defaults** dialog box to establish all of the most common order variables by customer name. These variables include but are not limited to market vs. limit order, and FOK/IOC.

Note: Customer Defaults can be set by an administrator using TT User Setup. If you cannot change your Customer Defaults an administrator may need to make changes for you. Refer to **TTUS Integration with Customer Defaults** on page 86.

	Customer	SEL	Market	Product	Product Type	Account #	Acct
1	<Default>	☑	*	*	*		A1
2	JOHN DOE	☑	CME	*	FUTURE	a12345	A1
3	JANE DOE	☐	CBOT	ZB	SPREAD	b67890	M1

Tip: Click the **SEL** box to add a customer to the Customer List and make them selectable from the **Order Entry** pane. (Refer to **Order Entry Customer Selection Overview** on page 94)

Follow these procedures to manage your Customer Defaults profiles:

- Creating a profile
- Changing a profile
- Deleting a profile
- Setting a profile to read-only
- Sharing your profiles

To access the Customer Defaults dialog box:

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Customer Defaults**.

You successfully accessed the **Customer Defaults** dialog box.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Customer Default Features

Features of the Customer Default profile include:

- Choose a customer account in an **Order Entry** pane and automatically see the associated account type.
- Use the same name in the **Customer** field to create multiple profiles for different exchanges, product types and accounts.

  When you select the customer name in an **Order Entry** pane, X_TRADER maps to the proper account in order of the following criteria:

  1. Customer name
  2. Market
  3. Product
  4. Product Type
  5. Account

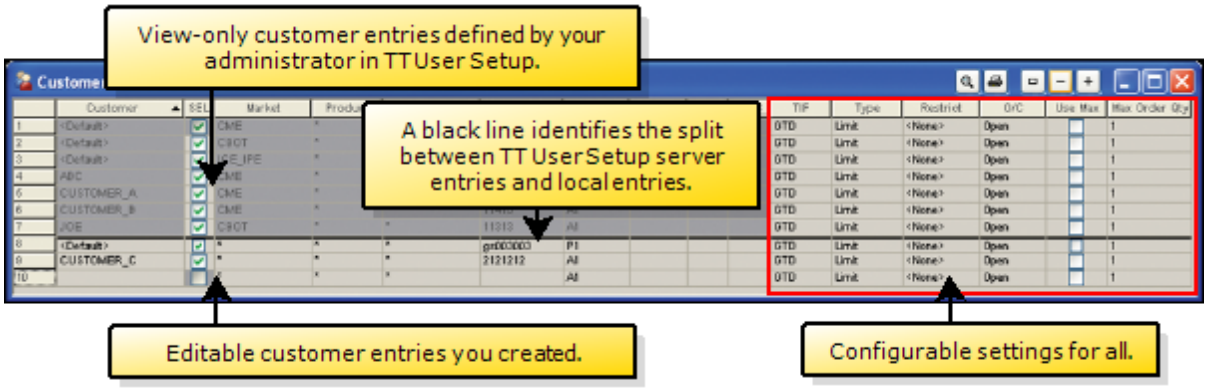
Note: Refer to **Setting Customer Defaults to Read-Only** on page 91 for a discussion on making your Customer Defaults market-based.

TTUS Integration with Customer Defaults

When using TT User Setup, X_TRADER receives Customer Defaults from TTUS. TTUS administrators allow or restrict traders from editing their own local defaults.

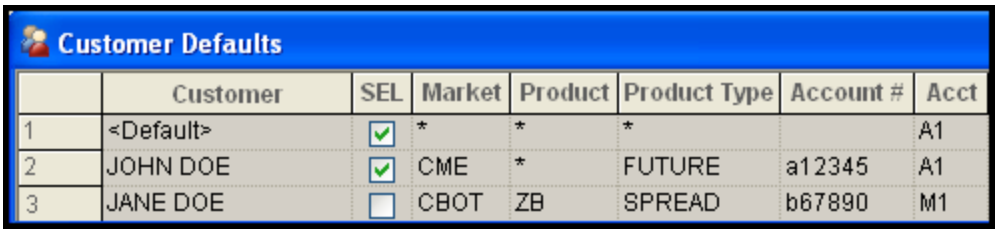
You can create your own Customer Defaults locally in addition to the ones you get from TTUS. The Customer Defaults set by your administrator and the Customer Defaults you create locally are all seen together in the same **Customer Defaults** window.

In the example below, the dark gray area identifies view-only settings from TT User Setup. The light gray identifies locally configurable settings



Customer Defaults Dialog Box Field Descriptions

You define a profile on the **Customer Defaults** dialog box to establish all of the most common order variables by customer name for each customer. You can add a new profile or change the profile of a current customer at any time. By changing the Customer Defaults profile, all subsequent orders for that customer are affected.



Note: An asterisk (*) represents all available options.

The fields in the **Customer Defaults** dialog box are defined as follows:

Field	Description
Customer	Sets the name of the profile.
Gateway	Appears when you are in Multi-Broker mode, this column lets you specify the TT gateway and flavor (e.g., CME-A) or an asterisk (*), meaning apply the customer default information to all available gateways for that market.
SEL	Adds the customer to the **Customer List** window so you can trade for them.
Market	Lists available markets or an asterisk (*), meaning apply the account and account type to all markets you are logged into.
Product	Lets you type a specific product or an asterisk (*), meaning apply the account and account type to all products in the exchange.
Product Type	Lists product types, including: **Future**, **Spread**, **Option**, **Strategy**, **Stock**, **Bond**, **Swap**, **Warrant** or an asterisk (*), meaning all product types.
Account #	Indicates the customer account code. This field can be used by the middle or back office as a sub-account. The account number associates the trade with a specific customer. This field might be required by the exchange (e.g., CME requires it). X_TRADER uses the data specified in this column if no other risk management parameters exist. If you are set up with risk management parameters, X_TRADER uses the risk management account number and the relevant information from the Customer Default profile.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Field	Description
Acct Type	Indicates one of the following account types: • **A1:** First Agent Account (e.g., broker) • **A2:** Second Agent Account • **A3:** Third Agent Account • **G1:** Pre-Designated Giveup Trade • **G2:** Designated Giveup Trade • **G3:** Second Giveup Trade • **M1:** First Market Maker Account • **M2:** Second Market Maker Account • **M3:** Third Market Maker Account • **P1:** First Principal Account (e.g., proprietary trader) • **P2:** Second Principal Account • **P3:** Third Principal Account • **U1:** Unallocated—for orders that have not been allocated to a customer Refer to **Order Entry Pane Field Descriptions** on page 172 for more information.
Give Up	Indicates the clearing member code. Used for Give-up trade accounts only.
FFT2 & FFT3	Used for annotation purposes by the trader or back office (sub-account). The back office manager usually dictates the use of these free-form text fields.
TIF	Indicates the time the order is in force. The order choices are: • **GTD (Good 'til Day)**: Order is valid only for the current trading day. • **GTC (Good 'til Cancel)**: Order is valid until you cancel it, or the contract expires. • **GIS (Good in Session)**: Order is valid only for the current trading session. This TIF is only applicable to the Euronext Liffe exchange.
Type	Indicates the type of order: Limit (default selection) or Mkt (Market).
Restrict	Lists order types and restrictions. Refer to **Order Types** on page 291 for more information. **Note**: Support and definitions for order restrictions are determined by each exchange. If the order type is not supported, the Audit Trail displays an error message from the exchange. Refer to each exchange's market rules for additional information.
O/C	Indicates whether a position is being opened or closed. This information is not used by the exchange and can be used at your discretion.
Use Max	Indicates the maximum trade quantity restriction is applied. A blank box indicates that there is no maximum order quantity, or none is applied. You can establish a high quantity that does not restrict normal trading, yet still provides security against an erroneous trade.
Max Order Qty	Indicates the maximum quantity allowed per trade for the specified account. The **Maximum Order Qty** field in Guardian overrides this one.

Creating a Customer Defaults Profile

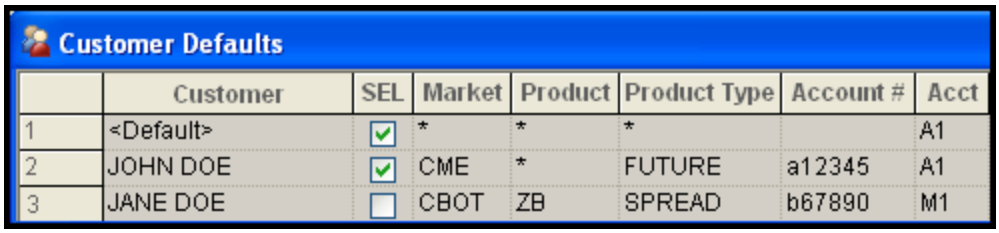
Define a profile on the **Customer Defaults** dialog box to establish all of the most common order variables by customer name.

Note: Customer Defaults can be set by an administrator using TT User Setup. If you cannot change your Customer Defaults an administrator may need to make changes for you. Refer to **TTUS Integration with Customer Defaults** on page 86.

To create a Customer Defaults profile:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Customer Defaults**.

   The **Customer Defaults** dialog box appears.



	Customer	SEL	Market	Product	Product Type	Account #	Acct
1	<Default>	☑	*	*	*		A1
2	JOHN DOE	☑	CME	*	FUTURE	a12345	A1
3	JANE DOE	☐	CBOT	ZB	SPREAD	b67890	M1

2. In the next available row, in the **Customer** field, type the customer name.

   Note: The first profile has a customer name of <Default> which you cannot change.

3. To add the customer to the Customer List and make them selectable on the **Order Entry** pane, click to select the **SEL** box.
4. Fill in the rest of the customer profile information in the remaining fields.

   Notes:
   - In columns with multiple options, an asterisk (*) represents all products. (Refer to **Customer Defaults Dialog Box Field Descriptions** on page 87.)
   - The **Account #** is the account number used for clearing. TT risk management systems override this field. Always enter the same value here that exists in risk management.
   - Some exchanges do not support the FFTEXT2 and FFTEXT3 fields.

5. When changing data on the **Customer Defaults** dialog box, make sure you press `Tab` or `ENTER` to advance to the next field.

   This saves your changes.
6. Close the **Customer Defaults** dialog box.

You successfully created a Customer Defaults profile.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Changing a Customer Defaults Profile

Tip: Click the **SEL** box to add a customer to the Customer List so you can trade for them. (Refer to **Order Entry Customer Selection Overview** on page 94)

Note: Customer Defaults can be set by an administrator using TT User Setup. If you cannot change your Customer Defaults an administrator may need to make changes for you. Refer to **TTUS Integration with Customer Defaults** on page 86.

To change a customer profile:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Customer Defaults**.
   The **Customer Defaults** dialog box appears.
2. Change the customer profile information in the **Customer Defaults** dialog box.
   Note: The first profile has a customer name of <Default> and cannot be changed.
3. When changing data on the **Customer Defaults** dialog box, make sure you press TAB or ENTER to advance to the next field.
   This saves your changes.
4. Close the **Customer Defaults** dialog box.

You successfully changed the information in a Customer Defaults profile.

Deleting a Customer Defaults Profile

To delete a customer profile:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Customer Defaults**.
   The **Customer Defaults** dialog box appears.
2. Right-click a row to delete and click **Delete Row(s)**.

You successfully deleted a Customer Defaults profile.

Setting Customer Defaults to Read-Only

To avoid making changes to your Customer Defaults profile, make the Customer Defaults file read-only.

While in read-only mode, the Customer Defaults file is intended to be market-based. When a contract is seeded in the Market Grid, the customer whose name matches the market of the seeded contract is returned.

Here is an example of a market-based Customer Defaults file:

	Customer	Market	Product	Product Type
1	<Default>	*	*	*
2	CME	CME	*	*
3	CBOT	CBOT	*	*
4	Eurex	Eurex	*	*
5	LIFFE	LIFFE	*	*

Non-market-based Customer Default files can also take advantage of the read-only feature. Though a name automatically appears in the Customer Selection field, you can change the customer selection using the drop-down just as you would change a Customer Default file you can write to.

To set the Customer Defaults file to read-only:

1. From your desktop, right-click **My Computer** and click **Explore**.
2. In Windows Explorer, navigate to: **<root drive>:\tt\datfiles\TTCONFIG**

   Note: This location is configurable in the **Order Entry** tab on the **Properties** menu.
3. Click the **ttconfig** folder to list its contents in the right-side pane.
4. Right-click the **Customer Defaults** file, and click **Properties**.
5. In the **Attributes** box, click to select **Read-only**.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. To close the **Properties** dialog box, click **OK**.

You successfully set the Customer Defaults file to read-only.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Sharing your Customer Defaults Profile

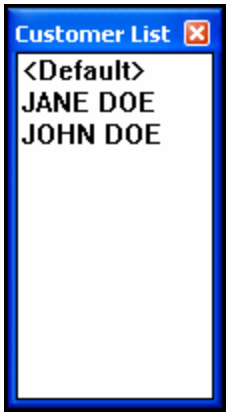
Using the **Order Entry** tab on the **Properties** menu, you can customize the name and location of your Customer Defaults file. Save the file on a shared network if you want to share it.

To save your Customer Defaults file to a network:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Order Entry** tab.
3. In the **Customer Defaults** section, click **Browse**.
4. In the **Look in** field, click the **down arrow** and select the network drive to save the file.
5. In the **File Name** field, type the new name of your Customer Defaults profile.
6. Click **Open**.
7. Review the **Location** field on the **Customer Defaults** tab.
8. Click **OK** to save.

You successfully saved your Customer Defaults file to a network.

Using the Customer List



The **Customer List** window contains all the customer profiles with the **SEL** box marked in the **Customer Defaults** dialog box. It lets you populate all open order entry windows with a customer by selecting it once from this list.

Alternatively, you can select your customers in specific windows before you trade.

You also use the Customer List to select the account number of a customer for the **AutoFilter** option.

▶ **To use the Customer List:**

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Customer List**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

   The **Customer List** window appears.
2. From the **Customer List** window, click the customer you want to use.

   The customer name populates all of your **Order Entry** panes.
3. Make your trades.
4. Select another customer, or revert back to the <Default>.

You successfully used the Customer List.

One Customer Name Entry

The Customer List displays unique customer names once. Even if the same customer name has multiple profiles on the **Customer Defaults** dialog box.

When you select the customer name in an **Order Entry** pane, X_TRADER maps the proper account based on the following criteria:

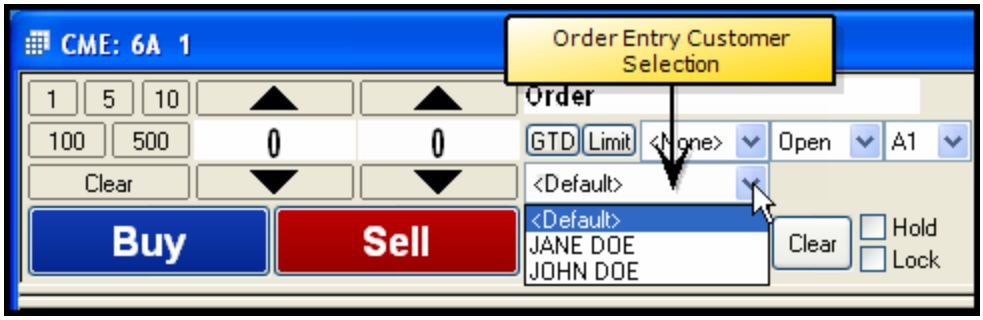
1. Customer name
2. Market
3. Product
4. Product Type
5. Account

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Order Entry Customer Selection Overview

The **Order Entry Customer Selection** list contains all the customer profiles with the **SEL** box marked in the Customer Defaults dialog box.

Use the **Order Entry Customer Selection** list as an alternative to using the Customer List.



The **Order Entry Customer Selection** list is available to:

- Simplify switching from one customer profile to another when the Customer List is not displayed.
- Switch to a different customer profile for just one **Order Entry** pane.

Properties Menu Overview

The **Properties** menu contains tabs that allow you to activate, deactivate, and customize various X_TRADER windows and options. Changes made to the **Properties** menu are specific to the user logged in. This includes all workspace settings, sound events, and so forth.

Notes:

- Settings become the defaults for all new windows. For your custom changes to take effect, you must close and re-open trading windows.
- If another user logs in on the same machine, the property settings must be reset for that user.

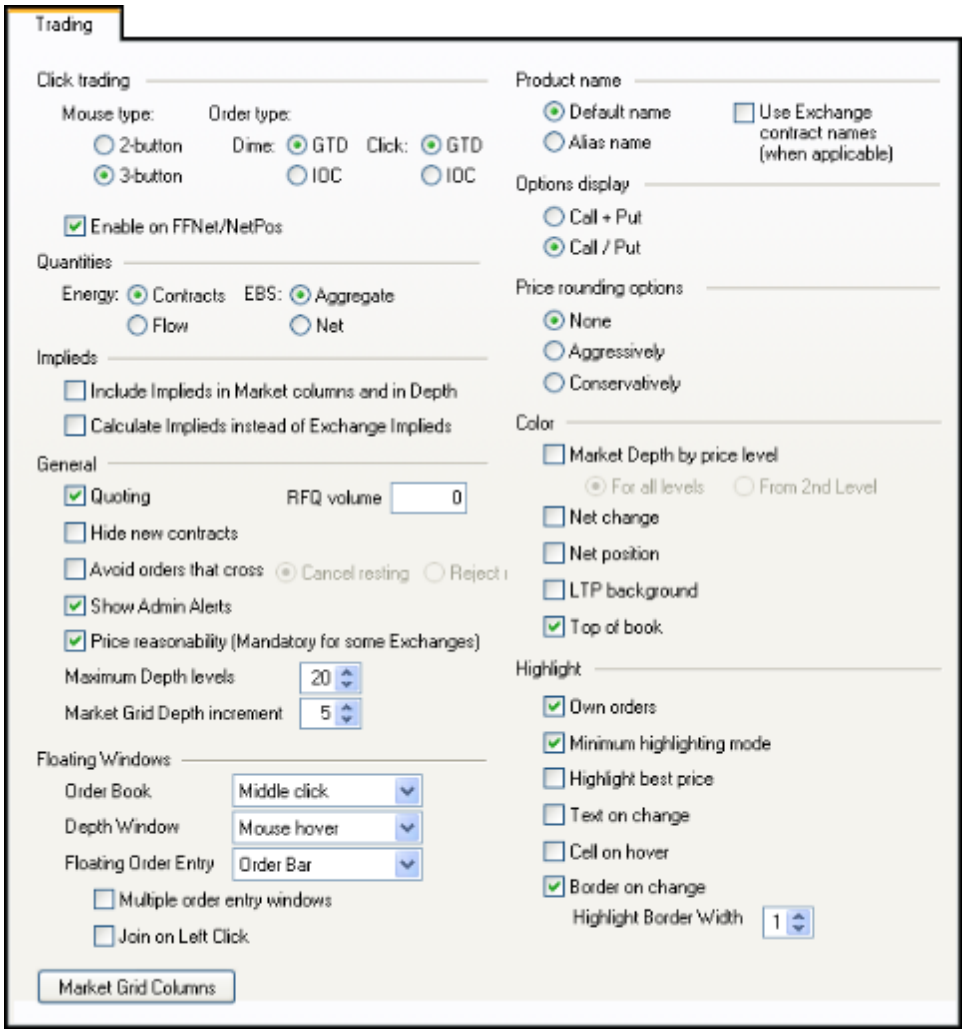
Property Tab Names

Tab	Description
Trading	Customize the trading screens to suit your trading style and environment.
Order Entry	Customize the Order Entry and Market Grid panes of the **Market** window.
Fill	Customize fast fill notification, enable or disable buy/sell color-coding, and select default visible columns for the **Fill** window.
Orders	Customize which buttons display, buy/sell color-coding and select default visible columns for the **Order Book** window.
Audit Trail	Select viewable records, enable or disable buy/sell color-coding, and default visible columns for the **Audit Trail** window.
Sounds	Associate an X_TRADER event with an audio cue.
Color	Select text, background, and border colors.
Spread Matrix	Customize the **Spread Matrix** window to suit your trading style and environment.
Time and Sales	Set the maximum file size and number of days to save time and sales information.
MD Trading	Set trading parameters for MD Trader, including maximum order quantity.
MD Display	Set display options for MD Trader, including EPIQ and volume at price.
MD Color	Customize color specific options and features for MD Trader.
MD Advanced	Enable and define the User-Defined Price (UDP) column in MD Trader which allows you to trade in yield.
Quote Board	Hide or Show fields for all the **Quote Board** windows. Enable or disable displaying the exchange name.
Hotkeys	Assign, reset and remove hot key designations for the Order Bar, MD Trader, Quote Board, and the Delete All Orders command.
Autospreader	Customize properties for Autospreader orders and the **Hedge Manager** window.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Trading Tab

The **Trading** tab sets trading properties to suit your trading style and environment. The properties affect order entry in the **Market** window.



Click Trading	Description
Mouse type	Identifies the type of mouse you use. The **3 button** mouse is selected by default. Itsupports dime trading with the middle button, and click trading with the right button. The **2-button mouse** requires the manual selection of dime or click trading. The right mouse button is used to trade.
Warning! Some versions of the Microsoft Intellimouse driver are incompatible with X_TRADER . If the middle button of your Intellimouse cannot be used for click trading, launch **Add/Remove Programs** and remove the Intellimouse driver. This disables the scrolling feature of the mouse, but lets you click trade.	
Order type	Sets the default order type for dime and click trading. Select **GTD** (Good 'til Day) or **IOC** (Immediate or Cancel).
Enable on	Enables click trading on Fast Fill Net Position.

Click Trading	Description
FFNet/NetPos	

Quantities	Description
Energy	Determines how you view trading quantities when trading on the ICE exchange. **Contracts**: Represents entire delivery amount. **Flow**: Represents the amount to be delivered in each delivery period. Refer to **Trading ICE** on page 427.
EBS	Determines whether the outside quantity includes the viewable quantities at the first two tradable prices: **Aggregate**: Counts the total number sent by the exchange, including the first two levels of depth. **Net**: Subtracts the first two levels of depth from the total depth sent by the exchange. Refer to **Trading EBS** on page 415.

Implieds	Description
Include Implieds in Market Columns and in Depth	Displays implied price and quantity data as calculated by the Exchange in the same columns as direct price and quantity data. Implied data displays in the Market Grid, MD Trader, Autospreader, and Autotrader.
Calculate Implieds instead of using Exchange Implieds	Displays first level implied prices calculated by X_TRADER. When disabled, implied prices display as published by the exchanges. This property affects all windows that displays prices. **Note**: Some exchanges do not match implied prices they do not publish.

General	Description
Quoting	Enables the **Quoting** option on the Market Grid context menu. (Refer to **Enabling Quoting** on page 231)
RFQ volume	Indicates the default volume for the **Request for Quote** option on the Market Grid context menu.
Hide new contracts	Hides new contracts and strategies from the Market Grid when they are released. This property keeps your saved Market Grids intact until you change them.
Avoid orders that cross	Sends delete requests when a new order is sent that would ordinarily cross the working order. The radio buttons determine which order is removed: • **Cancel resting**: Sends a cancel request on the working order and places the new order. • **Reject new**: Rejects the new order. This property excludes Market, Stop, Held and Autospreader orders. It also can be managed by TT User Setup administrators. If the property is enabled in TT User Setup, it appears checked and grayed out in X_TRADER. If it is not enabled in TT User Setup, you can set it as needed in X_TRADER. **Note**: Due to timing issues outside of X_TRADER, an exchange may process

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

General	Description
	a new order prior to processing a delete request.
Show Admin Alerts	Enables the **Admin Alert Messages** dialog box, which lets you receive messages from your risk manager or an administrator.
Price reasonability (Mandatory for some Exchanges)	Defines a maximum number of ticks from the last price acceptable by supporting exchanges. A trade is rejected if it falls outside the range set by the exchange. Detailed information must be obtained from the exchange.
Maximum Depth Levels	Indicates the maximum number of depth levels, between 3 and 20, displayed for Bids and Offers. This setting will not override the maximum depth each gateway displays. **Example**: If you set this value to 8 but the exchange limits maximum depth to 5 bids and 5 offers, you will only see five levels.
Market Depth increment	Indicates the number of rows of depth displayed in the Market Grid when you choose the **Depth** layout from the context menu. Each time you click the depth arrow, the same number of depth rows display. Default is 5 rows. **Note**: The maximum amount of depth displayed depends on the Gateway.

Floating Windows	Description
Order Book	Designates how you call the Floating Order Book: • **<Disabled>**: Disables the floating order book. • **Middle click**: When you click the middle mouse button. • **Keyboard**: **Hotkey** tab establishes launch button. Refer to **Using the Floating Order Book** on page 343 for a procedure. • **Mouse hover**: When you hover the cursor over the product.
Depth Window	Designates how you call the Floating Depth Window: • **<Disabled>**: Disables the floating depth window. • **Middle click**: When you click the middle mouse button. • **Keyboard**: **Hotkey** tab establishes launch button. Refer to **Using the Floating Order Book** on page 343 for a procedure. • **Mouse hover**: When you hover the cursor over the product. **Note**: Launch methods for the Depth window and Floating Order Book must be different.
Order Entry	Designates how your floating order entry pane appears when called: • **Order Pane**: The **Order Entry** pane on the **Market** window. • **MD Trader**: An MD Trader with a yellow border. • **Order Bar**: A thin red or blue interface, which can be used in conjunction with hotkeys. **Multiple order entry windows**: Launches a separate floating order entry window for each window with floating order entry enabled. For example: • Two separate Market Grid windows • A Market Grid and a Quote Board **Note**: A Market Grid with two tabs launches the same floating order entry window.

Floating Windows	Description
	Refer to **Using Multiple Floating Order Entry Windows** on page 179. **Join on Left Click**: Joins the bid or ask, as opposed to aggressing against a bid or ask. Enabled when **Order Bar** is your Floating Order Entry.

Product Name	Description
Default name	Labels the contracts using the product name used by TT.
Alias name	Uses the alias names from the **Guardian** product tables as the product name.
Use Exchange contract names (when applicable)	Labels the contracts using the exchange name.

Options Display	Description
Call+Put	Displays each strike on a single line of the Market Grid, with the calls on the left side and the puts on the right.
Call/Put	Displays each strike on two lines of the Market Grid, with the calls placed directly over the puts.

Price Rounding Options	Description
This property lets you choose your ¼ 32nd rounding options. It applies to all orders you enter except Autospreader and Autotrader orders, and Stop orders that always round away from the market.	
None	Sends order at your selected price. If the price is not tradable, the exchange rejects the order.
Aggressively	Rounds ¼ tick prices towards the market.
Conservatively	Rounds ¼ tick prices away from the market.

Color	Description
Market Depth by price level	Color codes the Market Depth by price level **For All Levels** or **From 2nd Level** on. You can customize your market depth colors on the **Color** tab.
Net change	Displays color coding of the **Net Change** column. You can customize your net change colors on the **Color** tab.
Net position	Displays color coding of **Net Position** column. You can customize your position colors on the **Color** tab.
LTP background	Displays the **Last Traded Price** background coloring scheme.
Top of book	Displays the top of book price in a different size font and color. Used for the Market Grid and Spread Matrix. You can customize your top of book colors on the **Color** tab.

Highlight	Description
Own orders	Highlights your own orders to easily identify them. Used for the Market Grid and Spread Matrix.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Highlight	Description
Minimum highlighting mode	Highlights according to the following market characteristics: • When both the quantity and price change. • When the Last Traded Price (LTP) is on the bid or ask. If the Last Traded Price was not on the bid or ask, the grid does not highlight. Used for the Market Grid and Spread Matrix. Enabled by default.
Highlight best price	Highlights the best price in the market.
Text on change	Improves identification of affected cells when the market moves.
Cell on hover	Displays a 3-D effect as the cursor moves over a cell to help track your cursor position.
Border on change	Improves identification of affected cells when the market moves. **Highlight Border Width**: Set a border width using the arrows.

Market Grid Columns	Description
Market Grid Columns	Sets the default visible Market Grid columns.

Admin Alert Messages

The **Admin Alert** window displays messages sent from your risk manager or other administrator. When you enable the **Show Admin Alerts** in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu, the **Admin Alerts** window appears similar to the sample below:

To close, click the **X** in the upper right-hand corner.

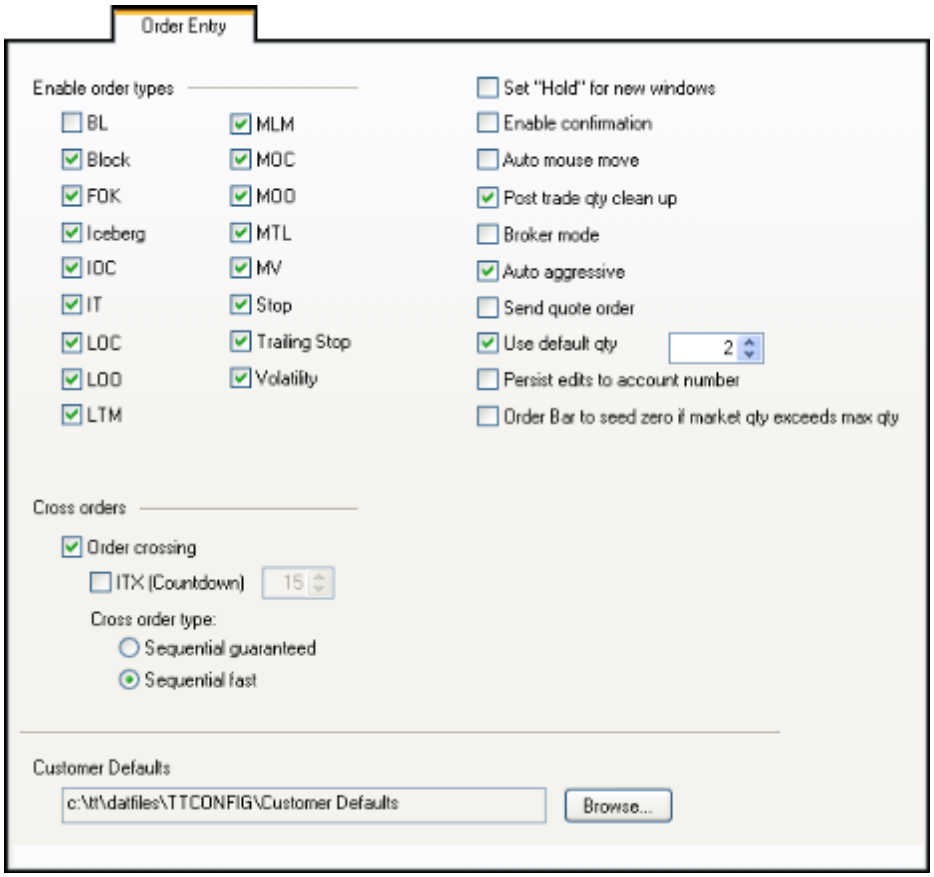
Messages remain in the **Admin Alerts** window until you close the window or exit X_TRADER. They also appear in the Audit Trail. Once you close the window, these messages are not saved.

You can resize the window and save it with your workspace. When you reopen the workspace, the **Admin Alert Messages** window appears, but past messages do not reappear.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Order Entry Tab

The **Order Entry** tab sets properties for the **Order Entry** pane on the **Market** window.



Enable Order Types	Description
BL	Enables Best Limit. BL lets you join the best bid or offer without entering a price. Available on TOCOM.
Block	Enables Eurex Block Trades. (For Block trades on LIFFE, refer to **Wholesale Trading Overview** on page 381.) Block trades are high-volume trades whose price has been separately agreed to by both parties outside of the normal exchange trading methods. When you select **Block** from the **Order Type** field, the **Counterparty Information** field automatically displays.
FOK	Enables Fill or Kill. FOK immediately fills the entire order or immediately cancels the entire order.
Iceberg	Enables Iceberg. Iceberg restricts your order with a disclosed quantity so you can execute your total order by only sending portions of it to the market at a time. Attributes of an Iceberg include: • Each disclosed quantity is equal. • On the **Order Entry** pane, set the quantity as an order quantity or a percentage of the total order quantity. In MD Trader, you can only set the parameter as an order quantity.
IOC	Enables Immediate or Cancel. IOC immediately partial fills the order before the balance cancels.

Enable Order Types	Description
IT	Enables If Touched. IT submits the order a set number of ticks away from the inside market and is activated when the market touches the price level.
LOC	Enables Limit On Close. LOC sets a limit order that only executes at the close. Any portion not filled at the close cancels. (For TSE and OSE only)
LOO	Enables Limit On Open. LOO sets limit order that only executes at the open. Any portion not filled at the open cancels.
LTM	Enables Limit to Market. LTM sets a limit order where any unfilled portion converts to a market order at the close. (For TSE and OSE only)
MLM	Enables Market Limit Market. MLM sets a buy order placed above the best offer to fill by the best offer, and a sell order placed below the best bid to fill by the best bid.
MOC	Enables Market On Close. MOC sets a market order that only executes at the close.
MOO	Enables Market On Open. MOO sets a market order which is only valid during the pre-opening period on all exchanges and are intended for execution at the opening market price. This order type is not available in MD Trader.
MTL	Enables Market to Limit. MTL send a Market order with the condition that on a partial fill, the remaining quantity rests as a Limit order at the price that was just hit or taken. Available on TOCOM and SGX.
MV	Enables Minimum Volume. MV sets the minimum order quantity that must be available in the market. If the quantity is not met, the entire order cancels.
Stop	Enables Stop. Stop sets the stop price for limit or market orders. X_TRADER supports Stop orders on all exchanges. • A Stop limit order to Buy becomes a market order when the futures contract trades (or is bid) at or above the stop price. • A Stop limit order to Sell becomes a market order when the futures contract trades (or is offered) at or below the stop price.
Trailing Stop	Enables Trailing Stop. Trailing Stop sets the price for a stop order a fixed distance from the current market price and moves dynamically. Trailing Stops can be limit or market orders.
Volatility	Enables Volatility. Volatility is an order separately agreed to by both parties and approved by Eurex.

Cross Orders	Description
Order crossing	Lets you trade outside the market with a specified party using the **Cross** tab on the **Order Entry** pane. **ITX (Countdown)**: Enables an intention to cross countdown in seconds. Some exchanges require a countdown to cross trade. **Cross order type**: Sets how cross orders are submitted. • **Sequential fast**: Default. Both orders (buy and sell) immediately submit, one after the other. On occasion, heavy market conditions can lead to routing the orders through different routers. As a result, the wrong leg might arrive at the exchange host first. • **Sequential guaranteed**: Waits for an acknowledgement of the first

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Cross Orders	Description
	order from the exchange before sending the second order. Due to the delay, it is possible for a third party to take the offer or bid before both sides are matched. **Note**: In both cases, if the first side fills (partially or completely), the second side of the cross order still submits.
Refer to **Cross Trades Overview** on page 212 for more information.	

General	Description
Set "Hold" for new windows	Sets **Order Entry** panes to open with the **Hold** option checked.
Enable confirmation	Provides a confirmation step before submitting orders. To use this property for a single order, disable it here. Then, click the **Confirm** checkbox in the pane. This box is located next to the **Sell** button.
Auto mouse move	Increases the speed at which you can submit orders by moving the mouse to the **Buy** or **Sell** button when you click the bid (sell) or ask (buy) side of a contract. Works for the **Order Entry** pane and **Order Bar**.
Post trade qty clean up	Clears the **Quantity** field after you submit an order. **Note**: If you enable **Use Default Qty** and **Post Trade Qty Clean Up**, the quantity does not clear after the order is submitted.
Broker mode	Increases the size of the **Buy** or **Sell** button in the **Order Entry** pane when you are about to submit a trade.
Auto aggressive	Sets Passive orders to automatically hit the bid or take the offer of a competing Passive order and prevent the market from locking up. For the BrokerTec exchange.
Send quote order	Sets the orders you send to the market to replace previous orders for that contract on the same side of the market. If this property is not enabled, the default order type will be Leave, and the previous orders will not be canceled. Disabled by default. For the BrokerTec exchange.
Use default qty	Sets a default quantity that displays for order entry. **Note**: If you enable **Use Default Qty** and **Post Trade Qty Clean Up**, the quantity does not clear after the order is submitted.
Persist edits to account number	Keeps the account number you type in the **Order Entry** pane until you submit an order.
Order Bar to seed zero if market qty exceeds max qty	Seeds a 0 in the quantity field if an aggressive action is taken to invoke the Order Bar and the market quantity is greater than the maximum quantity defined in Customer Defaults. Disabled by default.

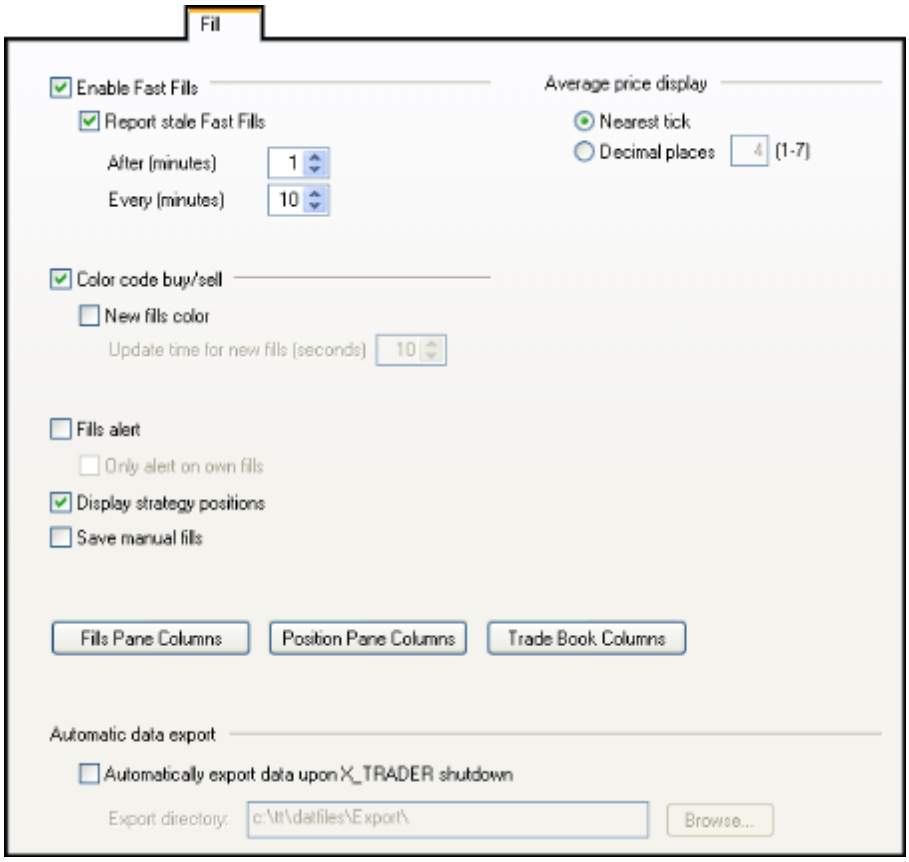
Customer Defaults	Description
Customer Defaults	Lets you customize the name and location of your Customer Defaults file. Save the file on a shared network if you want to share it.

Customer Defaults	Description
	Refer to **Sharing your Customer Defaults Profile** on page 92 for more information.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Fill Tab

The **Fill** tab sets properties for the **Fill** window.



Enable Fast Fills	Description
Enable Fast Fills	Lets supporting exchanges provide partial trade information prior to sending a confirmed fill (e.g., Eurex supports).
Report stale Fast Fills	Flashes a message reporting the existence of a stale fast fill until you refresh your position. Enabled by default. Properties include: • **After**: Sets the refresh rate for Fast Fills. Fast fills that do not receive a matching confirmation from the exchange are considered stale after the time specified. • **Every**: Sets how often stale fast fills are reported. Ten minutes is the default.

Color Code Buy/Sell	Description
Color code buy/sell	Lets supporting exchanges provide partial trade information prior to sending a confirmed fill (e.g., Eurex supports). Lets you quickly differentiate among orders. Default colors are: • Text color for Buy orders is blue. • Text color for Sell orders is red. • Confirmed fill text background is gray. Enabled by default. You can customize your fill colors on the **Color** tab. **Note**: When you enable color-coding, color formatting of the individual grids is disabled. Only the colors you select via the **Color** tab apply.
New fills color	Sets a visible indicator when a new fill appears in the **Fill** window. **Update time for new fills (seconds)**: Sets how often the indicator bar updates and displays new fills.

Average Price Display	Description
Nearest tick	Shows average price to nearest tick settings.
Decimal places (1-7)	Shows average price display in decimals.

General	Description
Fills alert	Displays a dialog box when a fill arrives from an exchange.
Only alert on own fills	Ignores all fills except your own. **Note**: If you place an order using an account # mapped to a TTORD ID you are not logged in under, you will not receive the fill alert.
Display strategy positions	Displays the first and second leg along with the spread in the **Fill** pane and the **Position** pane of the **Fill** window. When disabled, only the spread is shown.
Save manual fills	Saves all manual fills to your hard drive. Enabled by default. When enabled, you are prompted to log into all exchanges where you have manual fills. If disabled, you lose your manual fills when you log out.

Fills Pane Columns	Description
Fills Pane Columns	Lets you select the default visible columns for the **Fills** pane in the **Fill** window.

Position Pane Columns	Description
Position Pane Columns	Lets you select the default visible columns for the **Position** pane in **the Fill** window.

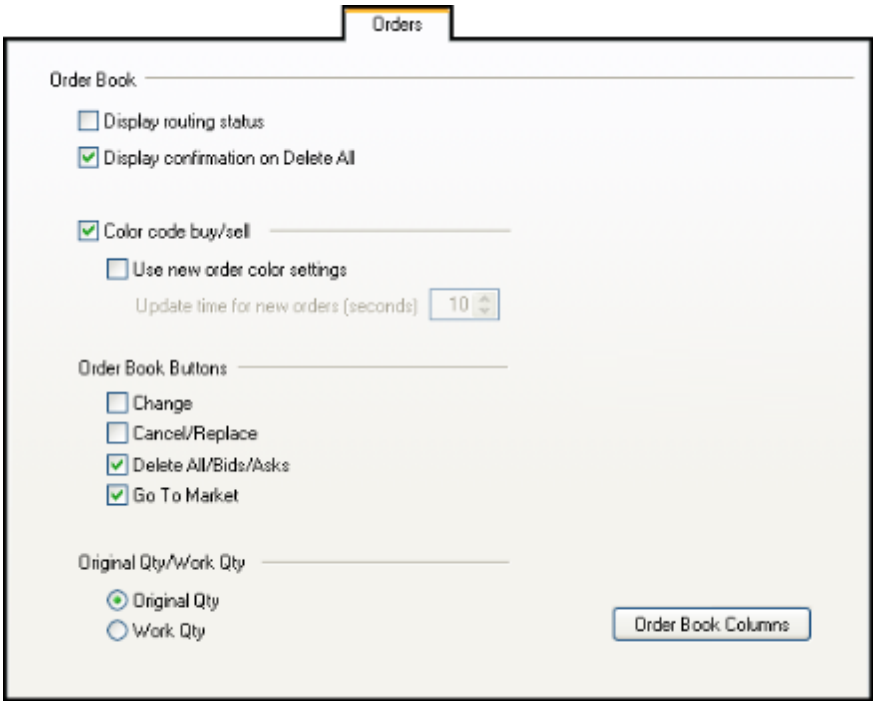
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Trade Book Columns	Description
Trade BookColumns	Lets you select the default visible columns for the **Trade Book** window.

Automatic Data Export	Description
Automatically export data upon shutdown	Exports fill data to the folder of choice when you shutdown. • Your **Fill** window must be open when you shutdown for this to work. • A file is created, matching each open **Fill** window and their filters.

Orders Tab

The **Orders** tab sets properties for the **Order Book** window.



Order Book	Description
Display routing status	Displays *routing* in the **TT Status** column in the Order Book when you send an order to market. This identifies the order as sent. **Note**: This does not apply to orders generated by automated tools (Autotrader, Autospreader).
Display confirmation on Delete All	Displays a warning notification in the Order Book when you click **Delete All**.

Color Code buy/sell	Description
Color code buy/sell	Lets you quickly differentiate among orders. Default colors are: • Text color for Buy orders is blue. • Text color for Sell orders is red. • Confirmed fill text background is gray. Enabled by default. You can customize your order colors on the **Color** tab. **Note**: When you enable color-coding, color formatting of the individual grids is disabled. Only the colors you select via the **Color** tab apply.
Use new order color settings	Sets a visible indicator when a new order appears in the **Order** window. **Update time for new orders (seconds)**: Sets how often the indicator bar updates and displays new orders.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

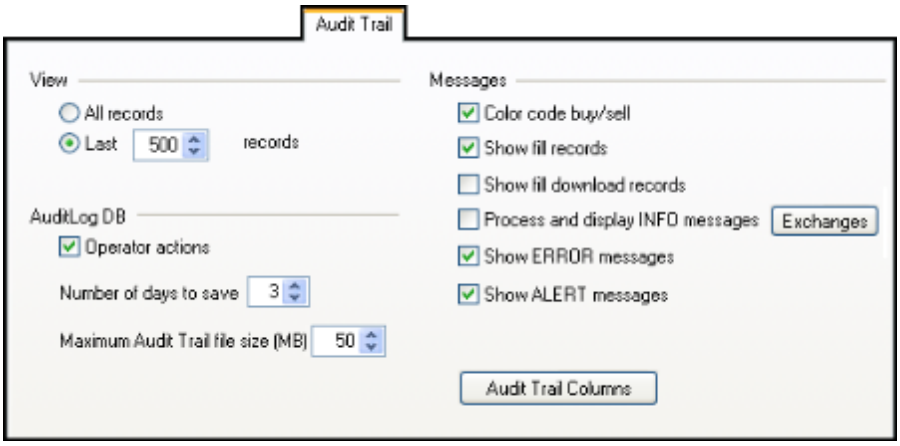
Order Book Buttons	Description
Order Book Buttons	Places trading buttons on the Order Book. Your options are: • **Change**: Changes an order without losing your place in the queue. • **Cancel/Replace**: Replaces an existing order. • **Delete All/Bids/Asks**: Deletes orders. • **Go To Market**: Sends orders for immediate fill.

Original Qty/Work Qty	Description
Original Qty/Work Qty	When you highlight a row in the Order Book, the quantity field displays: • **Original Quantity**: Just the order's original quantity regardless of partial fills. • **Work Quantity**: The current working quantity of the order, taking partial fills into consideration.

Order Book Columns	Description
Order Book Columns	Lets you select the default visible columns for the **Order Book** window.

Audit Trail Tab

The **Audit Trail** tab sets properties for the **Audit Trail** window.



View	Description
All records	Shows all recorded data in the Audit Trail.
Last # records	Shows a specific number of the most recent messages to display (100-2000).

AuditLogDB	Description
Operator actions	Logs some actions you execute via mouse clicks or keyboard strokes. **Example**: `Delete` in the Order Book is always logged. MD Trader actions are never logged.
Number of days to save	Sets the number of days Audit Trail log files remain in a database. Files are located in: **<root drive>:\tt\logfiles\AuditLog** **Note**: If you use automated tools, like Autotrader or Autospreader, change the days kept to the minimum of three (3).
Maximum Audit Trail file size (MB)	Sets the amount of data the Audit Trail log file holds before creating a new one. The file size are configurable from 10MB - 200MB with a default of 50MB of data.

Messages	Description
Color code buy/sell	Lets you quickly differentiate among orders. Default colors are: • Text color for Buy orders is blue. • Text color for Sell orders is red. Enabled by default.
Show fill records	Shows fill records. Enabled by default.
Show fill down-load records	Downloads and displays all fills on startup. Disabled by default. **Note**: You have to enable **Process and display INFO messages** for this property to work.
Process and display INFO messages	Shows informational messages from exchanges like *MARKET IS OPEN* or *DONE RECEIVING FILLS FOR CBOT*. Disabled by default. The default colors are white text on a black background. Click the **Exchanges** button to select which exchanges from whom you want

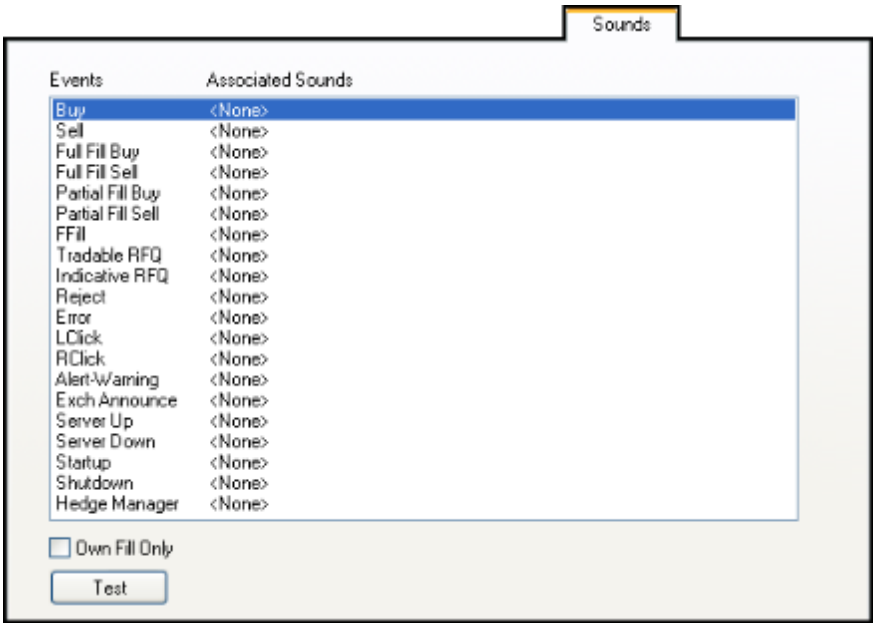
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Messages	Description
	to view INFO messages.
Show ERROR messages	Shows error messages like *ORDER HAS BEEN REJECTED*. Enabled by default. The default colors for are white text on black background.
Show ALERT messages	Shows alert messages like *FILL SERVER IS DOWN*. Enabled by default. When enabled, the default colors are black text on a yellow background. You can customize your Alert-Warning colors on the **Color** tab.

Audit Trail Columns	Description
Audit Trail Columns	Lets you select the default visible **Audit Trail** window columns.

Sounds Tab

The **Sounds** tab sets audio notifications for specific events if your workstation is equipped with a sound card and speakers and the appropriate drivers are installed.



General	Description
Events	List the actions for which you can assign a sound. • **Buy/Sell**: Plays when you place a Buy or Sell order • **Full Fill Buy/Sell**: Plays when your Buy or Sell order fully fills. • **Partial Fill Buy/Sell**: Plays when your Buy or Sell order partially fills. • **FFill**: Plays when you get a fast fill. • **Tradable RFQ**: Plays when your request for quote receives a tradable price. • **Indicative RFQ**: Plays when your request for quote receives an indicative price. • **Reject**: Plays when your order is rejected. • **Error**: Plays when X_TRADER receives an error. • **LClick/RClick**: Plays when you left or right click. • **Alert-Warning**: Plays when you get a system alert or warning. • **Exch Announce**: Plays when the Audit Trail receives an exchange announcement. • **Server Up/Down**: Plays when the Fill or Order server comes up or goes down. • **Startup**: Plays when you start X_TRADER. • **Shutdown**: Plays when you close X_TRADER. • **Hedge Manager**: Plays when the Autospreader Hedge Manager detects a legged order.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

General	Description
Associated Sounds	List the sound files and their source directory.

Checkbox	Description
Own Fill Only	Indicates the sound will only play when the order filled is yours. If you share an order book and this property is not checked, you will hear fill sounds for traders who share your order book.

Button	Description
Test	Lets you listen to the highlighted sound.

To access the Sounds tab:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Sounds** tab.

You successfully accessed the **Sounds** tab.

Suggestions

Keep these points in mind when managing your sound files:

- Copy sound files from another source (for example, WINNT\Media directory) to the **<root drive>:\tt\x_trader\Sounds** directory.
- Keep sound files short in duration. Longer files cannot keep up with near simultaneous events.

For example, when performing a cross trade with sounds assigned to buy and sell events, the first sound is either cut off or unheard because the buy and sell events are closely timed.

Contract High and Low Sounds

You can add sounds for a contract's high and low price threshold for the day. Whenever a contract trades above the high price or below the lowest price, these sounds are played. Assign different sounds for the high and low on the same contract, as well as different sounds for different contracts.

Manage adding sounds for high and low prices in the **Alerts Manager** dialog box.

Adding an Event Sound

To add an event sound to a given event:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Sounds** tab.

   The top list box displays the event and its associated sound. By default, no audio files (<None>) are associated with the events.
3. Under the **Events** column, double-click the event to which you want to assign a sound.

   The **Associated Sounds** column is editable.
4. Click the ... icon to locate the sound file you want to use as your alert.
5. If necessary, navigate to the location where the sound files are located. (In most X_TRADER installations this is in the following folder: **<root drive>:\tt\x_trader\Sounds**)
6. When you have located the file, highlight it and click **Open**.

   The new sound name and path displays next to the selected event.
7. To test the sound, click **Test**.
8. Click **Apply** and then **OK** to exit.

You successfully added an event sound.

Changing or Removing an Event Sound

To change or remove a sound from an event:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Sounds** tab.
3. Under the **Events** column, double-click the event from which you want to remove a sound.

   The **Associated Sounds** column is editable.
4. Press the **Delete** key.
5. Click **Apply**.

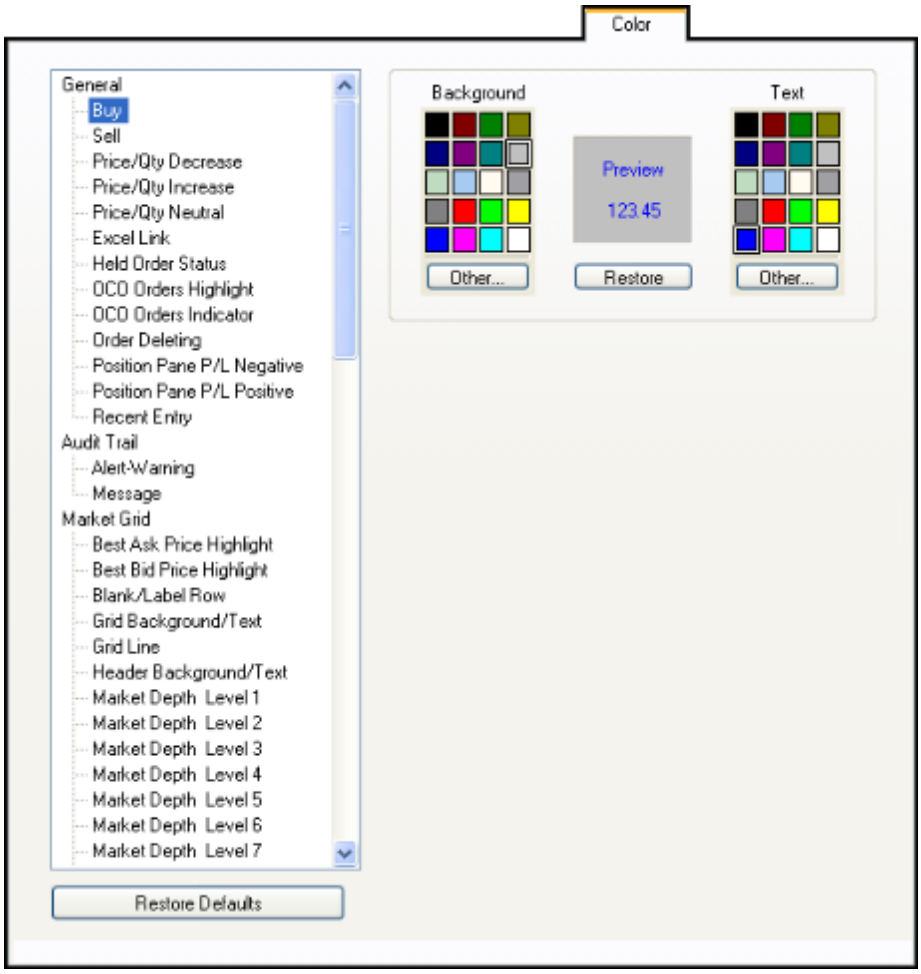
   The event sound is removed from the event.
6. Click **OK** to exit.

You successfully changed or removed a sound from an event.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Color Tab

The **Color** tab customizes color settings for specific windows and text in X_TRADER. To change your color options, refer to **Changing Global Colors of Windows or Text** on page 119.



General	Default Colors
Buy	Gray with blue text
Sell	Gray with red text
Price/Qty Decrease	Red
Price/Qty Increase	Green
Price/Qty Neutral	White
Excel Link	Dark Gray
Held Order Status	Yellow with black text
OCO Orders Highlight	Light Yellow
OCO Orders Indicator	Dark Yellow
Order Deleting	Red
Position Pane P/L Negative	Red with white text
Position Pane P/L Positive	Dark Green with white text

General	Default Colors
Recent Entry	White with black text

Audit Trail	Default Colors
Alert-Warning	Yellow with black text
Message	Black with white text

Market Grid	Default Colors
Best Ask Price Highlight	Blue border outline
Best Bid Price Highlight	Red border outline
Blank/Label Row	Tan with brown text
Grid Background/Text	Tan with brown text
Grid Line	Dark tan
Header Background/Text	Tan with brown text
Market Depth Level 1-7	Default color follows the NASDAQ Level II color conventions
Net Change Down	Red with black text
Net Change Unchanged	Gray with black text
Net Change Up	Green with black text
Non-Tradable	Burgundy with white text
Position Flat	White with black text
Position Long	Light Purple with white text
Position Short	Red with white text
Top of Book Ask	Yellow with red text
Top of Book Bid	Yellow with blue text

Spread Matrix	Default Colors
Outright Price/Quantity	
Direct Ask	Dark Gray with red text
Direct Bid	Dark Gray with blue text
Implied Ask	Pink with black text
Implied Bid	Light Blue with white text
Combination Ask	White with red text
Combination Bid	White with blue text
Spread Price/Quantity	
Direct Ask	Red with black text
Direct Bid	Blue with white text
Implied Ask	Pink with black text
Implied Bid	Light Blue with white text
Combination Ask	White with red text
Combination Bid	White with blue text
Net Change Display Mode	
Ask Text	Dark Red
Bid Text	Dark Blue
Down Background	Pink

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Spread Matrix	Default Colors
Unchanged Background	White
Up Background	Light Green
General	
Missing Spread Series	Dark Gray
LTP/LTQ	White with black text
Position Long	Blue with white text
Position Short	Red with white text

Quote Board	Default Colors
Background	White
Barometer Bottom	Blue
Barometer LTP	Yellow
Barometer Top	Red
P/L Even	Black text
P/L Negative	Red text
P/L Positive	Green text
Position Flat	Black text
Position Long	Blue text
Position Short	Red text
Price Data Negative	Red text
Price Data Positive	Green text
Price Data Unchanged	Black text

Quote Board	Default Colors
Background - Non Selected Pane	Tan
Background - Selected Pane	Canary
Border - Selected Pane	Maroon
Dealable Best Ask	Red
Dealable Best Bid	Blue
EBS Best Ask	Red
EBS Best Bid	Blue
Grid	Gray
Position Long	Blue background
Position Short	Red background
Regular / Outside Ask	Red
Regular / Outside Bid	Blue
Threshold Exceeded Qty	Black text
Working Buys	Blue text on white background
Working Sells	Red text on white background

Time and Sales	Default Colors
Buy	Blue text, Tan background
Indeterminate	Black text, Tan background
OTC	Black text, Yellow background

Time and Sales	Default Colors
Sell	Red text, Tan background

Trade Book	Default Colors
Partial Buy Background	Yellow
Partial Sell Background	Yellow

Changing Global Colors of Windows or Text

You can change many of the colors used in X_TRADER. The two property tabs that house the color options are the **Color** tab and the **MD Color** tab.

Follow these procedures to change the color of a window or text:

- Use a standard color for a window or text
- Create and use a custom color for a window or text

To use a standard color for a window or text:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Color** tab.
3. Click the name of the color setting you want to change.
4. Click a color from the palette.

   The **Preview** section displays your chosen color.
5. Click **Apply** and then **OK** to exit.

You successfully changed the colors for X_TRADER display windows.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

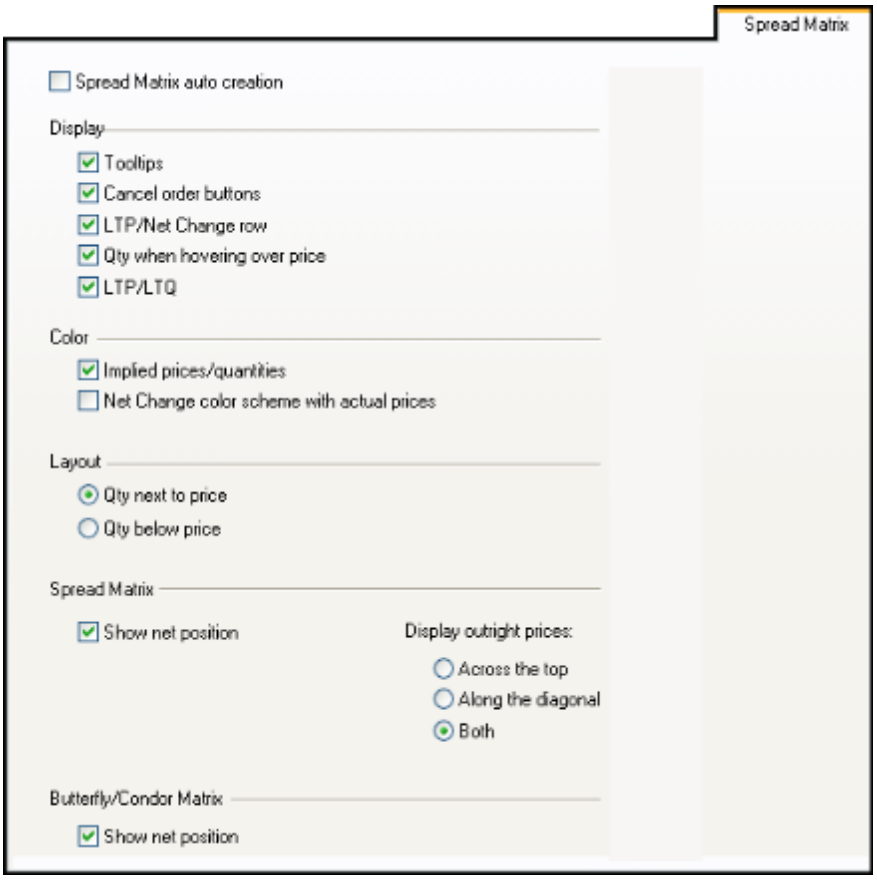
To create and use a custom color for a window or text:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Color** tab.
3. Click the name of the color setting you want to change.
4. From the **Color** section, click the **Other** button.
   The **Color** dialog box appears.
5. Under the **Custom Colors** section, click the first available white box.
   Note: This ensures you will not copy a new custom color over an existing custom color.
6. Under the **Basic Colors** section, click a base color to create your custom color from.
   Note: This ensures you can see your custom color as you create it.
7. On the right side, select your custom color from the blended rainbow grid.
   The cross hairs pin-point your selection and the color appears in the **Color/Solid** square.
8. Click and drag the triangle up or down the skinny luminosity grid to select the hue of your color.
   The **Color/Solid** square changes as you drag the triangle.
9. Click the **Add to Custom Colors** button.
   Your selection in the **Color/Solid** square appears in the **Custom colors** palette on the left side.
10. Click **OK**.
    On the **Color** tab, the **Preview** section displays your chosen color.
11. Click **Apply** and then **OK** to exit.

You successfully created and used a custom color for X_TRADER windows or text.

Spread Matrix Tab

The **Spread Matrix** tab sets properties for the **Spread Matrix** window.



General	Description
Spread Matrix auto creation	Automatically creates a spread. This feature allows you to work with the LIFFE exchange to create spreads that may not exist.

Display	Description
Tooltips	Displays a popup tip when you hover the cursor over select fields.
Cancel order buttons	Displays buttons letting you cancel working spread orders and working outright orders.
LTP/Net Change row	Displays a row labeled **[L]** at the top of your Spread Matrix. A **Last Prc** column displays in your Butterfly Condor Matrix. Enabled by default. **Note**: This row displays prices in the format you set up for the rest of the matrix. (e.g., net change, LTP, etc.)
Qty when hovering over price	Hides the **Quantity** and only displays it when your mouse hovers over a price.
LTP/LTQ	Displays last traded price and last traded quantity along with Ask price and quantity and Bid price and quantity. Refer to **Reading the Spread Matrix** on page 310.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Color	Description
Implied prices/quantities	When enabled: • Implied Ask prices and quantities display in dark pink. • Implied Bid prices and quantities display in light blue. You can customize your net change colors on the **Color** tab.
Net Change color scheme with actual prices	When enabled: • Prices that decrease display in pink. • Prices that increase display in light green. • Prices with no change display in white. You can customize your net change colors on the **Color** tab.

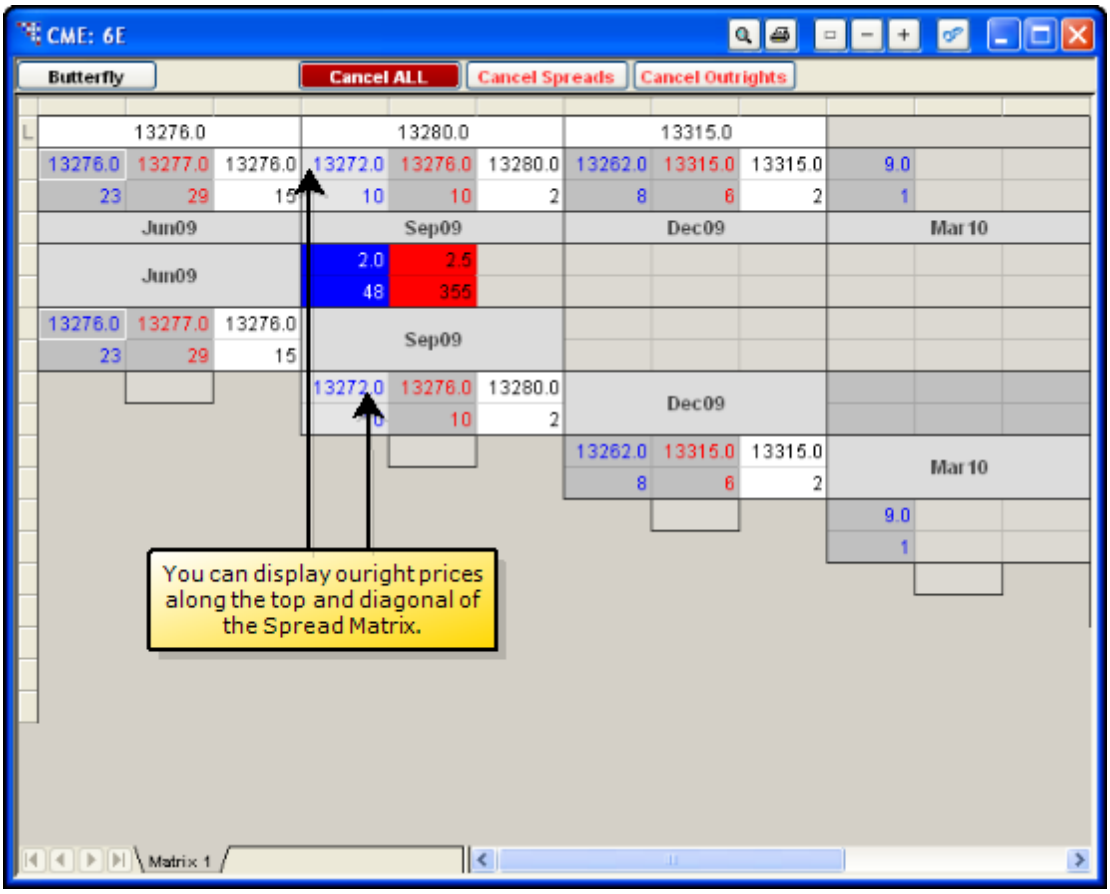
Layout	Description
Layout	Displays quantity and price cells in the matrix as either: • Qty next to price • Qty below price

Spread Matrix	Description
Show net position	Displays a vertical **Net Pos** column before the contract.Enabled by default. **Note**: By default, your net position is color-coded. Blue is long, Red is short and Gray is flat.
Display Outright Prices	Displays outright prices: • **Across the top**: Displays a row designated by a **[P]** across the top. • **Along diagonal**: Displays a cell at the bottom of each contract. • **Both**: Displays both the **[P]** row and bottom cell.

Butterfly/Condor Matrix	Description
Show net position	Displays a vertical **Net Pos** column before the contract.Enabled by default.

Example: Spread Matrix Outright Price Display

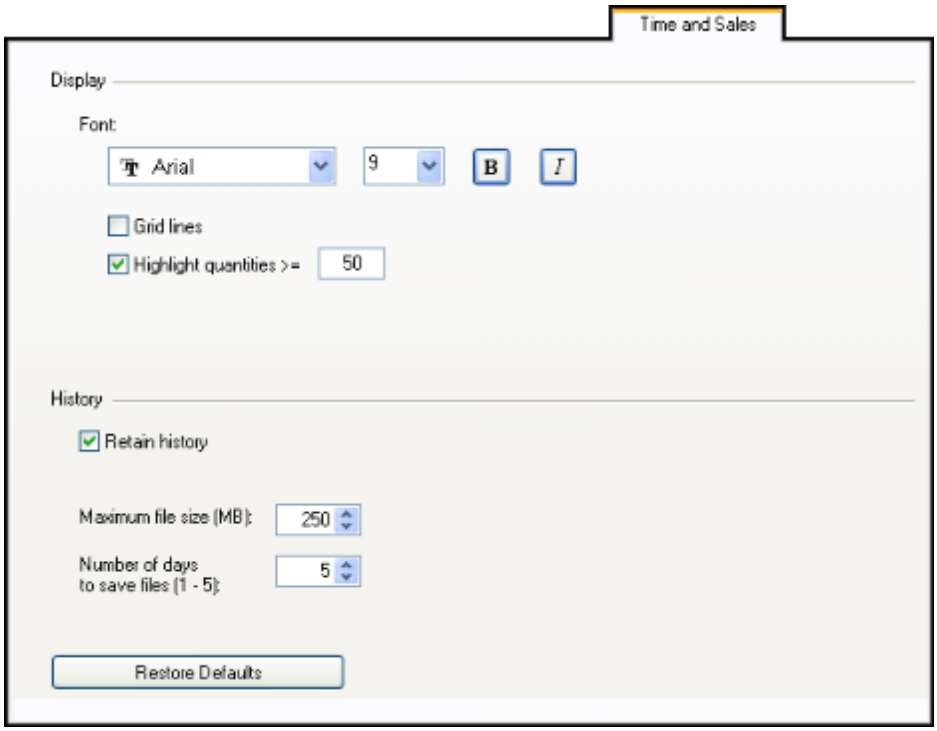
The following screen displays the outright prices of a calendar spread along the top and the diagonal of the matrix. To enable this option, go to the **Spread Matrix** tab on the **Properties** menu. In the **Display Outright Prices** section, click **Both**.



Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Time and Sales Tab

The **Time and Sales** tab sets properties for the **Time and Sales** window.



Display	Description
Font	Sets the font properties attributed to the **Time and Sales** window.
Grid Lines	Displays the grid lines in the **Time and Sales** window when enabled.
Highlight quantities >=	Sets the quantity at which time and sales row data is highlighted.

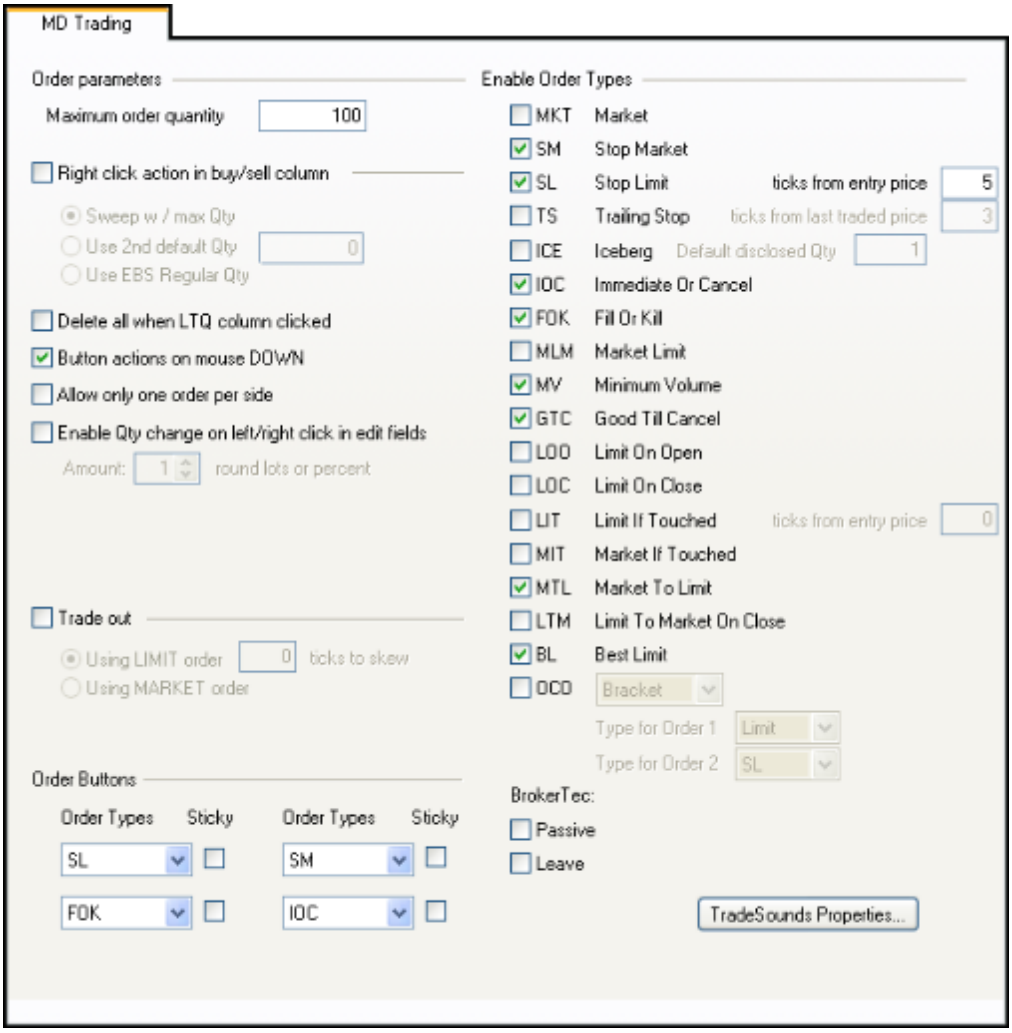
History	Description
Retain History	Saves your time and sales data based on the following properties.
Maximum File Size (MB)	Maximum file size allowed (before automatic purging). Default is 25MB.
Number of Days to Save Files (1-5)	Number of days to save files (before automatic purging). Default is 3 days.

Restore Defaults	Description
Restore Defaults	Sets all properties on the **Time and Sales** tab back to their default settings.

MD Trading Tab

Use the **MD Trading** tab to customize trading parameters for MD Trader.

Note: When accessed via the context menu, the **Set as Global Default** checkbox at the bottom of the tab applies these properties to all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows.



Order Parameters	Description
Maximum order quantity	Displays the maximum order quantity permitted during trading. **Note**: To use MD Trader, this field must be greater than zero (0).

Right-click action in Buy/Sell column	Description
Right-click action in Buy/Sell column	Enables your right-click in the **Bid** and **Ask** columns to either: • **Sweep w/ max Qty**: Sweep the market using your maximum order quantity and up to the defined by price depth level at the exchange. (e.g., Some exchanges go up to 5 depth levels.) • **Use 2nd default Qty**: Submit a second default quantity in the **Bid** and

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Right-click action in Buy/Sell column	Description
	Ask column at the price where you right-click. When using this option, you must type a quantity in the box to the right of the option. **Note**: To use MD Trader, this field must be greater than zero (0). • **Use EBS Regular Qty**: Seed the regularly traded quantity as defined for that contract by the EBS exchange.

General	Description
Delete all when LTQ column clicked	Lets you delete all your working orders by clicking in the **Last Traded Quantity** column.
Button actions on Mouse DOWN	Sets mouse button actions to immediately activate when the mouse is clicked (not released).
Allow only one order per side	Replaces an existing Buy or Sell order, when you add a new one. **Note**: For Brokertec products, the Leave order type overrides this property.
Enable Qty change on left/ right click in edit fields	Changes quantity down with a left-click and up with a right-click. **Amount**: Sets how much a quantity changes with one click.

Trade Out	Description
Trade out	Lets you flatten your position. Before MD Trader submits an offsetting order, it sends delete requests for all working orders for that contract. You need to send a second tradeout request if an existing working order fills.
Using LIMIT order	Indicates the tradeout method is by Limit order. **Note**: This property does not guarantee your order will be executed because the market may move before you enter the order.
# ticks to skew	Determines how many ticks you will trade out to flatten your position. Assigning a specific number of ticks to skew ensures your order, once entered, (not necessarily executed) is only a pre-determined distance from the inside market. When you click the **TradeOut** button, you enter a Limit order based on the current price. If the market moves and the offsetting price is not available, your limit order remains working at the price you entered it.
Using MARKET order	Indicates the tradeout method is a Market order. When enabled, **# ticks to skew** field grays. When you click the **TradeOut** button, a market order seeks out the available offsetting order and executes against it.

Order Buttons	Description
Order Types	Assigns buttons to order types enabled in the **Enable Order Types** section. **Note**: The order types set up as buttons will no longer appear in the **Order Type Selection** menu.
Sticky	Lets you continuously execute the same order type without having to click the order type button again. The button and cursor highlight in yellow while the order type is in effect. To discontinue sending the same order type, click the selected button again

Order Buttons	Description
	or select another order type.

Enable Order Types	Description
MKT	Enables Market. Market orders cross the inside market to immediately fill.
SM (Stop Market Orders)	Enables Stop Market. Stops set the stop price for limit or market orders. X_TRADER supports Stop orders on all exchanges. • A Stop Market order to buy becomes a market order when the futures contract trades (or is bid) at or above the Stop Price. • A Stop Market order to sell becomes a market order when the futures contract trades (or is offered) at or below the Stop Price.
SL (Stop Limit Orders)	Enables Stop Limit. Stops set the stop price for limit or market orders. X_TRADER supports Stop orders on all exchanges. **# ticks from stop entry price**: Sets the number of ticks the stop limit price is from the stop entry price. (Range is 0-10000)
TS (Trailing Stop Orders)	Enables Trailing Stop. Trailing Stop sets the price for a stop order a fixed distance from the current market price and moves dynamically. Trailing Stops can be limit or market orders. **# ticks from last traded price**: Sets the number of ticks from the LTP your order trails.
ICE (Iceberg)	Enables Iceberg. Sends only a portion of the order quantity to the market at a time. Each order quantity is equal. When one portion fills, the next portion is sent until the entire order quantity fills. **Default Disclosed Qty**: Pre-sets disclosed quantity.
IOC (Immediate or Cancel)	Enables Immediate or Cancel. IOC Immediately fills the order to the extent possible and cancels the balance.
FOK (Fill or Kill)	Enables Fill or Kill. FOK immediately fills the entire order or immediately cancels the entire order.
MLM (Market Limit)	Enables Market Limit Market. MLM sets a buy order placed above the best offer to fill by the best offer, and a sell order placed below the best bid to fill by the best bid.
MV (Minimum Volume)	Enables Minimum Volume. MV sets the minimum order quantity that must be available in the market or the entire order cancels.
GTC (Good 'til Cancel)	Keeps order in the market until you cancel it or the contract expires.
LOO (Limit On Open)	Enables Limit On Open. LOO sets limit orders that only execute at the open. Any portion not filled at the open cancels.
LOC (Limit On Close)	Enables Limit On Close. LOC sends Limit orders during the closing auction of the current business day. Any portion not filled at the close cancels. (For TSE and OSE only)
LIT	Enables If Touched. LIT submits the Limit order a set number of ticks away

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Enable Order Types	Description
	from the inside market and is activated when the market touches the price level. **# ticks from stop entry price**: Sets the number of ticks the limit price is from the entry price.
MIT	Enables If Touched. MIT submits the Market order a set number of ticks away from the inside market and is activated when the market touches the price level.
MTL	Enables Market to Limit. MTL send a Market order with the condition that on a partial fill, the remaining quantity rests as a Limit order at the price that was just hit or taken. Available on TOCOM and SGX.
LTM (Limit To Market On Close)	Enables Limit to Market. LTM sets a limit order where any unfilled portion converts to a market order at the close. (For TSE and OSE only)
BL	Enables Best Limit. BL lets you join the best bid or offer without entering a price. Available on TOCOM.

OCO	Description
Bracket	Indicates the OCO strategy in use. Strategies are designed to accomplish specific goals. A Bracket applied to a current Long position is intended to exit the position at either a profit or a protective stop. Hence both orders must be Sell orders: • **Bracket**: First OCO order is Limit. Second OCO order is Stop Limit or Stop Market. Both orders must be on same side of market. (i.e., 2 Buys or 2 Sells) • **Breakout**: Both OCO orders can be Stop Limit or Stop Market. Both orders must be on opposite sides of market. (i.e., 1 Buy and 1 Sell) • **Custom**: Both OCO orders can be Limit, Stop Limit or Stop Market. No restrictions other than check for invalid price levels by order type.
Type of Order 1 Type of Order 2	Sets the order type the two orders in an OCO relationship follow. When one of the orders executes, the other cancels. **Note**: If your OCO gets partially filled, the second order is reduced by the quantity the first order was filled.

BrokerTec	Description
Passive	Sends orders which can only be filled by an Aggressive order.
Leave	Sends orders without canceling and replacing previously sent orders on the same side for the same product. Only needed when the **Send Quote Order** property is enabled on the **Order Entry** tab. **Note**: This property overrides the **Allow only one order per side** property.

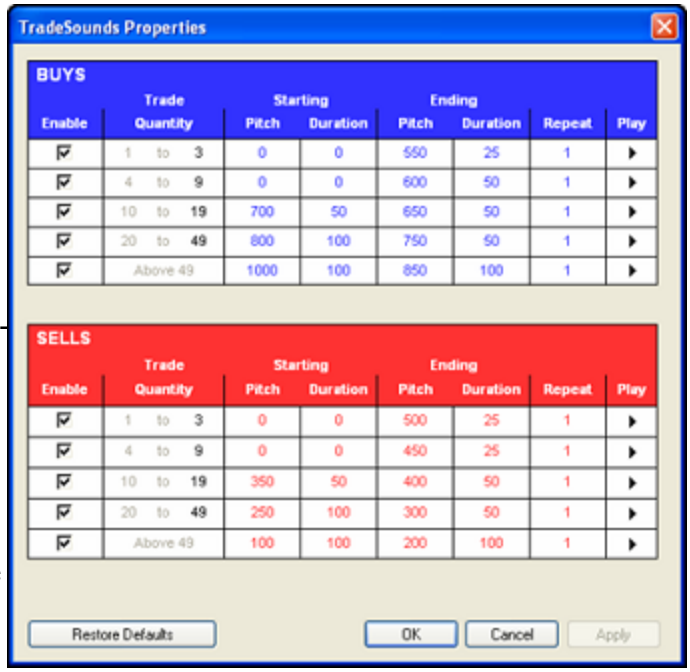
TradeSounds Properties Button	Description
TradeSounds Properties	Opens the **TradeSounds Properties** dialog box. Refer to **Managing TradeSounds** on page 129.

Managing TradeSounds

TradeSounds beep when trade updates come from an exchange.

Besides being exclusive to MD Trader, TradeSounds are different than the properties on the **Sounds** tab in two ways:

- TradeSounds are simple two-toned beeps. The properties on the **Sounds** tab point to sound files housed on your local hard drive or network.
- TradeSounds are completely configurable via the **TradeSounds Properties** button at the bottom of the **MD Trading** tab.



Column	Description	Details
Enable	Plays a beep after a trade is made at the adjacent trade quantity level when TradeSounds are enabled.	Enable TradeSounds via the MD Trader context menu.
Trade Quantity	Sets the range a traded quantity must fall between to signal the TradeSound. You can customize up to five levels of sounds for both Buys and Sells.	**Range**: 0-9999 trade quantity **Note**: The subsequent **Trade Quantity** changes based on the setting of the previous one.
Starting Pitch and Duration	Sets the high or low tone and length of the first beep. To disable the first beep, make the **Pitch** and **Duration** zero (0).	**Pitch Range**: 0-9999Hz **Duration Range**: 1-9999ms (9999 ms is about 10 seconds) **Note**: If the **Pitch** for either the Starting or Ending column is 0, the **Duration** for that column must also be 0.
Ending Pitch and Duration	Sets the high or low tone and length of the second beep. To disable the second beep, make the **Pitch** and **Duration** zero (0).	
Repeat	How many times the beep repeats.	**Range**: 1-5 repetitions
Play	Click to hear the two-tone beep as currently configured.	

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Hearing TradeSounds

Follow these procedures in order to hear TradeSounds in MD Trader:

- Setting TradeSounds
- Enabling TradeSounds

To set TradeSounds:

1. Navigate to the **MD Trading** tab.
2. At the bottom of the page, click the **TradeSounds Properties** button.

   The **TradeSounds Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Under **Trade Quantity** column, set the range at which you want the first level TradeSound to alert you.

   Note: You can set up to five levels of TradeSounds for both Buys and Sells.
4. Click the **Play** button to hear the default sound.
5. If you want to change the quality or length of the two-tone beeps, change the **Starting** and **Ending Pitch** and **Duration** numbers as you desire.

   Note: To disable either the start or end beep, make the **Pitch** and **Duration** zero (0).
6. Click the **Play** button to hear the beep as you change it.
7. If you want the beep to play more than once, under the **Repeat** column, indicate how many times you want the beep to play when a trade occurs.

   Note: You can repeat a sound up to 5 times.
8. Repeat Steps 3-7 for each of the five levels of Buys and five levels of Sells you want to set.
9. When you are finished setting TradeSounds, click **OK**.

You successfully set TradeSounds. Continue to the next procedure to enable TradeSounds.

To enable TradeSounds:

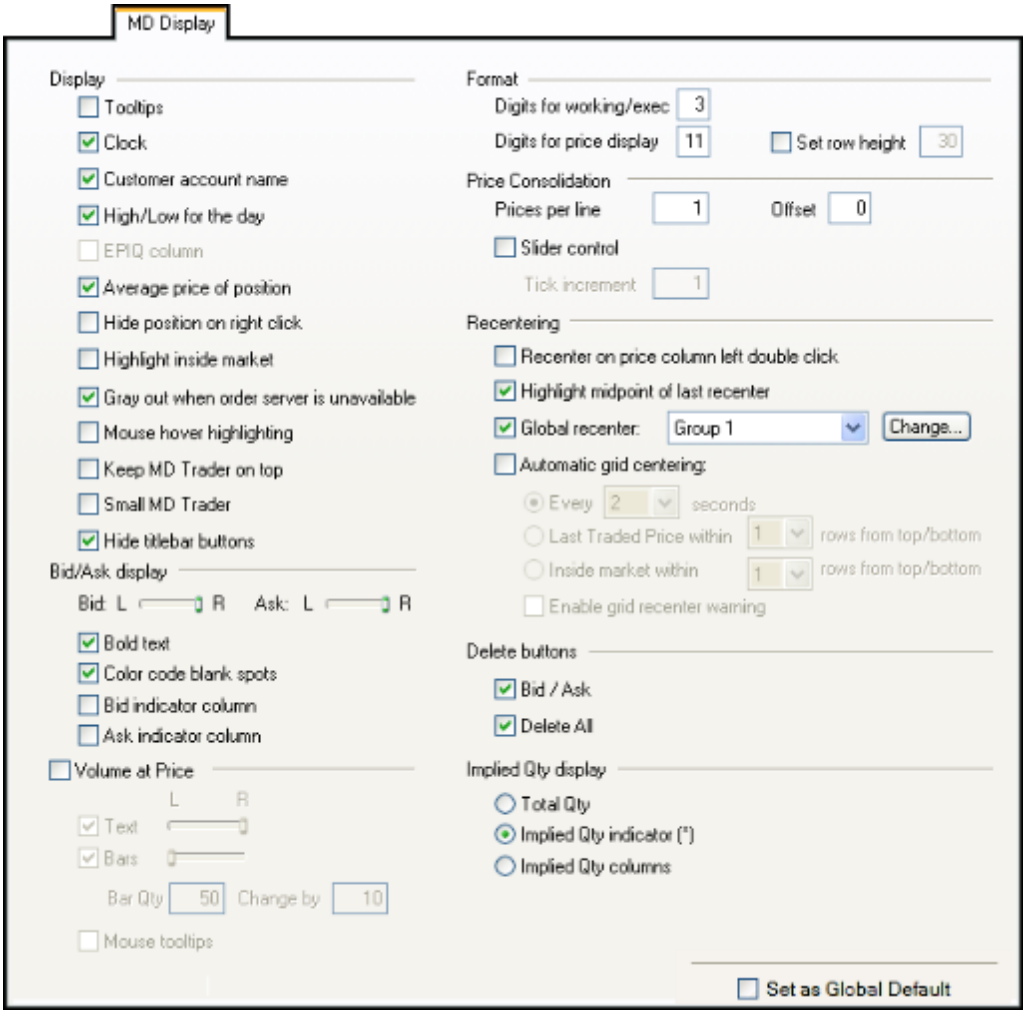
1. Right-click MD Trader to access the context menu.
2. Click to select **TradeSounds**.

You successfully enabled TradeSounds.

MD Display Tab

Use the **MD Display** tab to customize the appearance of MD Trader.

Note: When accessed via the context menu, the **Set as Global Default** checkbox at the bottom of the tab applies these properties to all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows.



Display	Description
Tooltips	Displays a popup tip when you hover the cursor over select fields.
Clock	Displays the system clock.
Customer account name	Displays the **Customer List** box.
High/Low for the day	Adds yellow and red lines to designate the highest and lowest prices at which the contract traded for the day. All prices between the high and low are displayed in a darker gray color.
EPIQ Column	Displays the Estimated Position in Queue (EPIQ) columns to the left of the bid order column.
Average price of position	Highlights the average open price long and short in the **Price** column. **Note**: Rounds longs up and shorts down.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Display	Description
Hide position on right click	Lets you hide your position with a right-click on the position field. Right-click again to show your position. Disabled by default.
Highlight inside market	Highlights the best bid and best ask. Grays out when the order server is down. Disabled by default.
Gray out when order server is unavailable	Turns MD Trader gray when the order server is unavailable. Enabled by default.
Mouse over highlighting	Highlights the cell as your cursor rolls over it so you can identify where it is. You can customize the highlighting color in the **MD Color** tab.
Keep MD Trader on top	Displays MD Trader on top of other applications.
Small MD Trader	Shrinks window to maximize your desktop space. Disabled by default. **Hide Titlebar Buttons**: Hides the zoom buttons that normally display in the titlebar. Enabled by default.
Hide titlebar buttons	Hides the zoom buttons in the titlebar so product names can be easily read.

Bid/Ask Display	Description
Bid	Aligns the text in the **Buy** column to the right or left.
Ask	Aligns the text in the **Sell** column to the right or left.
Bold text	Text in the bid and ask columns bolds.
Color code blank spots	Keeps bid and ask column colors even if they have not traded.
Bid indicator column	Displays the **Bid Indicator** column, used for pasting Excel links
Ask indicator column	Displays the **Ask Indicator** column, used for pasting Excel links.

Volume at Price	Description
Volume at Price	Enables the view of traded contracts in the **Last Traded Quantity** column.
Text	Displays total volume at price in numbers. The slide bar to the right sets the text alignment.
Bars	Displays total volume at price in bar chart format. The slider bar to the right sets the bar alignment. **Bar Qty**: Sets the number of contracts each bar represents: • A lower number increases the number of bars displayed when several trades have occurred at that price. • A higher number decreases the number of bars displayed when several trades have occurred at that price. **Change By**: Sets the number that the **Bar Qty** changes when you press `CTRL` and the `ARROW RIGHT` or `ARROW LEFT` keys. • The `CTRL` and `ARROW RIGHT` combination decreases the **Bar Qty** by the value you type in this box. • The `CTRL` and `ARROW LEFT` combination increases the **Bar Qty** by the value you type in this box.

Volume at Price	Description
	Using these shortcuts, you can adjust the bar size while trading without reentering the **MD Display** tab.
Mouse tooltips	Displays total volume at price as text when you hover the mouse over the particular cell in the **Last Traded Quantity** column.

Volume at Price Notes:

- MD Trader generates and displays approximate values. They are not guaranteed to be the exact trading volumes for any given trading period.
- Incorrect or under-reported actual volume may occur due to price consolidations at the exchange or Gateway levels.

Format	Description
Digits for working/exec	Sets the number of spaces between the letters and numbers in the working order quantity column. Maximum number is 11.
Digits for price display	Sets the number of digits displayed in the price column. Right side digits are truncated. Maximum number is 11.
Set row height	Sets the height of each row in pixels.

Price Consolidation	Description
Prices per line	Sets the number of rows to condense when consolidating prices. (Refer to **Consolidating Prices** on page 262) **Note**: You can also consolidate prices using the Price Consolidation slider. See the **Slider Control** property.
Offset	Sets the offset to use when consolidating rows. **Example**: A product ticks 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, but you consolidate it to show 10, 15, 20, 25, 30. If you then want to show 12, 17, 22, 27, 32, you need an offset of 2.
Slider control	Shows a slider control that consolidate prices by the number of ticks set in the **Tick Increment** property.
Tick increment	Sets the number of ticks the **Price** column consolidates for each movement of the slider control.

Recentering	Description
Note: These properties work independently of the **Automatic Grid Centering** property on this tab.	
Recenter on price column left double click	Double-click the **Price** column to recenter the MD Trader grid.
Highlight midpoint of last recenter	Bolds dividing line between the best bid and best ask.
Global recenter	**Note**: This property enables by default. New and existing workspaces are automatically affected by the property.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Recentering	Description
	Recenters all **MD Trader** windows when you recenter one. You can disable this property for individual windows.

Automatic Grid Centering	Description
Automatic grid centering	Enables MD Trader to automatically recenter itself based upon the parameters you set.
Every *X* seconds	Sets the number of seconds before MD Trader automatically recenters.
Last Traded Price within *X* rows from top/bottom	Recenters when the last traded price is a set number of rows from the top or bottom of the grid.
Inside Market Within *X* rows from top/bottom	Recenters when the inside market is a set number of rows from the top or bottom of the grid.
Enable grid recenter warning	Flashes MD Trader before it recenters.

Automatic Grid Centering Notes:

- This feature works independently of the **Recentering** section on this tab.
- When MD Trader recenters, it recenters the window within the current view.

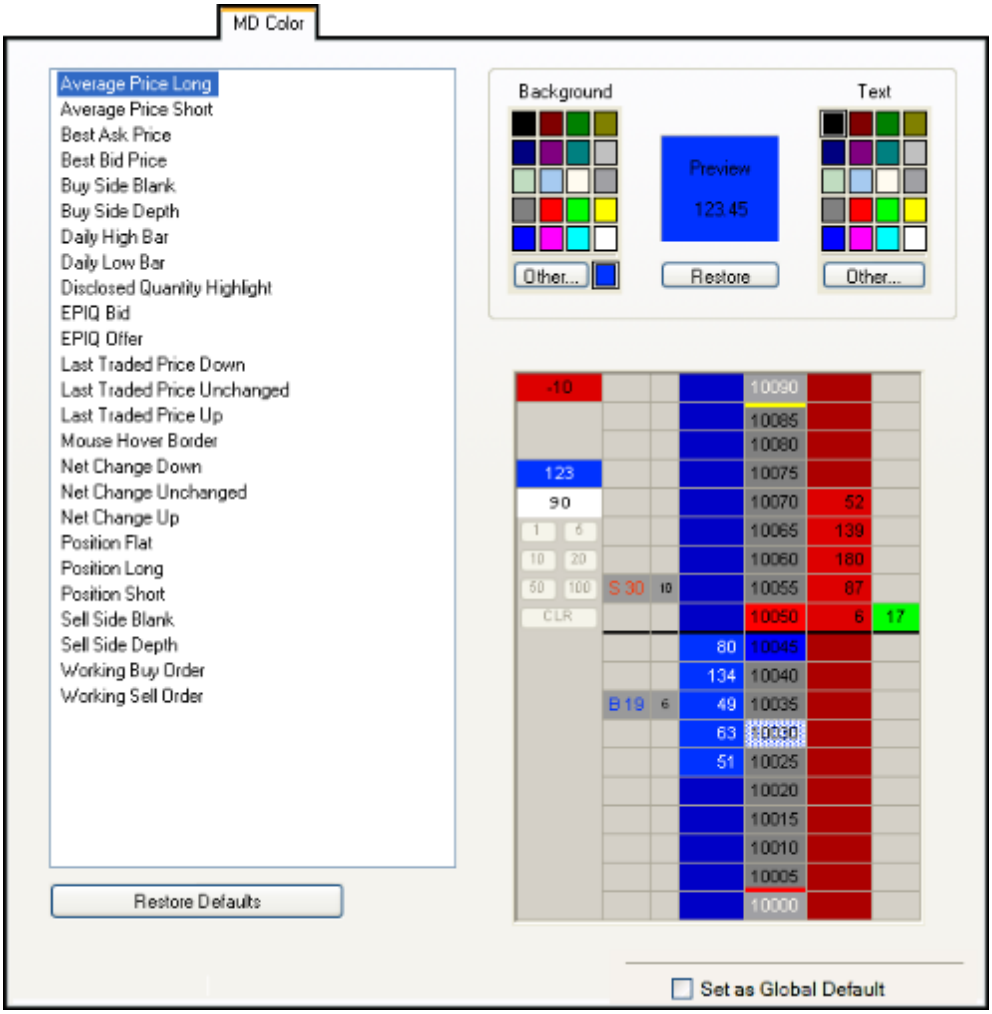
Delete Buttons	Description
Bid/Ask	Displays separate delete buttons for your working bids and offers.
Delete All	Displays a delete all button for clearing both your working bids and offers.

Implied Quantity Display	Description
This property lets you choose how the quantity of the ¼ 32nd price displays when it is available.	
Total Qty	Displays entire quantity at the correct tradable price, rounding bids down and offers up.
Implied Qty indicator (*)	Displays the entire quantity, rounding bids down and offers up, with an asterisk (*) next to the closest price. Enabled by default.
Implied Qty columns	Creates secondary bid and offer columns to display the quantity based on implieds. These columns display in the same color as **Bid** and **Ask** columns, but display the better quantity in a smaller font.

MD Color Tab

Use the **MD Color** tab to customize your colors for MD Trader. To change your color options, refer to **Changing Global Colors of Windows or Text** on page 119.

Note: When accessed via the context menu, the **Set as Global Default** checkbox at the bottom of the tab applies these properties to all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows.



Average Price	Default Colors
Average Price Long	Blue with black text
Average Price Short	Red with black text

Best Ask or Bid	Default Colors
Best Ask Price	Red with black text
Best Bid Price	Blue with black text

Buy Side	Default Colors
Buy Side Blank	Dark Blue
Buy Side Depth	Blue

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Daily High and Low	Default Colors
Daily High Bar	Yellow
Daily Low Bar	Red

Disclosed Quantity Highlight	Default Colors
Disclosed Quantity Highlight	Black

EPIQ	Default Colors
EPIQ Bid	Dark gray with black text
EPIQ Offer	Dark gray with black text

Last Traded Price	Default Colors
Last Traded Price Down	Red with black text
Last Traded Price Unchanged	White with black text
Last Traded Price Up	Green with black text

Mouse Hover Highlight	Default Colors
Mouse Hovering Border	White

Net Change	Default Colors
Net Change Down Background	Red with black text
Net Change Unchanged Background	White with black text
Net Change Up Background	Green with black text

Position	Default Colors
Position Flat	White with black text
Position Long	Blue with white text
Position Short	Red with black text

Sell Side	Default Colors
Sell Side Blank	Dark Red
Sell Side Depth	Red with black text

Working Orders	Default Colors
Working Buy Order	Dark Gray with blue text
Working Sell Order	Dark Gray with red text

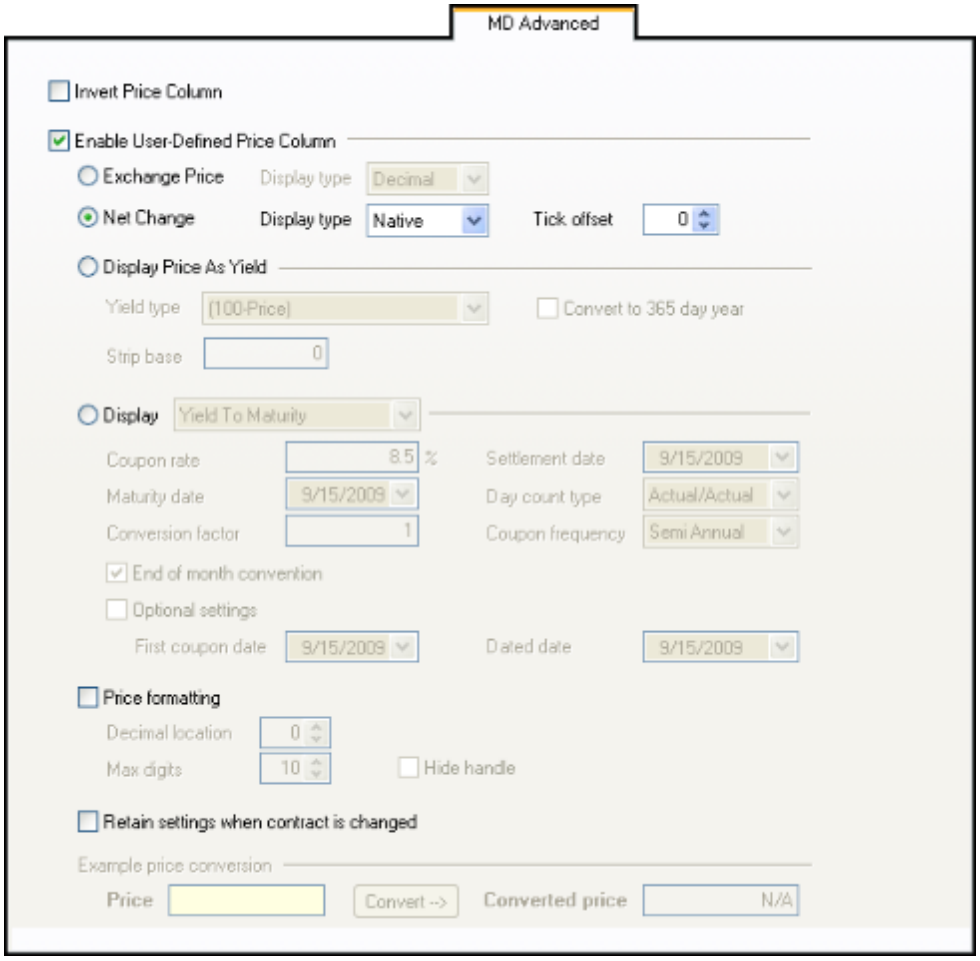
Restore Defaults Button	Description
Restore Defaults	Changes the color selections to what they were on first install

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

MD Advanced Tab

Use the **MD Advanced** tab to enable and define the User-Defined Price (UDP) column. This column appears to the left of the standard price column and can be set to show the **Net Change**, **Price As Yield**, or **Yield-To-Maturity** for a given contract.

Note: When accessed via the context menu, the **Set as Global Default** checkbox at the bottom of the tab applies these properties to all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows.



Invert Price Column	Description
Invert Price Column	The **Invert price column** checkbox lets you invert the entire MD Trader price column, placing the low price at the top and the high price on the bottom. Additionally, your Buy orders will be on top of the chart, and your Sell orders will be on the bottom. This property does not affect the direction of prices displayed in attached Time and Sales.

Enable User-Defined Price Column	Description
Enable User-Defined Price Column	Lets you create and define a new price column.

Exchange Price	Description
Exchange Price	The **Exchange Price** radio button lets you further customize a user-defined price column, which appears next to the normal MD Trader price column. A user-defined price column lets you display the contract price in a way that appeals to you. • **Native** (default selection): Creates a copy of the normal MD Trader price column, which displays prices in their native format. You can use this option in conjunction with other options, like the **Price formatting** section to differentiate the price. • **Decimal**: Displays the native prices formatted as their decimal equivalent. • **Ticks**: Displays each price as the equivalent number of ticks from the inside market. • **1 / Price**: Displays the price as a decimal value 1 divided by the decimal equivalent of the price. The **Price formatting** section further customizes the price. **Note**: This property will create a user-defined price column that is in ascending order, rather than descending order. You can use the **Invert Price column** setting to flip MD Trader so this column appears in descending order.

Net Change	Description
Net Change	Displays the price of the contract minus the settlement price. **Display Type**: Defines how the price is formatted. • Native • Ticks • Decimals **Tick Offset**: Adds value to the Net Change price. (-999 to 999 ticks)

Display Price As Yield	Description
Display Price As Yield	Displays price as a percentage representing annual rate of return. **Yield Type**: • **No Conv**: The instrument price is in yield. Conversion not necessary. • **(100-Price)**: The yield is calculated by subtracting the instrument price from 100. Calculation for the Euribor. • **((10000-Price)/100)**: The yield is calculated by subtracting the instrument price from 10000 and dividing the result by 100. Calculation for the Eurodollar. • **(((10000-(Price+Strip Base))/100)**: Eurodollar Strip type yield, a base (settlement) is added to the instrument price before the Eurodollar conversion. Calculation for the exchange traded Strip, Pack or Bundle. • **((100000-Price)/1000)**: 30 Day Fed Fund. The yield is calculated by subtracting the instrument price from 100000 and dividing the result by 1000. **Convert to 365 day year**: Converts 360 days to 365 days. **Strip base**: Average settlement price of the contracts in an exchange traded

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Display Price As Yield	Description
	Strip, Pack or Bundle. The Strip Base is added to the instrument price before the conversion.

Display	Description
Display	Options for this field include: • **Yield-To-Maturity**: Displays price based on the rate of return if held until the maturity date. An algorithm calculates the price accurate to six decimal places. • **Custom pricing model**: A pricing model you created and activated. All other fields are required unless otherwise noted. • **Coupon rate**: Annual interest rate (as a decimal). Must be greater than 0.1 and less than 100.00 and accurate to 4 digits. • **Maturity date**: The date of the bond. Must be greater than the settlement date and greater than today. • **Conversion factor** (Not required): The factor by which the futures price will be multiplied if the specified bond is delivered against it. Must be greater than 0.1 and less than 5.0 and accurate to 4 digits precision. (Must be specified if yield is being calculated for a future) • **Settlement date**: The date the contract settles. Must be less than the maturity date and greater than today. • **Day count type**: The convention used for counting the days between two dates. Where the values mean: ◦ **Actual**: The real number of days between two dates. Leap year counts for 366 days. ◦ **360**: The year has 360 days. ◦ **365**: The year has 365 days. ◦ **30**: If the second date falls on the 31st of the month it is changed to the 30th only if the first date falls on the 30th or 31st. ◦ **30E**: If the second date falls on the 31st of the month it is always changed to the 30th. • **Coupon frequency**: Number of coupons per year. (Annual, Semi-Annual, Quarterly, Monthly) • **End of month convention**: Determines whether coupon payments always occur on the last day of the month if the settlement date falls on the last day of the month. • **Optional settings**: ◦ **First coupon date**: The first real coupon date. Must be less than the maturity date and be a valid coupon date. (Must be specified if the bond has an odd first coupon period and the settlement date falls within this odd first coupon period)

Display	Description
	○ **Dated date**: The date upon which interest accrual begins. Must be less than the first coupon date. (Must be specified if the bond has an odd first coupon period and the settlement date falls within this odd first coupon period)

Price formatting	Description
Price formatting	Customizes the price format. Watch the **Converted price** field to see how your changes affect the price. • **Decimal location**: Moves the decimal place one spot to the left or right, depending on the price. • **Max digits**: Determines the maximum number of digits to show. • **Hide handle**: Hides the whole number in front of the decimal.

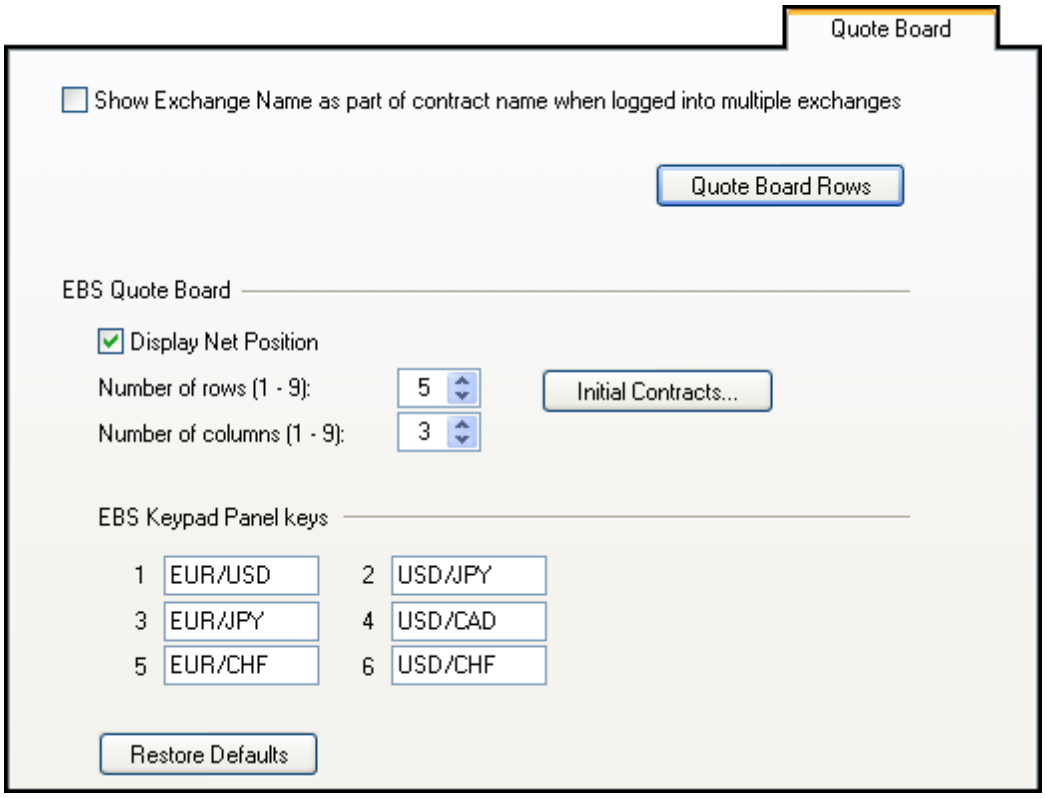
Retain settings when contract is changed	Description
Retain settings when contract is changed	Retains new price column settings when you drag a new contract onto this window.

Example price conversion	Description
Example price conversion	Lets you view the converted price based on the parameters that you select above. For this to work, you must first open MD Trader with a contract.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Quote Board Tab

The **Quote Board** tab sets properties for the **Quote Board** window.



Property	Description
Show Exchange Name as part of contract name when logged into multiple exchanges	Displays the exchange name in the title bar of each contract in the Quote Board.

Quote Board Rows	Default Colors
Quote Board Rows	Select the default visible fields in the **Quote Board** window.

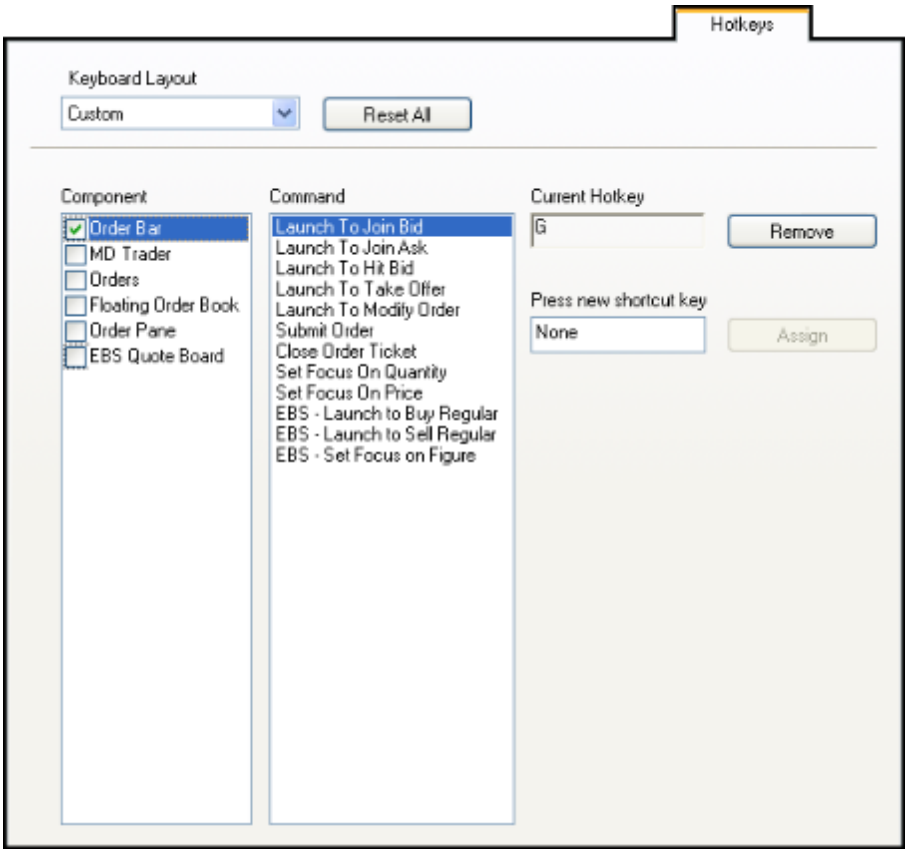
EBS Quote Board	Description
Display Net Position	Displays your net position for each contract in the upper left corner of the EBS Quote Board.
Number of rows (1-9)	Designates how many rows tall the entire window is.
Number of columns (1-9)	Designates how many columns wide the entire window is.
Initial Contracts	Lets you customize the spatial position of each currency pair on the window.
EBS Keypad Panel keys	Sets the keypad key that brings focus to a contract in the window.
Restore Defaults	Restores the rows, columns, and keypad keys to the factory defaults.

Hotkeys Tab

The **Hotkeys** tab assigns, resets and removes hotkey designations for functional screens such as MD Trader.

Note: To use the hotkeys associated on this tab, you have to enable hotkey components on other property tabs.

To enable hotkeys for...	Enable this property...	On this tab...
Order Bar	**Order Bar** under the **Floating order entry** field	**Trading** tab
Floating Order Book	Order Book	**Trading** tab



Keyboard Lay-out	Description
Keyboard Layout	Sets TT Default hotkeys for all components, or lets you customize hotkeys for the components of your choice. In addition, you can enable the default keys for trading EBS. The **Reset All** button changes customized hotkeys back to their default settings.
Enable EBS Keypad	This checkbox appears in the upper right corner of the tab when you select **EBS Default** as the keyboard layout. It lets you use the ICAP distributed EBS keypads.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Component	Description
Component	Lists the functions for which hotkeys can be assigned. Click to select the boxes next to the functions for which you want to use hotkeys. • **Order Bar**: Refer to **Trading with the Order Bar** on page 207. • **MD Trader**: Refer to **Keyboard Trading in MD Trader** on page 279. • **Orders**: Defines the key combination for deleting all orders. • **Floating Order Book**: Refer to **Keyboard Trading in the Floating Order Book** on page 345. • **Order Pane**: Defines keys for submitting order an order in an attached or floating Order Entry Pane. • **EBS Quote Board**: Defines the key that lets you change the contract you are trading.

Command	Description
Command	Shows the available commands for the selected component.

Current Hotkey	Description
Current Hotkey	Shows the hotkeys currently tied to the selected command for the selected component.

Press new short-cut key	Description
Press new shortcut key	Lets you input a new key or keys to represent the selected command for the selected component.

Buttons	Default Colors
Remove	Deletes the current hotkey from the selected command for the selected component. You are prompted to confirm.
Reset All	Returns the hotkeys to their default settings for each command.
Assign	Ties the hotkey or keys you input in the **Press new shortcut key** field to the selected command for the selected component. Grayed out when **Keyboard Layout** is set to default.

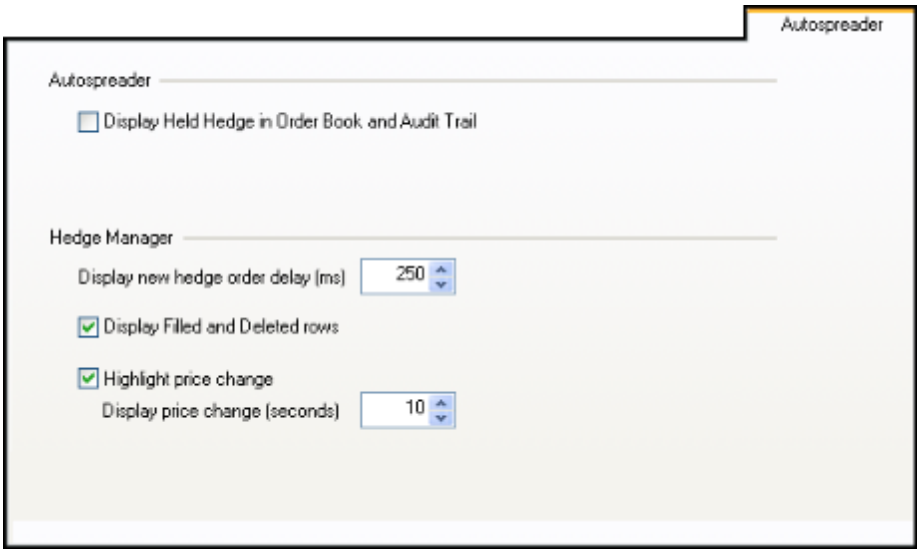
Hotkey Restrictions

When assigning hotkeys, the following restrictions apply:

- Global hotkeys and hotkeys that launch components must be unique across X_ TRADER.
- Hotkeys must be unique within their own component.
- The global **Delete All Orders** hotkey must include `Shift` plus another key.
- You cannot assign hotkeys to hard-coded keystroke commands (e.g., in the **Market** window: `Page Up`, `Insert`).

Properties Autospreader Tab

The **Autospreader** tab sets properties for Autospreader orders and the **Hedge Manager** window.



Autospreader	Description
Display Held Hedge in Order Book and Audit Trail	Determines whether held hedge orders display in the Order Book and Audit Trail. By default, they are not displayed. In the Order Book, the held hedge row background color is orange.

Hedge Manager	Description
Display new hedge order delay (ms)	Lets you select a time in milliseconds to display new rows so hedge orders that are filled before this interval has elapsed will not display in the Working Orders pane. The default is 250 milliseconds (range from 0 to 2000 milliseconds (2 seconds)). A setting of zero means new hedge orders will immediately appear in the Working Orders pane regardless of how quickly they fill.
Display Filled and Deleted rows	Leaves hedge order rows in the Working Pane even after the hedge orders fill or are deleted. Use the **Clear All** button at the top of the Working Orders pane to permanently remove all Filled or Deleted rows
Highlight price change	Gives the **Price** column a dark gray background to alert you of a price change to a hedge order. **Display price change (seconds)**: Sets a time threshold for the change to the **Price** column.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Control Panel Icon and Menu Descriptions

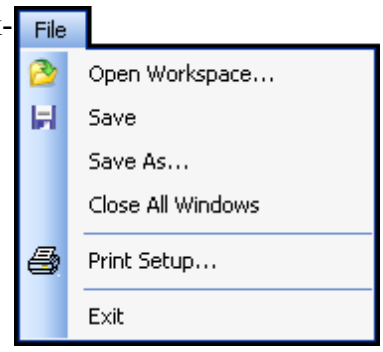
You can access X_TRADER functions from the **Control Panel** using either the icons on the toolbar or the menu options.

The icons and menu options are defined here:

- **File Menu** on page 147
- **Settings Menu** on page 148
- **Window Menu** on page 64
- **Help Menu** on page 149
- **The Toolbar** on page 66

File Menu

The following options are available from the **File** menu on the **Control Panel**:

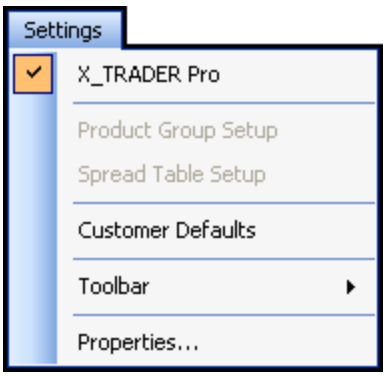


- **Open Workspace**: Opens a previously saved workspace.
- **Save**: Saves the open workspace.
- **Save As**: Saves the open workspace under a different name or with a new name.
- **Close All Windows**: Closes all open X_TRADER windows except the **Control Panel**.
- **Print Setup**: Displays the Print Setup dialog box. You can set up a printing format here, but it will not be saved when you print out the form.
- **Exit**: Exits X_TRADER.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Settings Menu

The following options are available from the **Settings** menu on the **Control Panel**:



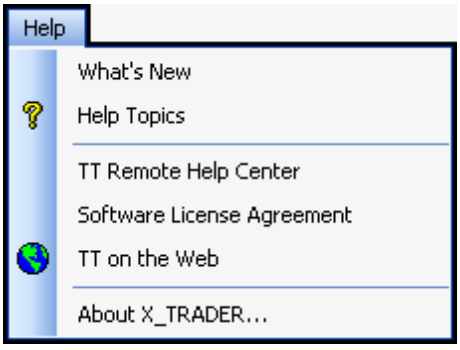
- **X_Trader Pro**: Activates X_TRADER Pro features, including Autospreader and Autotrader. Check this option. Then, close and restart X_TRADER.

  Note: You need an X_TRADER Pro license to use this option.

- **Product Group Setup**: Displays the **Product Group Information** dialog box, which lets you create a product group to use with the quoting tool.
- **Spread Table Setup**: Displays the **Spread Tables** dialog box, which lets you create a spread table to use with the quoting tool.
- **Customer Defaults**: Displays the **Customer Defaults** dialog box, which lets you create or view customer defaults and customer list information.
- **Toolbar**: Allow you to change the size of the icons on the toolbar.
- **Properties**: Displays the **Properties** dialog box. Allows you to customize X_TRADER features for the **Market** window (**Trading** tab).

Help Menu

The following options are available from the **Help** menu on the **Control Panel**:



- **What's New**: Opens the What's New section of the online Help.
- **Help Topics**: Opens online Help user documentation.

  Note: Alternatively press `F1` to see Help related to the screen you are on.
- **Software License Agreement**: Displays Software License Agreement.
- **TT Remote Help Center**: Launches the Remote Help Center home page.
- **TT on the Web**: Opens TT's home page.
- **About X_TRADER**: Displays X_ TRADER version and copyright information.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Adding High and Low Alerts

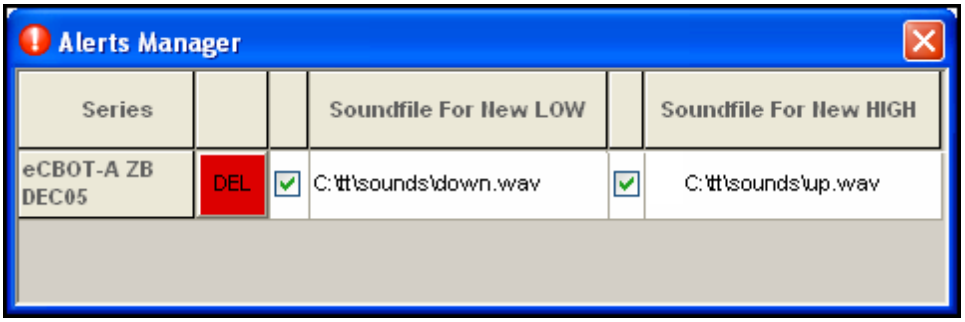
You can add specific sounds to a contract's high and low price thresholds using the **Alerts Manager** dialog box. Whenever a contract trades above the high price threshold, or below the low price threshold, these sounds play.

Follow these procedures to use the **Alerts Manager** dialog box:

- Assigning sounds to a contract's high and low price threshold
- Deleting sounds from a contract's high and low threshold

To assign sounds to a contract's high and low price thresholds:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
   The **Alerts Manager** dialog box appears.



2. Populate the **Alerts Manager** dialog box with the contracts to which you want to assign sounds for price highs and lows.
3. In the **Series** column, locate the contract for which you want to assign sound alerts.
4. Double-click the appropriate cell under the **Soundfile for New LOW** column.
   The **Sound Explorer** dialog box appears.
5. Locate the .wav file you want to use as your low price threshold.
   - By default, the **Sound Explorer** opens to the location on your computer that stores your X_TRADER sound files (**<root drive>:\tt\sounds**)
   - Whenever this contract trades below the day's low price, the sound plays.
6. Double-click the sound file.
   The file and its directory path appear in the cell.
7. Double-click the appropriate cell under the **Soundfile for New HIGH** column.
   The **Sound Explorer** dialog box appears.
8. Locate the sound file you want to use as your high price threshold.
   Whenever this contract trades below the day's high price, this sound is played.
9. Double-click the sound file.
   The file and its directory path appear in the cell.

10. To activate this setting so the sound is played when the threshold is crossed, click to select the activation box.

    Note: This box is located directly to the left of the cell.

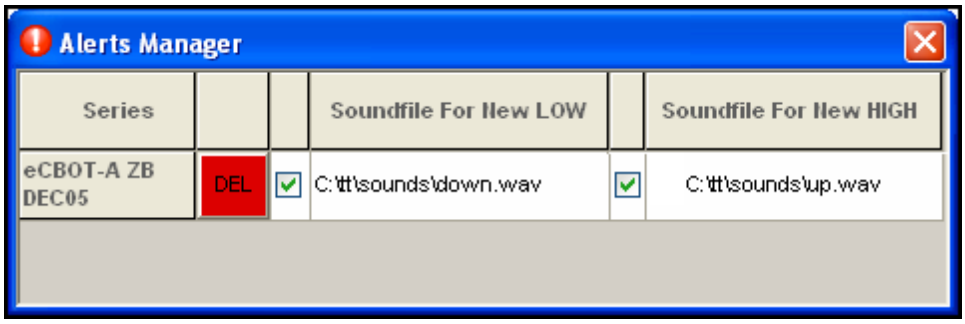
11. Click the **X** on the title bar to close the **Alerts Manager** dialog box.

You successfully assigned sounds to a contract's high and low price thresholds.

▶ **To delete sound alerts:**

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

   The **Alerts Manager** dialog box appears.



2. In the **Series** column, locate the contract for which you want to delete a sound association.
3. In that contract's row, click **DEL**.

   The contract and its sound associations are removed from the **Alerts Manager** dialog box.

You successfully deleted sound alerts.

Starting Plug-ins

You can start and stop all installed X_TRADER and X_TRADER Pro plug-in applications from the **Control Panel**. Proper licensing must be in place in order to access each plug-in.

Once started from X_TRADER, plug-ins perform normally. For instructions on using them, see the online help provided with each plug-in.

When X_TRADER closes, all plug-ins started through X_TRADER also close.

You can start plug-ins in two different ways:

- **Manually**: You log into X_TRADER and start any number of instances of any licensed plug-in application.
- **Automatically**: You log into X_TRADER and select each licensed plug-in you want to start with X_TRADER. During subsequent logins, X_TRADER automatically starts one instance of each selected plug-in.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

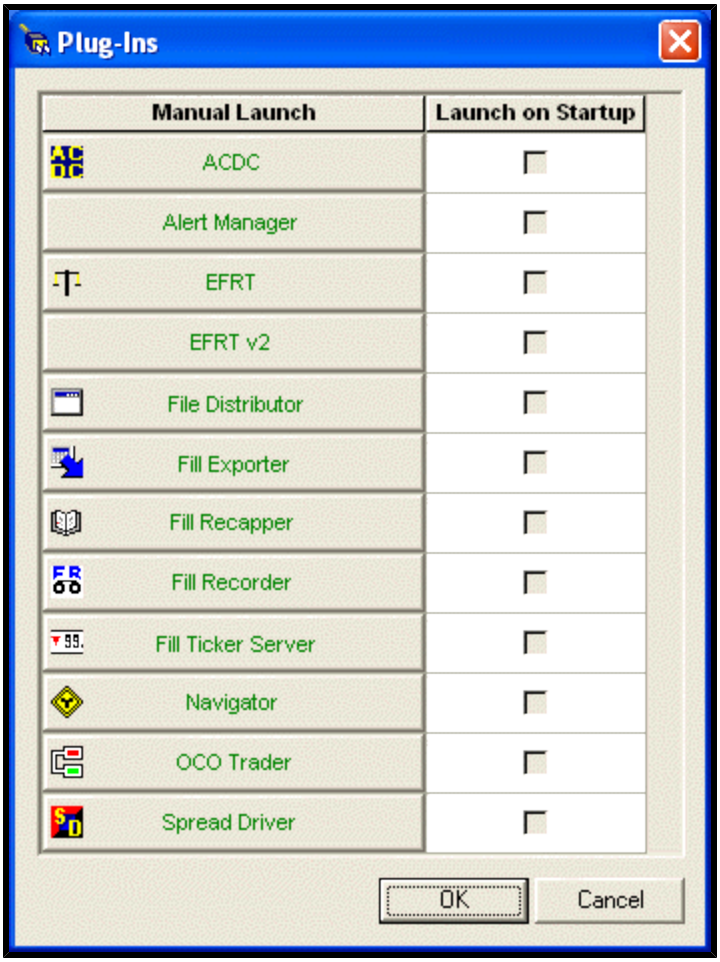
To manually start a plug-in:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Plug-ins**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

   The **Plug-Ins** dialog box appears, displaying all your installed X_TRADER plug-ins.



Note:

- If the text is green, you have the proper licensing and access to the plug-in.
- If the text is red, you do not have the proper licensing or access to the plug-in.

2. Click the plug-in name you want to start.

   The plug-in starts.

3. Repeat step 2 to start another plug-in or another instance of the same plug-in.

You successfully started plug-ins from X_TRADER.

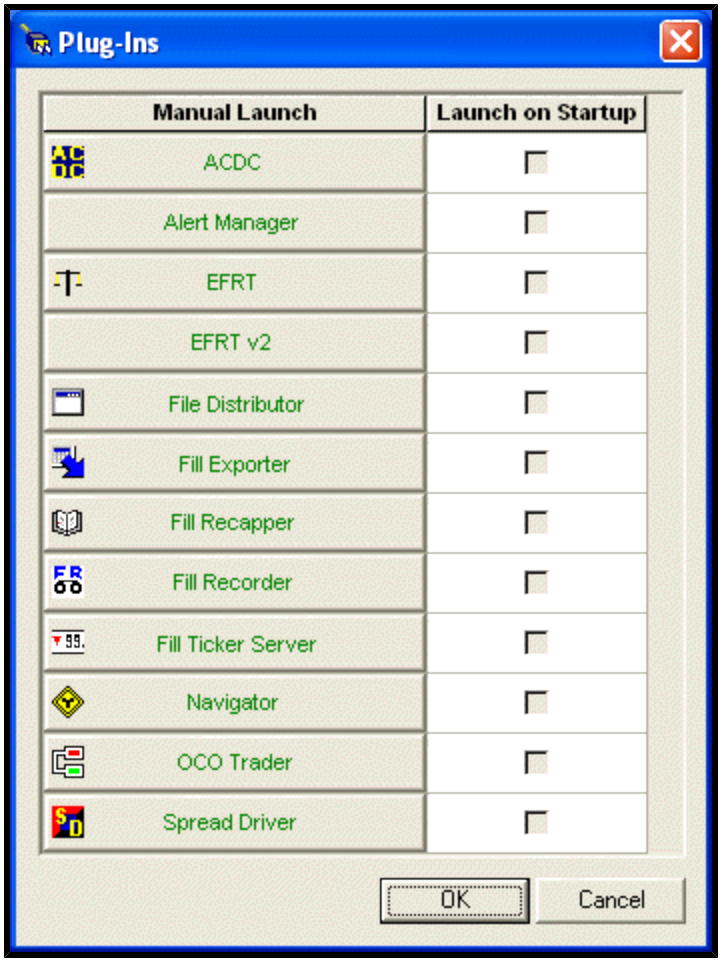
To set plug-ins to start automatically:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Plug-ins**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

   The **Plug-ins** dialog box appears, displaying all your installed X_TRADER plug-ins.



Note:

- If the text is green, you have the proper licensing and access to the plug-in.
- If the text is red, you do not have the proper licensing or access to the plug-in.

2. Click to select the checkbox next to each of the plug-in icons you want to start automatically.
3. Click **OK**.

   The next time you start X_TRADER, the selected plug-ins automatically start.

You successfully set plug-ins to start automatically from X_TRADER.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

[This page intentionally left blank]

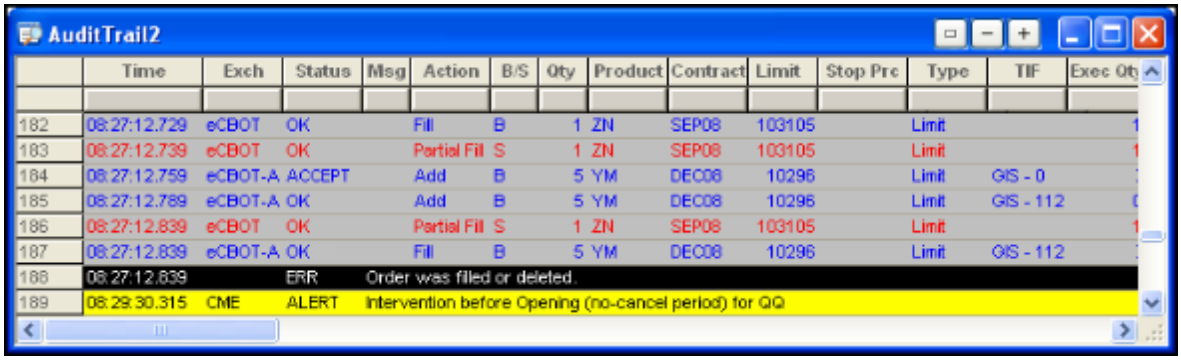
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

CHAPTER 4

Audit Trail Overview

Use the **Audit Trail** window to track messages from X_TRADER, the TT Gateways, and exchanges to which you are logged on.

Audit Trail messages save to the directory: **<root drive>:\tt\logfiles\AuditLog**. The naming convention for the files is: *YYYY-MM-DD*_n.mdb. Where *n* represents the file number for the day.



The **Audit Trail** window displays the following information for the current day:

- **Order messages**: Messages regarding fills, partial fills, add/change/delete orders, inquiries, and messages related to your Group ID.
- **Exchange Announcements**: Announcements from an exchange regarding busted trades, and pre/post, opening/closing product activity.
- **Gateway Alerts**: Information concerning the status of server/host processes.
- **Error messages**: Notifications of an invalid action.

For details regarding these messages, refer to **Audit Trail Message Types** on page 159.

For details regarding storage limits, refer to **Storing Files** on page 162.

▶ **To open the Audit Trail:**

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Audit Trail**.

   - or -

2. From the **Control Panel**, click the button.

You successfully opened the Audit Trail.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Held Orders

An appropriate Audit Trail message results from all normal order functions performed on held orders: change, cancel, replace, delete, or submit.

Messages appear in the Audit Trail when an order is held, but the order is actually deleted from the market and held only by the Gateway. If a submit fails for a held order, it remains in the hold state and the Audit Trail indicates the submittal failed. The Audit Trail also gives you an explanation of why the submission of the order failed.

Filters

Filters are used in the Audit Trail to quickly sort and display data. Refer to **Filtering Overview** on page 50.

Tip: If you are using Audit Trail filters, open two **Audit Trail** windows to ensure receipt of all exchange and gateway announcements. Use one **Audit Trail** window to display order-related data with the desired filters. Set the **Status** column filter for the second **Audit Trail** window to capture alerts (ALERT) and general information (INFO).

Audit Trail History

Audit Trail history data is saved on your workstation's hard disk for ten calendar days in a Microsoft Access file.

To view Audit Trail history:

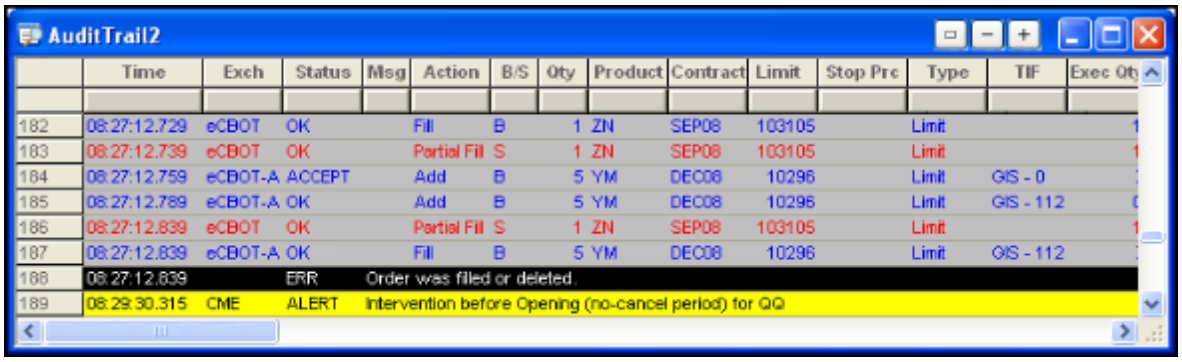
1. From your desktop, click **Start** and choose **Run**.
2. From the **Run** menu, type: **<root drive>:\tt\LogFiles\AuditLog.mdb**
3. Click **OK**.

   Microsoft Access opens and displays ten (10) days worth of Audit Trail history. The available dates display by month and day (i.e., *MMMDD*—Dec 31).

You successfully viewed Audit Trail History.

Audit Trail Column Descriptions

Columns can be hidden and shown on the screen while you view the Audit Trail. You can also set which columns are automatically visible every time you access the Audit Trail on the **Audit Trail** tab on the **Properties** menu.



Column	Descriptions
Time	The time your workstation receives the message.
Exch	The Exchange sending the message.
Status	The description of the message sent by the Gateway. **Examples**: OK, Err (error), Accept, Info, Alert, Warn (Warning)
Msg	The described event.
Action	The result of the event. **Examples**: Add, Change, Delete, Fill, Partial Fill, Hold, Submit
B/S	Buy or Sell in reference to an order.
O/C	Open or Close in reference to a position.
C/P	Call or Put in reference to an order.
Qty	The quantity in an order.
Product	The traded product's exchange symbol. **Examples**: FGBL, ODAX
Contract	The month and year of expiration for the contract.
Strike	The exercise price of option.
Price	The limit price of a contract.
Stop Prc	The stop trigger price of contract.
Type	A Limit or Market type in reference to the order.
TIF	The time the order is in force. **Example**: Good 'til Day (GTD)
Rstr (Restric-tion)	The strategic restriction put on the order. **Examples**: <None>, FOK, IOC, MOO, MV, Stop
RstrQty	The quantity of a restricted order which behaves differently depending on the restriction. **Example**: For Minimum Volume orders, it is the quantity that needs to be in the market for the order to go to market.
Exec Qty	The executed quantity of the order.
Work Qty	The working quantity of the order.

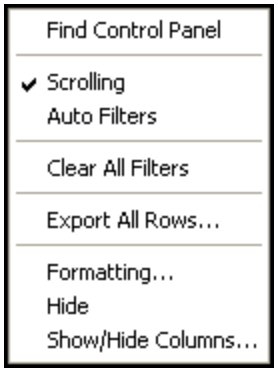
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Column	Descriptions
Cxl Qty	The canceled quantity of an order when using the Cancel/Replace function.
Account #	The back office account number or name as indicated in the Customer Default profile.
Member ID	The Exchange Member ID assigned by the Exchange or TTORD ID information.
Group ID	The Group ID assigned by the Exchange or TTORD ID information.
Trd ID	The Trader ID assigned by the Exchange or TTORD ID information.
Acct	The account type as indicated in the Customer Default profile. **Examples**: Agent, Market Maker, Principal, Give-up
Exch Time	The time the message is received/sent by the Exchange Trading Host. The time may be shown in the time zone where the exchange is located.
Exch Date	The date the Trading Host received/sent the message.
Time Sent	The time the action was sent from the workstation to the Gateway.
Source	Where the order comes from. **Examples**: 0: Normal OS, 1: Autospreader, 2: Autotrader, 3: API (XTAPI), 4: Ext Source (Exchange), 8: TT_TRADER.
Time Processed	The time the action was processed by the Gateway.
P/A	Designates whether the order was filled passively or aggressively. This notation allows for a correct P&L calculation.
Order No	The order number assigned by the Exchange.
TT Order Key	A TT generated unique number used to track orders in the Order Book.
IP	The IP Address of the workstation.
FFT2 & FFT3	Free Form Text Field 2 and 3. Values for annotation purposes by you or back office (sub-account).
Trans ID	The transaction ID for fills. Used to identify the order.
Session ID	Used for diagnosing Fill session rollovers, SOD's and settlements.

Audit Trail Context Menu

Right-click in the **Audit Trail** window to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:



- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Scrolling**: Sets the window to scroll as a new entry appears. Enabled by default.
- **Auto Filters**: Lets you display audit trail data by customer.
- **Clear All Filters**: Displays all available data by removing filters.
- **Export All Rows**: Collects all the data in a file whose name, type and location you configure.
- **Formatting**: Lets you customize fonts and borders.
- **Hide**: Hides the selected row(s) or column(s).
- **Show/Hide Columns**: Lets you select which columns to show.

Audit Trail Message Types

Audit Trail messages break into the following categories:

- Order messages
- Exchange announcements
- Gateway alerts
- Error messages

Order Messages

Order messages include buy, sell, change, cancel/replace, delete, fills and partial fills.

The first line details the order information, including:

- The time the order was sent from the workstation to the TT Gateway (**Time Sent** column)
- An order status of Accept
- An action of Add, Change, or Delete.

The second line immediately follows the first and indicates acceptance by the TT Gateway. The order has been routed to the exchange host.

The third line displays sometime after the previous two. This message confirms receipt from the exchange and includes:

- The time the confirmation was received by the workstation (**Time Processed** column)
- A status of OK
- The time the confirmation was sent by the exchange's host machine (**Exch Time** column).

A status of OK and an action of Partial displays when an order partially fills. A status of OK and an action of Fill displays when an order fills. When you cancel and replace an order, the confirmation from the exchange host reflects a new order number.

Exchange Announcements

Exchange announcements display a status of Alert, Info, or Warning and reflect general information sent by the exchange host or the TT Gateway. For details on filtering these announcements, refer to **Customizing Exchange Announcements** on page 160.

Gateway Alerts

Gateway alerts display information concerning the status of server/host processes.

Error Messages

Error messages display when the TT Gateway rejects a buy, sell, change, cancel/replace, or delete order.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

- The first line details the order information, including a status of ERR to indicate that the order was rejected and not sent to the exchange host.
- The second line immediately follows the first and reflects a status of ERRS. A message (**Msg** column) explains the error.

Customizing Exchange Announcements

The **Audit Trail** window displays all announcements released by the exchanges, including host activity, busted trades, and pre/post, opening/closing product activity.

Each announcement details the:

- Time issued (exchange time)
- Time received (local time)
- Exchange name
- Severity
- Announcement text

Tip: If you are using Audit Trail filters, open two **Audit Trail** windows to ensure receipt of all exchange and gateway announcements. Use one **Audit Trail** window to display order-related data with the desired filters. Set the **Status** column filter for the second **Audit Trail** window to capture alerts (ALERT) and general information (INFO).

Follow these procedures to customize how you receive exchange announcements:

- Displaying INFO messages by exchange
- Associating a sound file with exchange announcements

To display INFO messages by exchange:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Audit Trail** tab.
3. Click to select the **Process and display INFO messages** property.
4. Click the **Exchanges** button.
5. Click to select the checkbox next to the exchanges for which you want to view INFO messages.
6. Click **OK**.

You successfully displayed INFO messages by exchange.

To associate a sound file with exchange announcements:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the**Sounds** tab.
3. Under the **Events** column, double-click the **Exchange Announce** event.
4. In the **Associated Sounds** column, double-click **<None>**.

The **Associated Sounds** column is editable.

5. Click the ... icon to locate the sound file you want to use as your alert.
6. If necessary, navigate to the location where the sound files are located. (In most X_TRADER installations this is in the following folder: **<root drive>:\tt\Sounds**)
7. Highlight the file and click **Open**.

   The new sound name and path displays next to the selected event.
8. To test the sound, click **Test**.
9. Click **Apply** and then **OK** to exit.

You successfully associated a sound file with exchange announcements.

Properties for the Audit Trail Window

The following properties in the **Audit Trail** window are customizable:

- **Audit Trail Messages and Audit Logs**: Select how many records to show, which messages appear, how many Audit Logs to hold on to, and how large the Audit Trail file can get before a new one is created. Customize in the **Audit Trail** tab on the **Properties** menu.
- **Color Code Messages**: Select any color text and background to identify Audit Trail messages. Customize colors in the **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu. The default colors are:

Message Type	Defined in Color tab as	Default
Buy	Buy Text & Buy Background	blue text with a gray background
Sell	Sell Text & Sell Background	red text with a gray background
Exchange Announcement	Message Text & Message Background	white text with a gray background
Gateway Alerts	Alert-Warn Text & Aler-Warn Background	black text with a yellow background

- **Audio Notifications**: Select a .wav file to assign to the Exchange Announcement event. Add sounds in the **Sounds** tab on the **Properties** menu.
- **Audit Trail Columns**: Select which columns are viewable.

To customize visible columns:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Audit Trail** tab.
3. Click the **Audit Trail Columns** button.

   The **Audit Trail Columns** dialog box appears.

   Note: By default, all column headings are selected.
4. Click to de-select the column headings you do not want to view in the Audit Trail.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully customized the visible columns in Audit Trail.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Storing Files

The Audit Trail log file generates at midnight or the first time you open X_TRADER for the day. The file holds a finite amount of data before generating a new one. The size of these database files are configurable from 10MB - 200MB with a default of 50MB of data.

- Access the Audit Trail log files here: **<root drive>:\tt\logfiles\AuditLog**
- The naming convention for the Audit Trail log files is: *YYYY-MM-DD_n.mdb*. Where *n* represents the file number for the day.

Example:

A light trading day in October, followed by a heavy trading day might result in the following Audit Trail files:

- AuditLog_2009-10-23_1.mdb
- AuditLog_2009-10-23_2.mdb
- AuditLog_2009-10-23_3.mdb
- AuditLog_2009-10-22_1.mdb

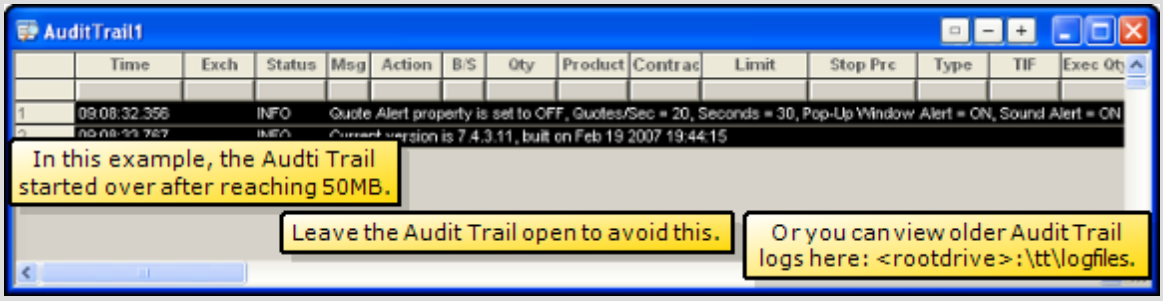
With a maximum database file of 50MB, you can see at a glance your Audit Logs for October 23 exceed 100MB. Whereas, your Audit Log for October 22 was under 50MB.

Concise Audit Trail

Parsing the Audit Trail into smaller log files helps X_TRADER run efficiently. In addition, when you open your Audit Trail, only the data captured in the current Audit Trail log file displays.

This means, if you close the Audit Trail in the morning, and reopen it later in the day, the Audit Trail may appear smaller. However, data from earlier in the day is still viewable in previous Audit Trail log files.

Example:



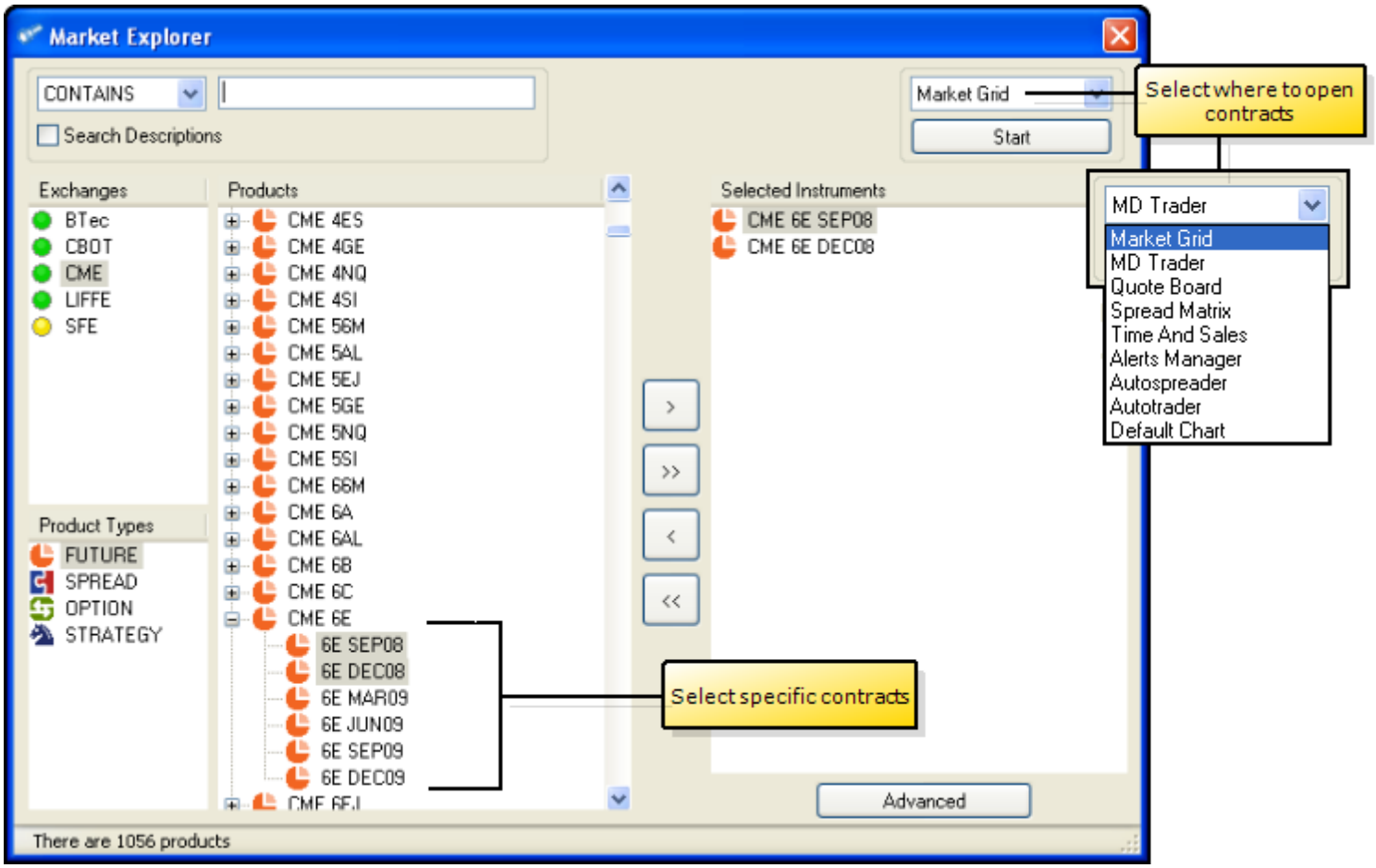
In the example above, the Audit Trail was closed in the morning and reopened in the afternoon. The Audit Trail had just started a new Audit Trail log file after reaching 50MB. The rest of the day's data can be accessed from here: **<root drive>:\tt\logfiles**

Tip: If you leave the Audit Trail open all day, you can see the entire day's events.

CHAPTER 5

Market Explorer Overview

Use the **Market Explorer** window to select markets and products you wish to trade from one or more available exchanges. By selecting an **Exchange** and **Product Type**, you may then select individual products or contracts in the **Products** box and move them into a functional window for trading.



Follow these procedures to use the **Market Explorer** window:

- Searching for a product
- Renaming Contracts
- Opening and populating a functional window

To open the Market Explorer:

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

- or -

From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

You successfully opened the Market Explorer.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Market Explorer Field Descriptions

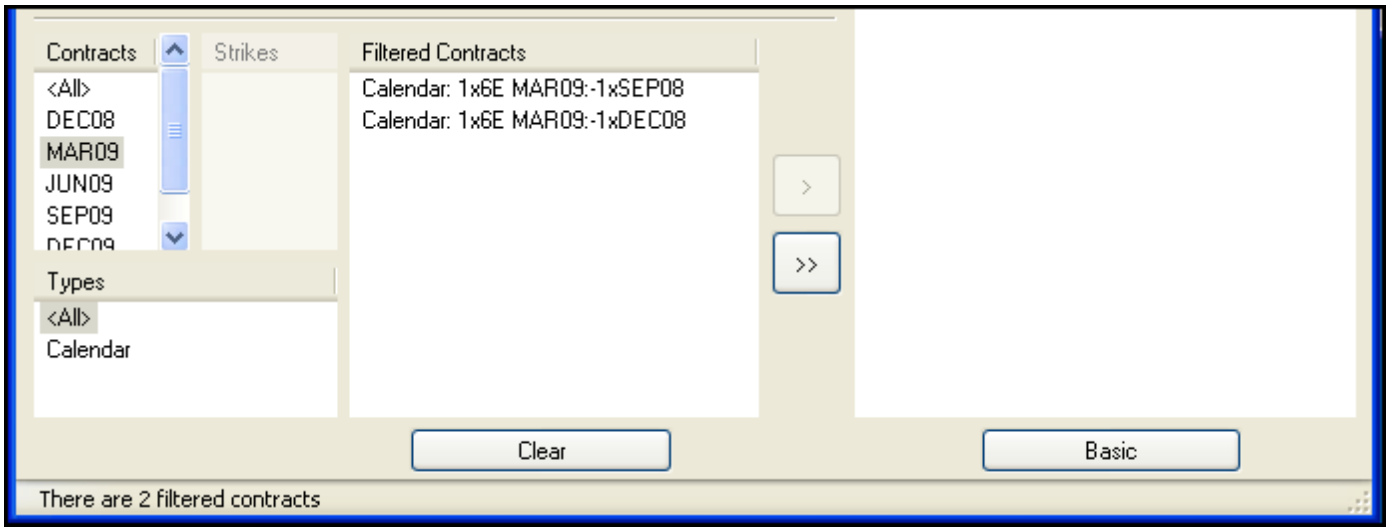
The fields in the **Market Explorer** window include:

Field	Descriptions
Products	Offers a choice of filter criteria. You then enter a product name, description, or alias to search for.
Search Descriptions	Searches the alias and description fields for each product in addition to the product's name from the gateway. This lets you query based on the popular names of products in addition to their more cryptic gateway versions.
Exchanges	Lists all exchanges you are logged into. Each exchange has three servers: price, fill and order. The color indicator tells you the status of the servers. • Green indicates all servers for that exchange are up. • Yellow indicates, some servers for that exchange are up. • Red indicates all servers for that exchange are down.
Products Type Box	List of product types for the selected exchange.
Products Box	List of all products for the selected exchange and **Product Types** after any filters have been applied.
Transfer Buttons (>, >>, <, <<)	Transfers selected items to and from the **Products** and **Selected Instruments** boxes.
Selected Instruments Box	Shows all products that have been transferred from the **Products** box.
Function Box 	Displays functional windows to which you can open contracts. **Note**: You must have an X_TRADER Pro license to select Autotrader or Autospreader.
Start button	Opens the selected function with contracts listed in the **Selected Instruments** box.
Advanced button	Displays contracts for Spread, Option and Strategy **Product Types**.

Market Explorer Advanced Field Descriptions

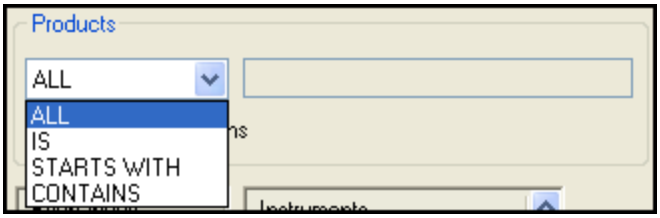
The advanced fields in the **Market Explorer** window include:

Field	Descriptions
Contracts	Lists the expiration of the first leg (for spreads/strategies) or the expiration of the contract (for options). The format matches the format of the leg contract. **Example**: Jun08, Q1 09, Summer 08
Types	Lists the exchange predefined types for the selected product. **Example**: Call, Calendar, Strangle, Straddle...etc.
Strikes	Lists all available strikes if the product has strike levels (Options, Warrants, etc).
Filtered Contracts	Lists instruments you can add to the **Selected Instruments** box based on the criteria you selected.
Clear button	Removes contracts from the **Filtered Contracts** box.
Transfer Buttons (>, >>)	Transfers selected items to the **Selected Instruments** box.
Basic button	Removes the **Advanced** fields from view.



Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Searching for a Product



To search for a product:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. In the **Exchange** section, click the exchange that hosts the product you want to find.
3. In the top left corner of the window, click to select a filter category from the list.

Option	Filter Characteristics
All	Selects all available products for this exchange.
Is	The product name or alias entered in the text box is identical with exchange name/symbol.
Starts With	The product name or alias entered in the text box starts with the first letter of the exchange name/symbol.
Contains	The product name or alias entered in the text box is contained in the exchange name/symbol.

4. If you want to search an alias (common name) for the product, click to select the **Search Descriptions** checkbox.
5. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The matching products appear in the **Products** box as you type.

You successfully searched for a product.

Renaming Contracts

You can create custom names for any contract using the context menu in Market Explorer, Market Grid, Quote Board and Order Book. The custom names display in all other X_TRADER windows for every flavor of the gateway.

Example: If you rename a contract in CME-A, the contract name persists for CME-B and all other CME flavored gateways.

- Renaming contracts
- Restoring contract names

To rename contracts:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find .
3. From the **Product Types** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
4. In the **Products** box, click the + next to the product whose contract you want to rename.

5. Right-click the contract and click **Rename**.
6. Type the new contract name and press `Enter`.

You successfully renamed contracts.

To restore contract names:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
3. From the **Product Types** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
4. In the **Products** box, click the + next to the product whose contract name you want to restore.
5. Right-click the contract and click **Restore**.

You successfully restored contract names.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Populating Windows with Contracts

From Market Explorer you select which functional window to open and populate with the products you wish to trade.

These functional windows include:

- Market Grid
- MD Trader
- Quote Board
- Spread Matrix
- Time and Sales
- Alerts Manager
- Autospreader: For X_TRADER Pro users.
- Autotrader: For X_TRADER Pro users
- Default Chart: Opens in X_STUDY™.

Follow these procedures to open a functional window with Market Explorer:

- Populating a functional window using drag-and-drop
- Populating a functional window for one product
- Populating a functional window for multiple products

To populate a functional window using drag-and-drop:

1. If a functional window is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open one.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
3. Find the products you want to drag into the functional window.
4. From the **Product Types** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
5. Press and hold the CTRL key and, from the **Products** box, click the products you want to open.
6. With the cursor over one of the selected products in the **Products** box, click and hold the mouse button. Continue holding the mouse button and move the mouse.

   The cursor changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it.
7. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the open functional window.
8. When the cursor turns into an arrow with a + sign under it, release the mouse button.

You successfully populated a functional window.

To open a functional window for a single product:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
3. In the top left corner of the window, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
4. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Products** field updates as you type.
5. From the **Product Types** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
6. Click to select the product you want to open.
7. Click **>** to transfer the products from the **Products** box to the **Selected Instruments** box.
8. In the **Function** box at the top of the window, click to select the functional window in which you want to open the product.
9. Click **Start** to open the functional window and populate it with the product.

You successfully opened a functional window for a single product.

To open a functional window with multiple products:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
3. In the top left corner of the window, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
4. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Products** field updates as you type.
5. From the **Product Types** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
6. Press and hold the CTRL key and, from the **Products** box, click the products you want to open.

   - or -

   To open all products in the **Products** box, click the **>>** button and skip to Step 8.
7. Click **>** to transfer the products from the **Products** box to the **Selected Instruments** box.
8. In the **Function** box, click to select the functional window in which you want to open the product.
9. Click **Start** to open the functional window and populate it with the selected products.

You successfully opened a functional window with multiple products.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

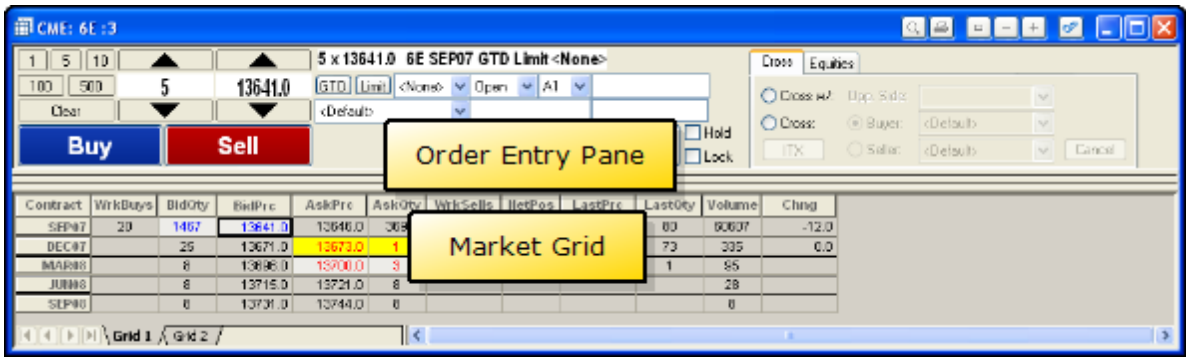
CHAPTER 6

Market Window Overview

The **Market** window lets you monitor the current market and place orders for multiple instruments. The following panes compose the **Market** window:

- **Order Entry pane**: The top half of the window. This is where you place your order. It contains the price, quantity, customer, and many order type fields.
- **Market Grid**: The bottom half of the window. This is where you monitor and select real-time contract information for trading. Use tabbed Market Grids to display multiple grid panes in a single window.

Note: Some functionality in the Market Grid is protected by U.S. Patent Number 6,938,011.



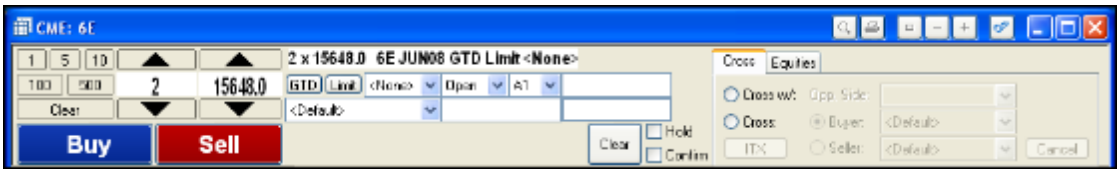
Features of the **Market** window include:

- Send orders using just one click of the mouse. Refer to **Click Trading Overview** on page 215.
- Use tabs to organize multiple markets. Refer to **Using Tabbed Windows** on page 193.
- Include Implieds for spreads in columns and in depth. Displays Implied price and quantity data in the same columns as direct price and quantity data. Refer to **Setting Implieds** on page 225.
- Use customer profiles to trade. Refer to **Customer Defaults Setup** on page 85.
- Highlight orders in the Market Grid.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Order Entry Pane Overview

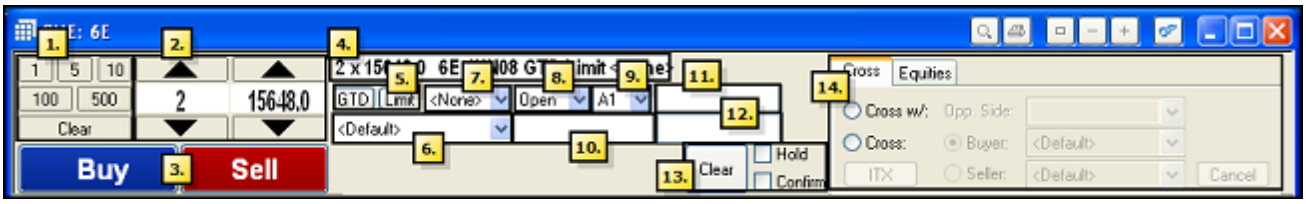
The **Order Entry** pane is the top half of the **Market** window. Use it to place orders for instruments displayed in the Market Grid. It contains the price, quantity, customer, and many order type fields.



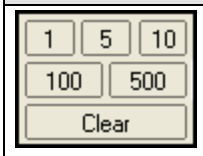
Follow these procedures to use the **Order Entry** pane:

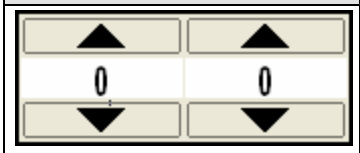
- Submitting an Order In the Order Entry Pane
- Submitting a Mutual Offset Order
- Using the Floating Order Entry Window
- Using the Mouse to Control Order Quantity and Price
- Confirming the Status of an Order
- Closing the Order Entry Pane
- Using the Keyboard to Enter Orders

Order Entry Pane Field Descriptions



The **Order Entry** pane field descriptions include:

Button	Description
	These pre-set quantity buttons increase the **Quantity** field by their numeric value. The quantity defaults are 1, 5, 10, 100, and 500. Refer to **Customizing the Quantity Buttons** on page 182. The **Clear** button deletes numbers from the **Quantity** field. To clear the entire **Order Entry** pane, click **Clear** below the account type field.

Field	Description
	The **Order Quantity** field is on the left; the **Price** field is on the right. To change these fields: • Right-click to increase the value. Left-click to decrease the value. • Click the up and down arrows. • Manually type a value using the keyboard.

Button	Description
Buy and Sell	Click these buttons to send an order to market.

Field	Description
Order	**Order Summary**: This field displays your order information when you click a row in the Market Grid (quantity, price, product, month/year, time in force, order type, and order restriction). When you click a row with an option, this field displays a C for call or a P for put along with the strike price.

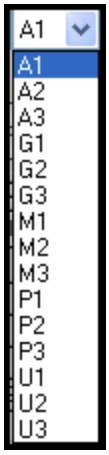
Button	Description
GTD Limit	Time in Force (TIF) is the first button. It determines how long your order works in the market. In all cases, your orders work until they trade, you cancel them, or the time in force is met. Click the TIF button to toggle between your choices. • **GTD (Good 'Til Day)**: Works until the current trading session ends. Enabled by default. • **GTC (Good 'Til Cancel)**: Works until the contract expires. • **GIS (Good In Session)**: Works until the contract expires within the session, or the trading session ends. (Some exchanges, like Euronext, have products with different trading sessions in one day.) • **Date**: Works until the expiration date. Click the second button (**Limit**) to toggle between Limit and Market order types. • **Limit**: Works at a specific price. • **Market**: Works the inside market.

Field	Description
<Default> <Default> JANE DOE JOHN DOE	**Customer Selection List**: This field lists the customer profile for which the **SEL** box is selected in the Customer Defaults window. **Note**: You can immediately trade with the <Default> profile as long as you set up an account in its row.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Field	Description
Order Type list 	Sets available restriction types, including: • **None**: No additional restrictions on the order. • **Block**: Eurex Block Trades. (For Block trades on LIFFE, refer to **Wholesale Trading Overview** on page 381.) Block trades are high-volume trades whose price has been separately agreed to by both parties outside of the normal exchange trading methods. When you select Block from the **Order Type** field, the **Counterparty Information** field automatically displays. • **Fill or Kill (FOK)**: Fill or Kill. FOK immediately fills the entire order or immediately cancels the entire order. • **Iceberg**: Iceberg. An order where only a portion of the order quantity is sent to the market at a time. Each order quantity is equal. • **Immediate or Cancel (IOC)**: Immediate or Cancel. IOC immediately fills the order to the extent possible and cancels the balance. • **Market On Close (MOC)**: Market on Close. Sends Market orders during the closing auction of the current business day • **Market On Open Order (MOO)**: Market On Open. MOO sends Market orders during the pre-opening period, intended for execution at the opening market price. • **Minimum Volume (MV)**: Minimum Volume. MV sets the minimum order quantity that must be available in the market. If the quantity is not met, the entire order cancels. You cannot send MV orders with a minimum volume quantity greater than the order quantity to market. • **Stop**: Stop order. The Stop Prc fields appear, letting you set the price that triggers the order. Stop orders can be Limit or Market orders. X_TRADER supports Stop orders on all exchanges. A stop order displays in the Order Book with a *Pending Trigger* status, indicating it is not actually in the market. When the stop triggers, the order becomes the native order type and remains in the Order Book until it fills. • **TStop**: Trailing Stop. TStop sets the Stop Price a fixed distance from the current market price and moves dynamically. **Note**: Each exchange determines their support of order restrictions. The definition and use of the restriction may differ between exchanges and marketplaces. If the order type is not supported, the **Audit Trail** window displays an error message from the exchange. Refer to each exchange's market rules for additional information.

Field	Description
	Indicates the order is opening or closing a position, or that the orders will be handled in a first-in first-out manner.

Field	Description
Account Type menu 	Sets your account types. • **A1**: First Agent Account (e.g., broker) • **A2**: Euronext Products: Customer/Automatic Allocation • **A3**: Euronext Products: Customer/Give-up or System Allocation • **G1**: Pre-Designated Give-up Trade • **G2**: Designated Give-up Trade/Automatic Allocation • **G3**: Give-up System Allocation • **M1**: First Market Maker Account • **M2**: Second Market Maker Account • **M3**: Market Maker/Give-up or System Allocation • **P1**: First Principal Account (e.g., proprietary trader) • **P2:** Second Principal Account • **P3**: Euronext Products: House/Give-up or System Allocation • **U1**: Unallocated. For orders that have not been allocated to a customer account or where allocation is a middle/back office function. • **U2**: Unallocated/Automatic • **U3**: Unallocated/System

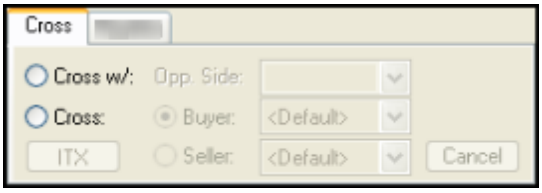
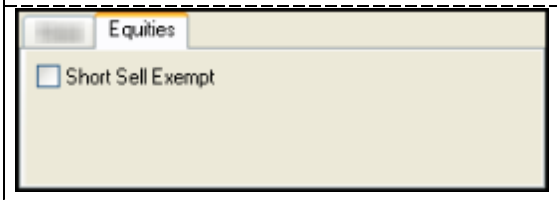
Field	Description
Account Number	Indicates a back office account number to include with your order.

Field	Description
Clearing Member Code	Indicates the clearing member code you set up in the **Customer Defaults** window. Used for Give-up trade accounts only.

Field	Description
Free Form Text 2 field	When you select your customer, this field seeds with the **FFT2** field set up on the **Customer Defaults** window. Alternatively, you can type up to 15 alphanumeric characters in the **FFT2** field in the **Order Entry** pane prior to sending an order.

Field	Description
	Clear: Clears all contract, price, and quantity data without sending the order to market. **Note**: The quantity **Clear** button is below the quantity buttons. This button changes the quantity to zero without impacting the other fields. **Hold**: When checked, the order goes to the Order Book but is not sent to market. The Order Book acts as a location to hold the order until you send it on to market or delete it. The change to the order reflects in the **TTStatus** column in the Order Book. **Confirm**: Lets you confirm an order before it is sent to market. The **Buy** and **Sell** buttons become **Apply Buy** or **Apply Sell**. Use the **Order Entry** tab on the **Properties** menu to enable this feature for every order entry window.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

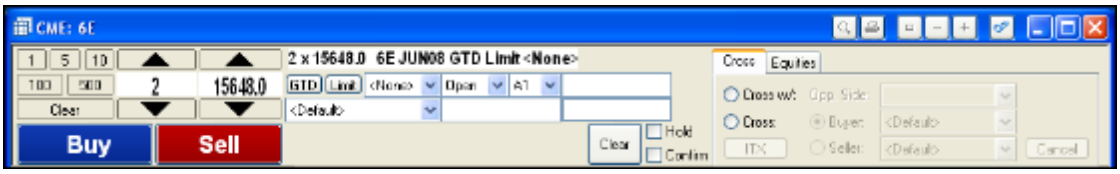
Field	Description
	**Cross**: Enable Order Crossing from the **Order Entry** tab on the **Properties** menu. • **Cross w/**: Trades with a specific counter party. Enter the counter party's Trader ID where indicated. Support of this feature is exchange specific. The **Buy** and **Sell** buttons become **Crs Buy** and **Crs Sell** buttons. • **Cross**: Enables the Buyer and Seller lists so you can set up a cross trade. The **Buy** and **Sell** buttons become **Buy First** and **Sell First** buttons. • **ITX**: Sends an Intention to Cross notification as is required by some exchanges. A 15 second countdown appears on the face of the **ITX** button. This timer is only informational and does not trigger a cross order when it reaches zero. Set the number of seconds in the **Order Entry** tab on the **Properties** menu. X_TRADER does not time orders for markets that require a time interval between sides of the cross being submitted. You must manage this manually. **Note**: Do not confuse Intention to Cross with a cross order, or with the LIFFE ITX function. Intention to Cross is an announcement of the desired intention to cross. The LIFFE ITX is a cross order, not an announcement.
	**Equities**: **Short Sell Exempt**: Indicates, when checked, you are exempt from short-sell notifications for some trading types.

Using Floating Order Entry

The Floating Order Entry is a detached window used to place orders that you can place anywhere on your screen. You can use one or multiple Floating Order Entry windows to place orders for the Market Grid, Order Book, Autotrader, Spread Matrix, and Quote Board.

Your Floating Order Entry can be one of the following:

- The **Market** window **Order Entry** pane



- An **MD Trader** window

- The **Order Bar**

The Buy Order Bar

The Sell Order Bar

Follow these procedures to enable or disable the Floating Order Entry:

- Enabling Floating Order Entry
- Enabling Multiple Floating Order Entry windows
- Enabling MD Trader as your Floating Order Entry
- Disabling Floating Order Entry

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To enable Floating Order Entry :

1. Right-click anywhere in the Market Grid, Order Book, Autotrader, Spread Matrix, or Quote Board to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Click **Floating Order Entry**.

You successfully enabled Floating Order Entry.

To enable MD Trader as your Floating Order Entry:

Note: The first time you launch an MD Trader Floating Order Entry, you must put a value in the **Maximum Order Quantity** field.

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. From the **Trading** tab, in the **Floating Order Entry** field, click to select the **MD Trader** option.
3. Click the **MD Trading** tab.
4. At the top of the screen, type a maximum order quantity.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully enabled MD Trader as your Floating Order Entry.

To disable Floating Order Entry:

1. Right-click anywhere in the Market Grid, Order Book, Autotrader, Spread Matrix, or Quote Board to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Click **Floating Order Entry** to disable the feature.

You successfully disabled Floating Order Entry.

Floating Order Entry Notes

You can use the **Market** window **Order Entry** pane, the Floating Order Entry, or a combination of both.

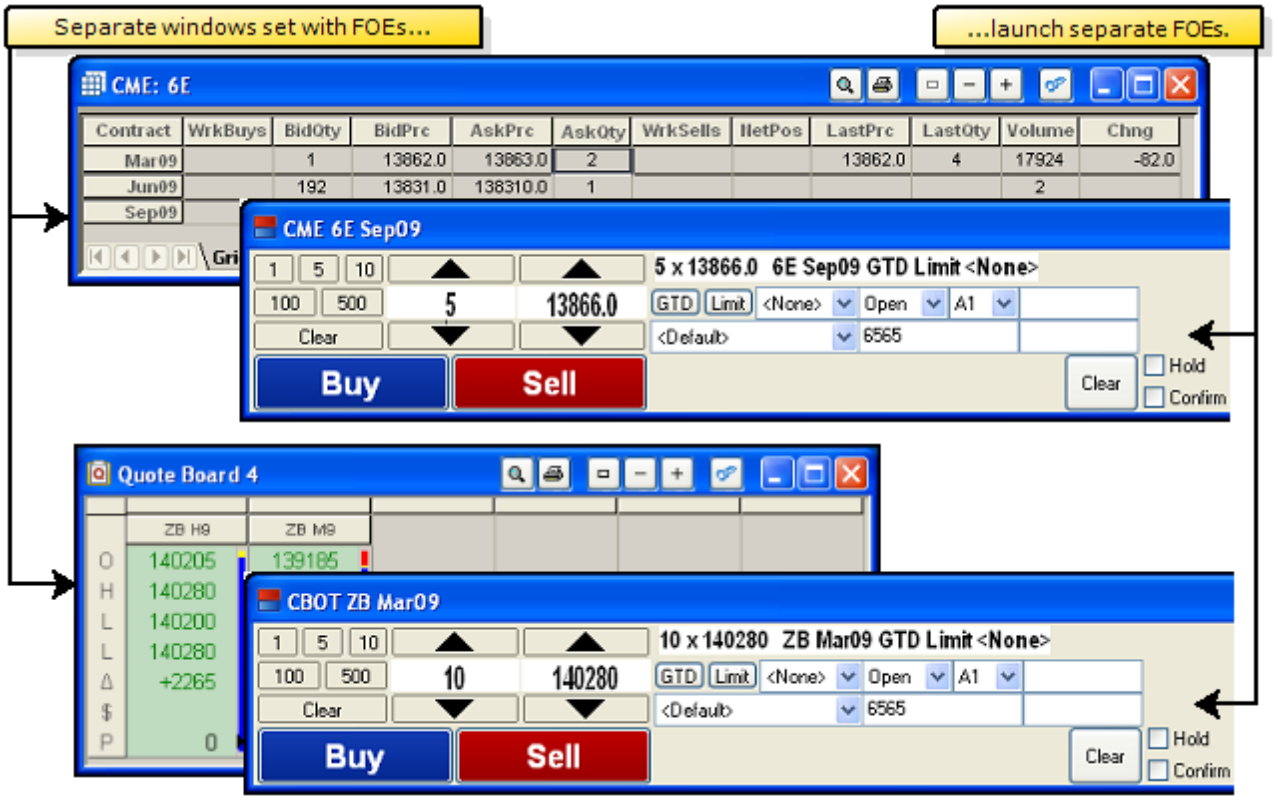
The Floating Order Entry populates with data from any and all active windows. For example, if you have both the **Market** window **Order Entry** pane and a Floating Order Entry open, when you click a contract bid price, both **Order Entry** panes reflect the contract information. However, entering a quantity in one pane does not populate the **Quantity** field of the other.

To populate multiple Order Entry panes with the same customer default trade information, use the Customer List. This is especially useful when you are monitoring multiple products and markets and placing orders for the same customer.

Note: Clicking (**X**) in the top right corner of a Floating Order Entry does not disable the feature.

Using Multiple Floating Order Entry Windows

You can set X_TRADER to launch a separate floating order entry window for each window with Floating Order Entry enabled.



Example:

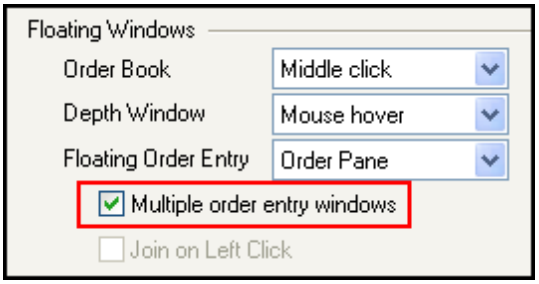
- Two Market Grids both enabled for floating order entry launch and seed two separate FOE panes.
- A Market Grid and a Quote Board enabled for floating order entry launch and seed two separate FOE panes.
- One Market Grid with two tabs launches and seeds the same single FOE pane.

Enable...	In...
Multiple order entry panes	The new **Floating Windows** section on the **Trading** tab
Floating order entry	The context menus for each window in which you want to use floating order entry.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To setup multiple Floating Order Entry windows:

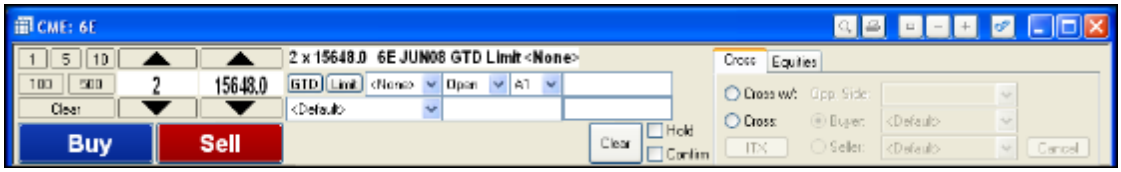
1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. On the **Trading** tab, in the **Floating Windows** section, click to select **Multiple order entry windows**.



3. Click **OK**.
4. Enable floating order entry from the context menu of the windows of your choice.

You successfully setup multiple Floating Order Entry windows.

Submitting an Order using the Order Entry Pane



To submit an order using the Order Entry pane:

1. Choose a customer account. This assumes you set up one or more Customer Default profiles.

   Note: You can immediately trade with the <Default> profile. This profile assumes a GTD Limit order for an agent account. You can change the parameters. To create customized profiles so manual changes are not necessary, refer to **Customer Defaults Setup** on page 85.

2. Click a bid or ask cell in the appropriate instrument row.

   The price seeds in the **Order Entry** pane and the contract information immediately appears in the **Order Summary** field. The default options **Market** window displays the Calls on the left and the Puts on the right.

3. Add or change any necessary information (e.g., quantity, price, order type, time in force).

   Note: By default you are placing a Limit order. To place a Market order, click the **Limit** button under the **Order Summary** field. This grays the **Price** field.

4. To execute, click **Buy** or **Sell**.

You successfully submitted an order in the **Order Entry** pane.

Submitting a Mutual Offset Order

X_TRADER lets you submit Mutual Offset System (MOS) orders. The MOS agreement between the Chicago Mercantile Exchange (CME) and the Singapore Exchange (SGX) lets you open a futures position on one exchange and liquidate it on the other. This is one way to manage your overnight risk.

The agreement includes the following instruments:

- Eurodollars
- Euroyen TIBOR
- Nikkei - Yen
- Nikkei - Dollar

You must designate a trade as an MOS trade prior to submitting.

To submit a Mutual Offset order:

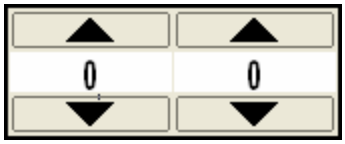
1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Customer Defaults**.
2. Find the **Customer Default** row you want to designate as Mutual Offset trades and set the **Acct** field to **G2**.
3. In the **Give Up** column, you must specify the account by completing the following two steps:
   - Type `SX` as the first two letters.
   - Type the clearing firm number. (This is a number between 1 and 3 digits.)

   Example: You set the **Give Up** column to *SX123*, where *123* is the mutual offset for Eurodollars.
4. Close the **Customer Defaults** dialog box.
5. Open a **Market** window with the instrument you want to trade.
6. In the **<Default>** field, select the MOS customer from the list.
7. Add or change any necessary information (e.g., quantity, price, order type, time in force)
8. To execute, click **Buy** or **Sell**.

You successfully submitted a Mutual Offset order.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Using the Mouse to Control Order Quantity and Price



Most users will use the keyboard or the spin buttons to enter order quantity and price. However, you may also use the mouse to increase or decrease order quantity.

▶ **To change the order quantity or price using the mouse:**

1. Click to select a Market Grid cell to populate the **Order Entry** pane.
2. Click in either the **Order Quantity** or **Price** fields. (shown above)
3. Right-click to increase the numeric value.

   - or -

   Left-click to decrease the numeric value.

You successfully changed the order quantity or price using the mouse.

Customizing the Quantity Buttons

You can customize the quantity buttons on the **Order Entry** pane to numbers that better suit your trading style. The customized buttons save with your workspace.

▶ **To customize the quantity buttons:**

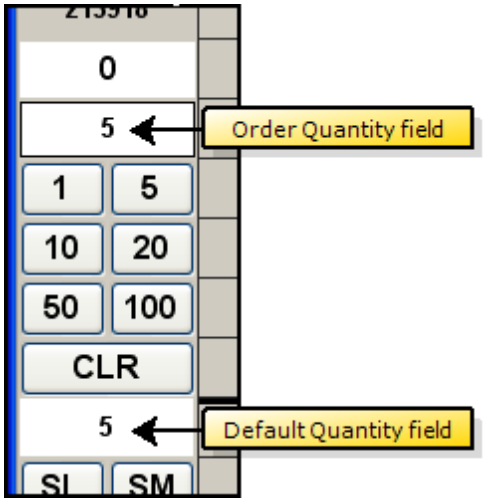
1. Press the `Ctrl` key and right-click the button you want to customize.
2. Type the number you want the button to represent.
3. Press `Enter`.
4. Repeat Steps 1-3 for each button you want to customize.

You successfully customized the quantity buttons.

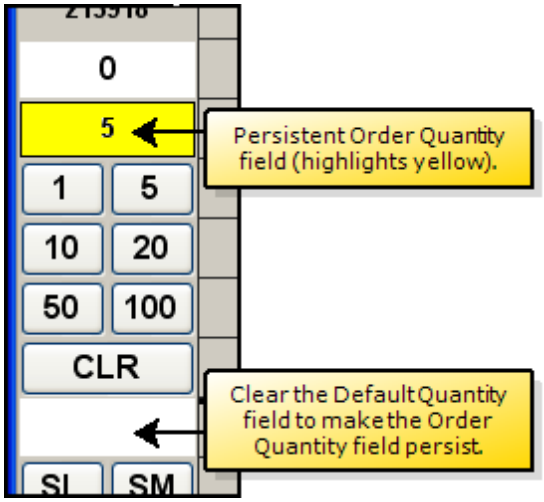
Setting the Default Quantity

In MD Trader setting the **Default Quantity** field is not required, but once you send an initial order, the **Order Quantity** field continually resets itself to the default quantity.

Alternatively, you can clear the **Default Quantity** field and make the **Order Quantity** persistent.



Default Qty field populates Order Qty field



Order Qty field persists

You set the maximum quantity for trades with the **Maximum order quantity** property. However, the restrictions established by Guardian take precedence over this property.

▶ **To set the default quantity:**

1. Click in the **Default Quantity** field under the **CLR** button.
2. Use the `Delete` key on the keyboard to clear the contents of the field.
3. Enter a default quantity.

   - or -

   Leave the **Default Quantity** field blank to have the **Order Quantity** field persist.
4. Press `Enter` to set the default quantity.

You successfully set the default quantity.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Closing the Order Entry Pane

To close the Order Entry pane:

1. Right-click the Market Grid to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Highlight **Order Entry** and click to de-select **Attached**.

You successfully closed the **Order Entry** pane.

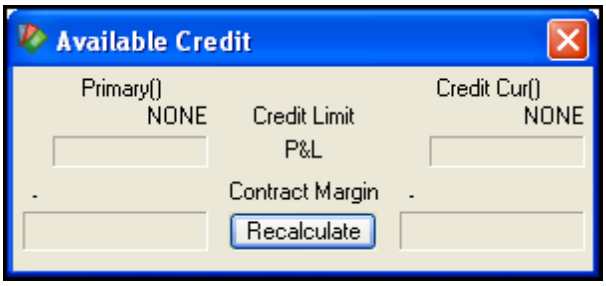
Confirming the Status of Market Orders

Confirm the status of your orders using the following windows:

- **Audit Trail**: The **Audit Trail** window confirms the status of your submitted order. Comprehensive trade information is provided to confirm receipt of order requests by the exchange and all details about the order itself. ERR indicates that an error has occurred.
- **Order Book**: A working order displays in the Order Book. When the guaranteed fill information is received from the exchange, the order is removed from the Order Book and moved to the **Fill** window. Partially filled orders remain in the Order Book until they are completely filled.
- **Fill window**: Filled and partially filled orders display in the Fill window. The Position pane updates your P/L.

Establishing Available Credit

If your trading environment uses the Guardian Risk Management tool, the **Available Credit** dialog box displays available credit information in the primary currency and the margin account currency, including Credit Limits, Profit/Loss, and Contract Margin. The X_TRADER Administrator uses Guardian to select both currencies. The primary currency is selected from the Currency Table Setup, and the margin account currency is selected via the Guardian **Trader Setup** window.



Totals in green indicate a positive available balance; totals in red indicate a deficit. When the risk controls are enabled, a zero or negative credit limit disallows trading.

To access the Available Credit dialog box:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Available Credit**.
2. Click **Recalculate**.

   You must click **Recalculate** in order to display the current total. This lets X_TRADER reserve processing power for high priority actions such as order processing.

You successfully accessed the **Available Credit** dialog box.

Synthetic Disclosed Quantity Orders

Iceberg orders are disclosed quantity orders, allowing the execution of a large order by splitting the order into smaller disclosed quantities. When one disclosed quantity order is filled, the next disclosed quantity order is sent until the entire order quantity is filled. Characteristics of an Iceberg order include:

- Each disclosed order quantity is equal.
- You can set the disclosed quantity as a number or as a percentage of the order.

The exception is MD Trader. You may only set the disclosed quantity as a number, not as a percentage.

Using the disclosed quantity order type on an exchange that does not support them, can result in a time lag that may cause your disclosed quantity trade to be traded through. This is because each order is sent to the exchange for just the disclosed quantity. As soon as it fills, another order submits. The time between these actions could cause a delay and a missed opportunity.

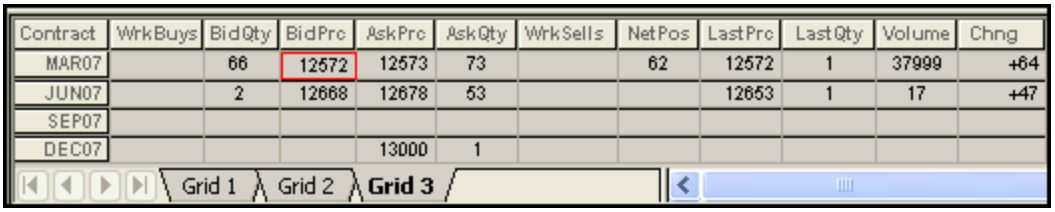
Note: Synthetic orders are not supported by all exchanges. For a list of supported order types, refer to the SAM specific to the TT Gateway on which you trade.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Market Grid Pane Overview

Note: Some functionality in the Market Grid is protected by U.S. Patent Number 6,938,011.

The Market Grid is the bottom half of the **Market** window. This is where you monitor and select real-time contract information for trading. You complete trades using the **Order Entry** pane on the top half of the **Market** window.



Use the Market Grid to perform these procedures:

- Customizing the Market Grid columns
- Displaying contract and real-time price information for the products you select. Refer to **Market Explorer Overview** on page 163.
- Using Tabbed Windows
- Highlighting in the Market Grid
- Viewing Price Trend Indicators
- Opening Wholesale Orders
- Using the Market Depth feature
- Using Excel for Theoretical and Implied Pricing
- Generating an RTD Formula
- Viewing your Estimated Position In Queue

Customizing the Viewable Market Grid Columns

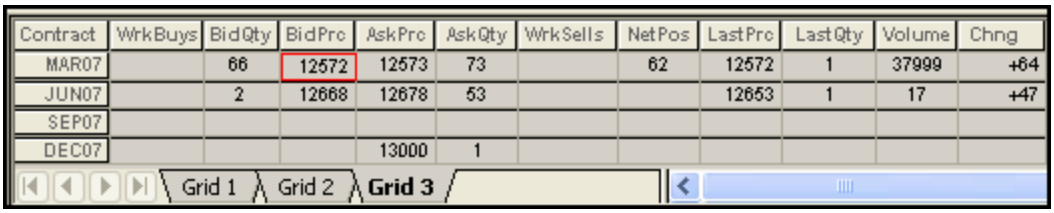
You can customize the viewable Market Grid columns in the following ways:

- Define default visible columns via the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu. This ensures every new Market Grid displays only the default columns of information.
- Use a pre-defined **Layout** option on the context menu.
- Use the **Show/Hide** option on the context menu to include the columns you want.

Note: The Eurex exchange displays only four (4) digits in inside market. Therefore, the maximum **Bid/Ask Quantity** is 9999. This is a limitation of the Eurex API for UserDevices and MISSes. If the inside market is greater than 9999 and you wish to view that data, open Market Depth feature in the Market Grid.

Market Grid Pane Field Descriptions

The Market Grid columns are defined as follows:



Contract	WrkBuys	BidQty	BidPrc	AskPrc	AskQty	WrkSells	NetPos	LastPrc	LastQty	Volume	Chng
MAR07		66	12572	12573	73		62	12572	1	37999	+64
JUN07		2	12668	12678	53			12653	1	17	+47
SEP07											
DEC07				13000	1						

Grid 1 | Grid 2 | **Grid 3**

Column	Description
Contract	The traded product's exchange symbol and the month and year of expiration.
Del Srs	A button used to delete all delete all orders for the row. **Note**: This feature behaves differently for an exchange trader versus a proxy (TTORD) trader: • If an exchange trader uses this feature, all working orders for all sponsored proxy (TTORD) traders delete. • If a TTORD uses this feature, it converts one message into to multiple individual delete requests to prevent them from deleting the exchange trader's working orders.
RFQ	A button used to send Request For Quotes.
Depth	An icon used to display Market Depth. **Note**: The available market depth shown depends on the gateway, but cannot exceed 20 levels.
Bid Mbr	The bid Member ID (If supplied by the exchange).
EPIQ Buys	Your estimated position in queue for working buy orders.
WrkBuys	The Group ID's total number of working buy contracts. Group ID = *MemberIDGroupID*
BidQty	The total quantity working at the bid. **Note**: The Eurex exchange displays only four (4) digits in inside market. Therefore, the maximum **Bid/Ask Quantity** is 9999. This is a limitation of the Eurex API for UserDevices and MISSes. If the inside market is greater than 9999 and you wish to view that data, open Market Depth feature in the Market Grid.
ThrshBid	The Threshold bid price as established by the exchange. Exchanges set a trading range for the day based upon the previous session's settlement price. The exchange halts trading of the product when one of these limits is reached. A frozen market requires manual release by the exchange.
BidPrc	The best market bid price.
BidQty Accum	The accumulated bid quantity. Use only when you enable Market Depth.
BidPrc Avg	The average bid price. Use only when you enable Market Depth.
IndBidQty	The best indicative bid quantity. **Note**: Market Markers can provide indicative quotes when quoting certain products. These indicative quotes are displayed in these fields. These are not tradable quotes but an estimation of the market.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Column	Description
IndAskQty	The best indicative ask quantity.
IndBidPric	The best indicative bid price.
IndAskPric	The best indicative ask price.
AskPrc Avg	The average ask price. Use only when you enable Market Depth.
AskQty Accum	The accumulated ask quantity. Use only when you enable Market Depth.
AskPrc	The best market ask price.
ThrshAsk	The Threshold bid price as established by the exchange. Exchanges set a trading range for the day based upon the previous session's settlement price. The exchange halts trading of the product when one of these limits is reached. A frozen market requires manual release by the exchange.
AskQty	The total quantity working at the ask. **Note**: The Eurex exchange displays only four (4) digits in inside market. Therefore, the maximum **Bid/Ask Quantity** is 9999. This is a limitation of the Eurex API for UserDevices and MISSes. If the inside market is greater than 9999 and you wish to view that data, open Market Depth feature in the Market Grid.
WrkSells	The Group ID's total number of working sell contracts. Group ID = *MemberIDGroupID*
EPIQ Sells	Your estimated position in queue for working sell orders.
Ask Mbr	The ask Member ID (If supplied by the exchange).
NetPos	Your net position.
FFNetPos	Your net position, accounting for fast fills.
LastPrc	The last traded price.
LastQty	The last quantity. Behaves differently for each Gateway. • For some (e.g., CME and Euronext), it is a cumulative total of all trades at that particular price. It sums the last quantity, while it remains at the current trading price. Once the trade price changes, the last quantity resets. • For others (e.g., LIFFE, Eurex and Xetra), it is the last traded quantity.
Volume	The total traded quantity for the session.
High	The high price for the session.
Low	The low price for the session.
Open	The opening price for the session.
Close	The closing price. Can be used to seed the **Order Entry** pane.
Settle	The settlement price. Can be used to seed the **Order Entry** pane.
Chng	The difference between the last traded price and the previous session's settlement price. • If there is no LTP, this field is blank. • If there is no Settlement, the Close price is used instead. • If there is no Settlement or Close price, this field is blank.
TheoPrc	The theoretical price.
TheoBid	The theoretical bid price.
TheoAsk	The theoretical ask price.

Column	Description
QAct	Quote action (Sends individual quotes).
BQQ	The test bid quote quantity.
BQP	The test bid quote price.
Mkt BQQ	The market bid quote quantity.
Mkt BQP	The market bid quote price.
Quote	A checkbox used to activate and deactivate a contract for quoting.
Market AQQ	The market ask quote quantity.
Market AQP	The market ask quote price.
AQP	The ask quote price.
AQQ	The ask quote quantity.
Imp BidQty	The implied bid quantity. **Note**: If the trader is displaying calls and puts with the same strike price on a single line, then there will be two sets of these columns.
Imp BidPrc	The implied bid price.
Imp AskQty	The implied ask quantity.
Imp AskPrc	The implied ask price.
EBSRegBid	The Dealable Regular Bid for a contract on the EBS gateway. This indicates the worst price you will fill at if you trade the normal quantity. The normal quantity is decided per contract by EBS.
EBSBestBid	The best Bid for a contract as reported by EBS. Whether you can trade the best Bid/Offer is restricted by EBS based on your bi-lateral credit agreements.
EBSBestAsk	The best Ask for a contract as reported by EBS. Whether you can trade the best Bid/Offer is restricted by EBS based on your bi-lateral credit agreements.
EBSRegAsk	The Dealable Regular Ask for a contract on the EBS gateway. This indicates the worst price you will fill at if you trade the normal quantity. The normal quantity is decided per contract by EBS.
IndPrc	The indicative open price for the session. **Note**: When the indicative close price appears, the **IndQty** field blanks out.
IndQty	The indicative open quantity for the session.
Vola	Options theoretical pricing model (Theo Server) data categories: The percent volatility.
Click Trd	A checkbox used to activate and deactivate click trading by contract.
S (Status)	The status of the contract (e.g., Pre-Open, Open, Clsd)
Exp Date	The expiration month and year formatted as DDMMMYY. **Example**: 31Dec09

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Using the Market Grid Context Menu

Right-click in the Market Grid to access the context menu.

Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

The available menu options include:

- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Click Trade**: Enables Click Trading. Refer to **Click Trading Overview** on page 215.
- **Floating Depth**: Enables the Floating Depth Window.
- **Order Entry**: Set whether the **Order Entry** pane is attached to the Market Grid, or the floating window you set in the **Trading** tab.
- **Layouts**: Select a pre-formatted column layout that suits your trading style. You can select more than one of the following:
  - **Market**: Default layout. Displays BidQty, BidPrc, AskPrc, AskQty, LastPrc, LastQty, Volume, and Chng (Change).
  - **Range**: Adds High, Low, Open, Close, and Settle market information.
  - **Depth**: Adds the Market Depth feature to list the next best prices.
  - **Implieds**: Adds Imp BidQty, Imp BidPrc, Imp AskPrc, and Imp AskQty.
  - **Theos**: Only available if you are using a theoretical server.
  - **Indicative**: Adds IndBidQty, IndBidPrc, IndAskPrc, IndAskQty.
  - **EPIQ**: Adds EPIQ Buys and EPIQ Sells for Estimated Position in Queue.

  Refer to **Market Grid Pane Field Descriptions** on page 187 for column definitions.
- **Live-Only Mode**: Lets you show only contracts that currently have an active bid, active offer or last price. In addition, you can **Pin Rows**, which always leaves contracts shown even if they are not live.
- **MD Trader**: Opens anMD Trader for every row selected in the Market Grid.
- **Spread Matrix**: Opens Spread Matrix, which simplifies the tasks of monitoring exchange-traded calendar

spreads.

- **Autospreader**: Opens the **Autospreader® Configuration** window with legs assigned for every row selected in the Market Grid.
- **Autotrader** : Opens one **Autotrader™** window with rows for every row selected in the Market Grid.
- **Create Strategy**: Opens the **Create Strategy** window. Refer to **Strategies Overview** on page 239 section.
- **Quote Board**: Opens Quote Board with panes for every row selected in the Market Grid.
- **Chart**: Opens an X_STUDY chart for the selected contract.
- **Copy**: Places selected data on a clipboard for pasting into another program (e.g., Excel).
- **Insert**: Creates a spacer row above the row you clicked on.
- **Delete**: Deletes a row.
- **Links**: Lets you control links manage your paste, delete and manage your links:
    - **Paste Link**: Creates a dynamic link between the two programs so that data from one program automatically updates the data in the other.
    - **Delete Link**: Removes an established link.
    - **Manage Links**: Lists all applications with links to the Market Grid.
    - **RTD**: Opens the **RTD** dialog box, letting you copy formulas from the Market Grid and paste them for use in Microsoft Excel.
- **Send RFQ**: Opens the **Request For Quote** dialog box for a specific contract and quantity.

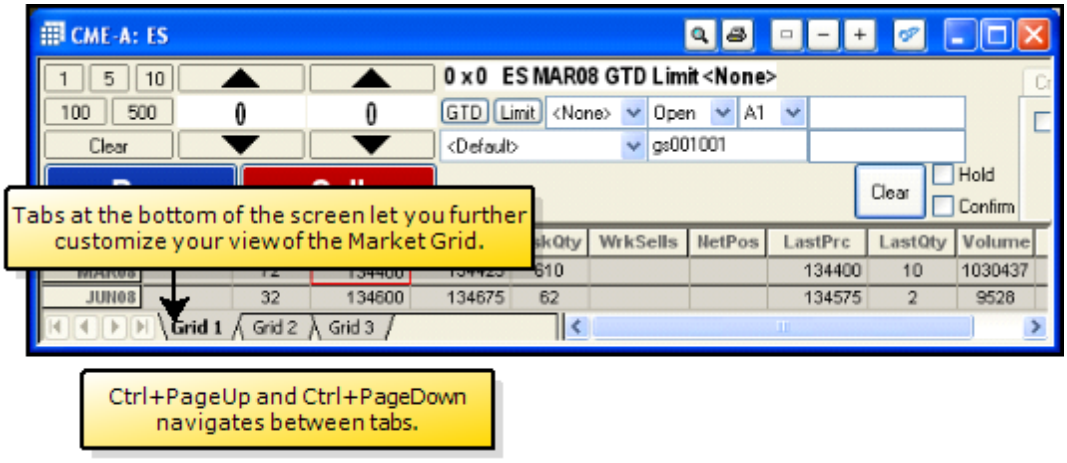
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

- **Quoting**: This option is available when you enable quoting in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu. Refer to **Quoting Overview** on page 229.
- - **Show**: Displays and disables the quoting bar when quoting parameters are defined.
  - **Select**: Highlights the **Quote** column in the Market Grid based on:
    - **All**: All orders
    - **Calls**: Just calls (for Option Markets)
    - **Puts**: Just puts (for Option Markets)
    - **2-sided Mkts**: Just two-sided markets
    - **Last Prc**: Orders with an LTP
  - **Activate**: Marks the **Quote** column for the selected contract to indicate it will be quoted.
  - **Deactivate**: Unmarks the **Quote** column for the selected contract to indicate it will not be quoted.
- **Wholesale Orders**: Provides options for submitting wholesale orders on the LIFFE exchange. This option opens an additional Wholesale Order window.
- **Rename Contract**: Rename a contract or add text to a spacer row.
- **Price Format**: Provides price display options:
- - **Native**: Keeps the native format of the product.
  - **Ticks**: Changes the price format to ticks, excluding decimals.
  - **Decimal**: Changes the price format to include two decimal places.
- **Formatting**: Lets you customize fonts and borders.
- **Clear All Formatting**: Returns formatting to the default.
- **Hide**: Hides the selected row(s) or column(s).
- **Show/Hide Rows**: Lets you select which rows to show.
- **Show/Hide Columns**: Lets you select which columns to show.

Using Tabbed Windows

To make trading on the **Market Grid** and **Spread Matrix** windows easier, you can add tabs to them. Rather than open several instances of these windows, tabbed grids let you preserve screen space and embed up to twenty tabs on a single window.

Each tab appears sequentially but, for better recognition, they can be rearranged, renamed and color-coded.



Follow these procedures to use tabs on the **Market Grid** or **Spread Matrix** windows:

- Adding a tab
- Populating a tab
- Rearranging a tab
- Renaming a tab
- Color-coding a tab
- Navigating between tabs

▶ To add a tab:

1. Right-click the tab after which you want to add a new tab.
2. Click **Insert**.

   A new tab appears.

You successfully added a tab.

▶ To populate a tab:

1. Navigate to a populated Market Grid or Market Explorer to find the instruments you want to place in the new tab.
2. Click to select the instrument(s) you want to move to the new tab.

   Note: Hold the CTRL key and continue clicking to select multiple instruments.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

3. With the cursor over one of the selected instruments, click and hold the mouse button.
4. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor off the window to the new tab.

   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters the new tab, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
5. When the cursor enters the new tab, release the mouse button.

You successfully populated a tab.

To rearrange a tab:

1. Click and hold the tab you want to move.
2. Move your mouse where you want to place the tab.
3. Release the mouse button.

You successfully rearranged a tab.

To rename a tab:

1. Right-click the tab you want to rename.
2. Click **Rename**.

   The current name of the tab is highlighted.
3. Type the new name you want to give the tab and press ENTER.

You successfully renamed a tab.

To color-code a tab:

1. Right-click the tab you want to color-code.
2. Click **Tab Color**.
3. Click to select the color you want to code the tab.

   - or -

   Click **Define Custom Color** to choose a different color.
4. Once you choose the tab color you want to use, click **OK**.

You successfully color-coded a tab.

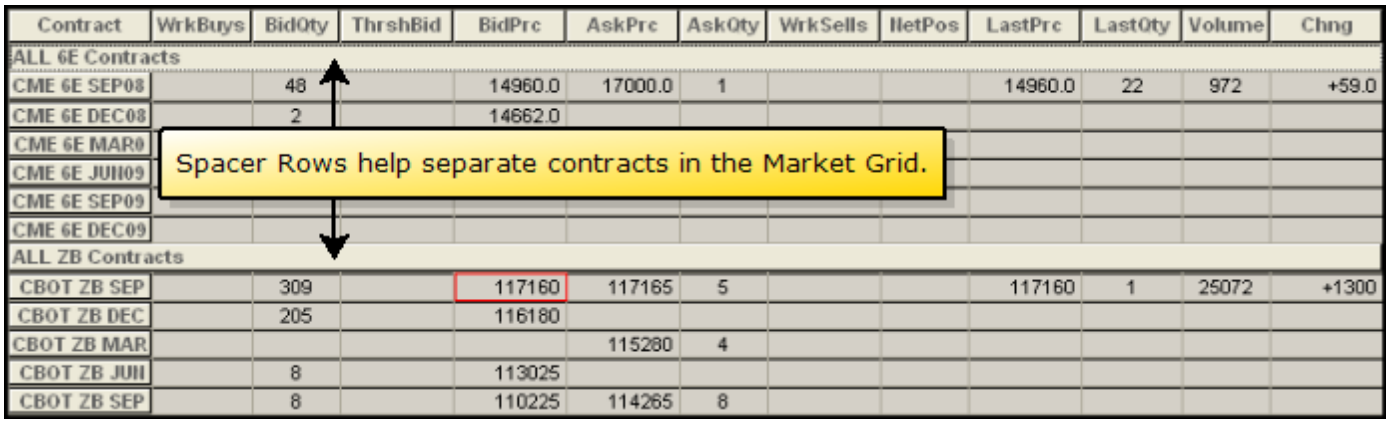
To navigate between tabs:

Press Ctrl+PageUp or Ctrl+PageDown to navigate between tabs.

You successfully navigated between tabs.

Adding Spacer Rows

You can add spacer rows to the Market Grid for the purpose of separating contracts. In addition, you can add text and color to the spacer rows to label groups of contracts.



To add a spacer row:

1. Right-click the Market Grid.
2. Click **Insert**.

You successfully added a spacer row.

To add text to a spacer row:

1. Right-click the spacer row.
2. Click **Rename**.
3. Type the text you want to add to the spacer row.
4. Click **OK**.

You successfully added text to a spacer row.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Highlighting in the Market Grid

Highlighting is an available feature in the **Market Grid** and **Spread Matrix** windows. You can:

- Highlight your own orders
- Use best price highlighting

Highlighting Your Orders

Highlight your orders by enabling specific properties in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.

Property	Description
Highlight Own Orders	Lightens the background color behind your working orders.
Use Top of Book Coloring	Highlights the background color when your order is the best bid or offer.
Use Minimum Highlighting Mode	Highlights the cell border of the Bid or Ask when the LTP updates. Does not highlight when only the quantity changes.

Best Price Highlighting

Highlight the best **Bid/Ask Quantity** and best **Bid/Ask Price** columns. As the market changes and the bid or ask prices change, the highlighting moves to the row with the new best price.

It is possible for more than one exchange to display the best price at any one time. In this case, more than one best price is highlighted. Do not assume any one market is showing as both the best bid and ask (assuming you trade more than one exchange).

Note: You can change the colors used with this feature in the **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu.

To enable Best Price Highlighting:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. On the **Trading** tab, click to select the **Highlight best price** option.

You successfully enabled Best Price Highlighting.

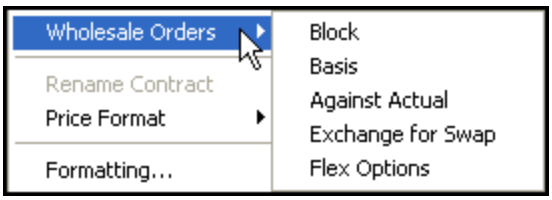
Viewing Price Trend Indicators in the Market Grid

The **LastPrc** (Last Price) column in the Market Grid, indicates if the last trade for a given product occurred on an uptick, downtick, or with no change in the price.

The cell border highlights in green to indicate an uptick, and red to indicate a downtick. If there is no change in the last traded price, the cell is white.

Opening Wholesale Orders

The **Wholesale Orders** option offers different ways to submit Wholesale Orders on the LIFFE exchange:

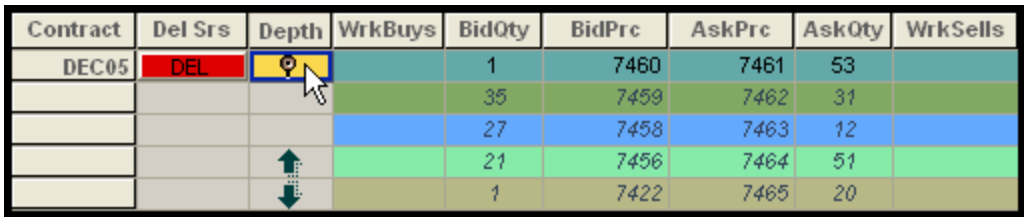


- **Block**: Block trades are high volume trades in any outright or strategy product.
- **Basis**: Basis trades are strategies for long-term bond markets that incorporate a futures leg and an underlying (or cash) leg.
- **Against Actual**: Against Actuals trades are strategies for commodities markets that incorporate a futures leg and an underlying commodity leg.
- **Exchange for Swap**: Exchange for Swaps trade a position in the underlying for a futures position.
- **Flex Options**: Flex Options are only available on LIFFE. FLEX orders are essentially FTSE 100 options. However, an expiration day and exercise price can be specified. The trade submission and authorization is semi automated, requiring manual intervention by an exchange official.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Using the Market Depth Feature

The Depth layout option in the Market Grid context menu shows the aggregate market depth data for all orders at the same price level. You can configure the number of additional rows the Depth layout provides using the **Market Depth Increment** field in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu. Not all exchanges provide market depth data.



This layout can be used in tandem with the Implieds pricing feature. Refer to **Setting Implieds** on page 225.

Follow these procedures to use the Market Depth feature:

- Enabling the Market Depth feature
- Viewing the Market Depth information

To enable the Market Depth feature:

1. In the Market Grid, right-click a cell to access the context menu and click **Layouts**.
2. Click **Depth** to enable the feature.

   The icon displays in the Market Grid.

You successfully enabled the Market Depth feature.

To view the Market Depth information:

1. Click the icon after each contract identifier to display the Depth feature.

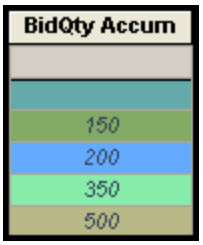
   Notes: When open, the aggregate best prices display. Also:
   - Working buy and sell quantities at each level reflect activity for all traders with the same Group ID.
   - You can customize the color-coded depth rows in the **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu.
   - Click-trading quantity and offset settings apply.

2. Click the icon to hide the Depth feature.

You successfully viewed the Market Depth information.

Adding Price Averages and Accumulations to the Market Grid

Use the **Accumulation** columns to take all the outstanding bids/offers at the specified price or better.



▶ **To add Bid and Ask Price Averages and Accumulations to the Market Grid:**

1. Right-click on the Market Grid to access the context menu.

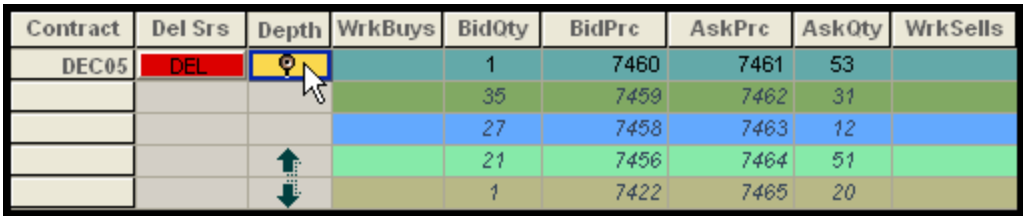
   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Click **Show/Hide columns**, and select the **BidQty Accum**, **BidPrc Avg**, **AskPrc Avg**, and **AskQty Accum** columns to display these columns.
3. Save your workspace with Depth hidden to retain customized settings.

You successfully added Bid and Ask price averages and accumulations to the Market Grid.

Market Depth Color Coding

For exchanges that support market depth, X_TRADER provides a coloring scheme that follows NASDAQ Level II coloring conventions. All orders with the same price level are grouped with the same background color.



This feature contains the following characteristics:

- Columns that display color when market depth is enabled include the **Bid Mbr/Ask Mbr**, **Bid/Ask Quantity**, and **Bid/Ask Price** columns.
- Colors can be displayed for the aggregate market depth views.
- Display colors for the background and foreground text can be set using the **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu.

▶ **To enable the Market Depth color scheme:**

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Trading** tab.
3. Click to select the **Use Market Depth Coloring** box to enable market depth color coding.

You successfully enabled the Market Depth color scheme.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Managing Links to Excel

You can create one or more links between the Market Grid and Excel spreadsheet. You can

- Link the X_TRADER quoting tool to an Excel worksheet to calculate quotes using proprietary pricing models.
- Use Excel to calculate implied prices and quantities.

The response time from Excel is affected by several variables, Including workstation memory, CPU speed, and other applications running on the workstation.

Example: If you meet the minimum hardware requirements for X_TRADER, but are running a complex theoretical quote-generating program for multiple products/strikes, this creates a significant load on your microprocessor(s), which can slow the response time. Consult your System Administrator for assistance.

Creating Links

Follow these procedures to establish links to Excel. You must have X_TRADER and Excel open to perform these actions:

- Creating a link from X_TRADER to an Excel worksheet
- Creating a link from an Excel worksheet to X_TRADER
- Changing the default colors for Excel links in the Market Grid

Note: When you open a workspace that includes links into X_TRADER from a saved Excel file, X_TRADER automatically opens the Excel file. If your workspace contains links from X_TRADER to Excel, the Excel file will not automatically open with the workspace. Once you manually open the Excel file, the links re-establish themselves to the open X_TRADER workspace.

To create a link from X_TRADER to an Excel worksheet:

1. To copy and paste link one block of data, make sure your Market Grid and Excel pricing model columns are in the same order, or repeat the steps below to copy and paste links for each column of data.
2. In the Market Grid, click the top left cell of the desired data and hold the mouse button down while dragging the mouse to the bottom right cell of the desired data.
3. Right-click within the selected area to access the context menu, and click **Copy**.
4. Open your Excel model.
5. Right-click in the cell you want to paste the data and click **Paste Special**.
6. From the **Paste Special** dialog box, select the **Paste Link** option button.

   By default, the data pastes as Unicode Text.
7. Click **OK** to close the dialog box.
8. Run your Excel model.

You successfully created a link from X_TRADER to Excel.

To create a link from an Excel worksheet to X_TRADER:

1. Make sure the Market Grid **Imp** or **Theo** columns are in the same order as your Excel model. Or, you can repeat the steps below to copy and paste links for each column of data.
2. To display these columns, right-click anywhere on the Market Grid to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.
3. Click **Show/Hide columns**.
4. Click to select the **ImpBidPrc**, **ImpBidQty**, **ImpAskPrc**, **ImpAskQty**, **TheoPrc**, **TheoBid**, and **TheoAsk** columns
5. Make sure your Market Grid **Imp** or **Theo** columns are in the same order as your Excel worksheet columns.
6. Select the Excel cells to be copied to X_TRADER.
7. Right-click within the selected area to access the Excel context menu, and click **Copy**.
8. In the Market Grid, right-click the cell to paste the Excel data, and click **Paste Link** from the Market Grid context menu.

   Your Excel data appears in your **Market** window.

You successfully created a link from an Excel worksheet to X_TRADER. By default the Market Grid cells fed from the Excel model are light blue with black text.

To change the default colors for Excel Links in the Market Grid:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Color** tab.
3. Scroll to the General section and click **Excel Link**.
4. In the **Color** section, click a color from the palette.
5. Click **OK** to apply the color and exit the **Properties** dialog box.

You successfully changed the default colors for Excel Links in the Market Grid. Since this is the default setting all new links are identified by this background color.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Generating an RTD Formula

The **RTD** dialog box lets you copy formulas from the Market Grid or Autotrader and paste them for use in Microsoft Excel where they update dynamically. There are several hundred available formulas ranging from the Best Ask Price (ASK) of a contract to accumulated traded contracts at the current last traded price (ACCLTQ). The formulas also exist in Native ($) Decimal (#) and Tick (&) formats.

Notes:

- You must have Microsoft Excel 2002 or later to use formulas generated from the RTD interface.
- The RTD Generator includes the correct contract names for contracts with expiry days.

  Example: BAX Mar09 now appears as BAX 16Mar09.

To establish an RTD link:

1. In the Market Grid or Autotrader, right-click a cell in the row of a contract for which you want to generate a formula.

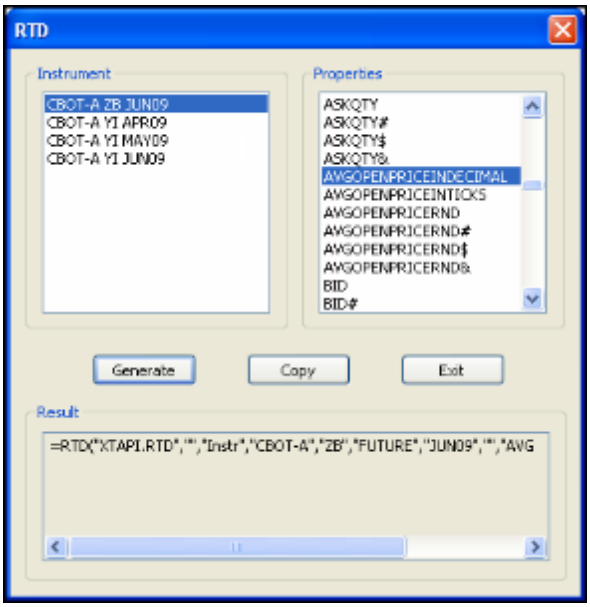
   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. From the Market Grid context menu, highlight **Links** and click **RTD**.

   - or -

   From the Autotrader context menu, click **RTD**.

   The **RTD** dialog box appears.



3. In the **Instrument** section, click to select the contract you want to use.

   Note: You can drag or drop other contracts from the Market Grid or Autotrader into the upper left **Instrument** section.

4. In the **Properties** section, click to select a property whose formula you want to paste in Excel.

Note: Press and hold the `Ctrl` key to select multiple properties

5. Click **Generate**.

   In the **Results** box, the formula(s) appears. If multiple properties were selected, the formulas are in the same order as the properties.
6. Click **Copy**.
7. Navigate to Excel and paste the formula(s).
8. In the **RTD** dialog box, click **Exit**.

You successfully used the RTD interface.

Viewing your Estimated Position In Queue

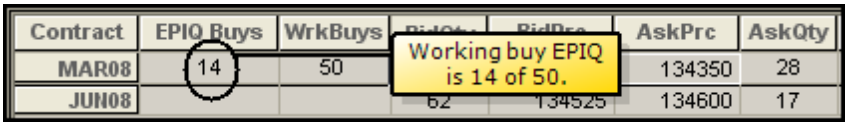
You can view your Estimated Position in Queue (EPIQ) in MD Trader and the Market Grid. EPIQ estimates how many contracts are in front of your order at any given price.

- If your EPIQ is 10, there are approximately 10 contracts ahead of your order.
- If 3 contracts trade, your EPIQ changes to 7.
- If your EPIQ is 0, your order should be the next to fill.

Note: EPIQ is not sent from the exchanges. X_TRADER calculates an estimated EPIQ based on quantity of trades occurring in front of the order, and does not account for canceled orders or pro-rata allocations.

Market Grid

In the Market Grid, the EPIQ columns are hidden by default. When shown, **EPIQ Buys** appears next to **BidQty**, and **EPIQ Sells** appears next to **AskQty**.



To display the EPIQ columns:

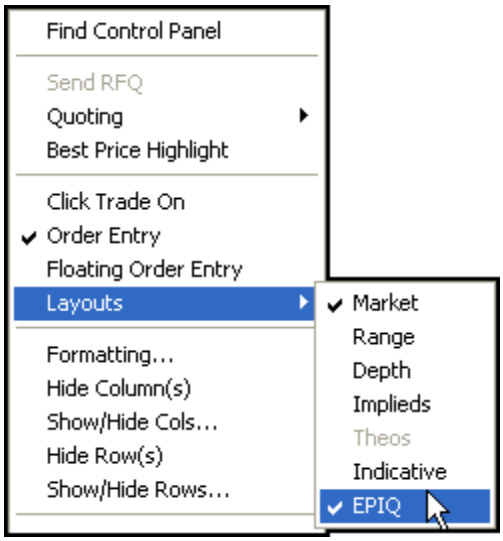
1. Right-click the Market Grid.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.
2. From the context menu, click **Show/Hide columns** and select them.

   - or -

   Hover over **Layouts** and click **EPIQ**.

You successfully displayed the **EPIQ** columns in the Market Grid.

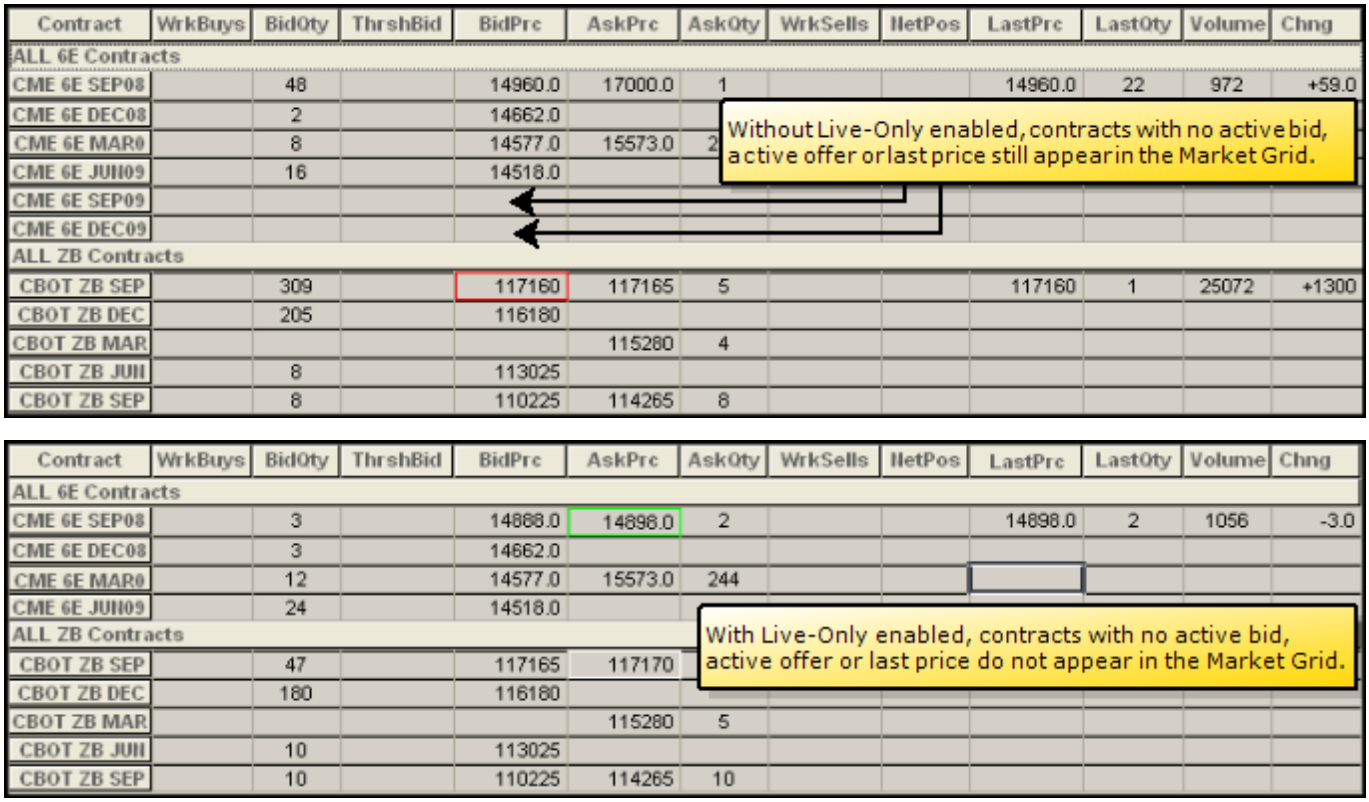


Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Viewing Live-Only Contracts

The **Live-Only Mode** option on the Market Grid context menu lets you show only contracts that currently have an active bid, active offer or last price.

In addition, you can **Pin Rows**, which always leaves specified contracts showing even if they do not have an active bid, active offer or last price.



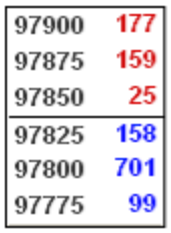
▶ To view Live-Only contracts:

1. Right-click the Market Grid.
2. Highlight **Live-Only Mode** and click **Live Only**.

You successfully viewed Live-Only contracts.

Floating Depth Window

The Floating Depth Window is a popup window which appears in the Market Grid or Spread Matrix, letting you trade from a contract's depth quickly.



Floating Depth Window

The Floating Depth Window:

- Provides three levels of merged aggregate depth for both bids and offers.
- Supports both implied prices and synthetic orders.

Follow these procedures to use the Floating Depth Window:

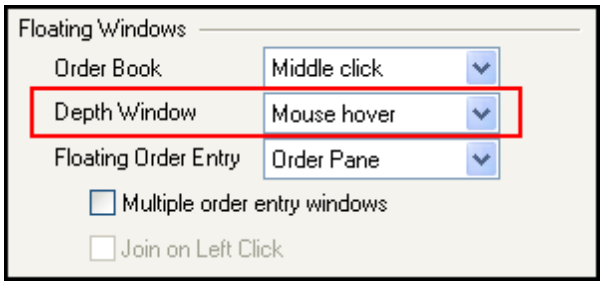
- Setting up the Floating Depth Window
- Trading with the Floating Depth Window

To set up the Floating Depth Window:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. On the **Trading** tab, in the **Floating Windows** section, choose how you want to launch the **Depth Window**.

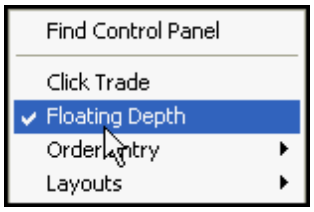
   Your options are:

   - <Disabled>
   - Middle click
   - Mouse hover

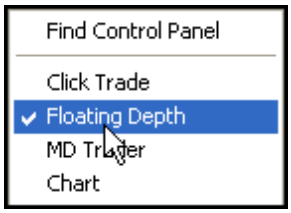
   

   Note: Your Floating Depth Window launch method must be different from your Floating Order Book launch method.

3. Click **OK**.
4. In the Market Grid and Spread Matrix windows, right-click to access the context menu.



Market Grid context menu



Spread Matrix context menu

5. Click to enable **Floating Depth**.

   A checkmark indicates Floating Depth is enabled.

You successfully set up the Floating Depth Window.

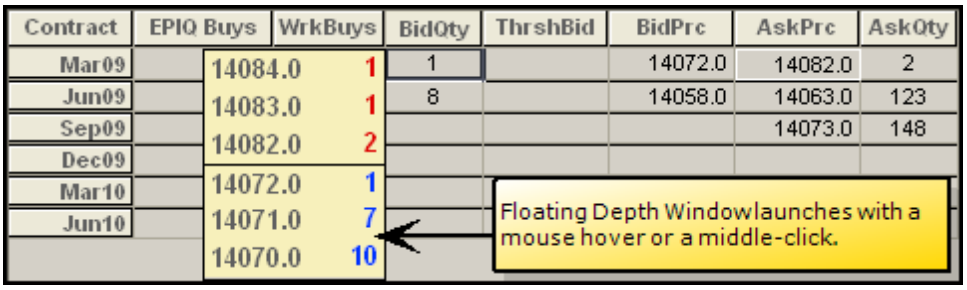
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To trade with the Floating Depth Window:

1. In the Market Grid or Spread Matrix window, put your cursor over a price or quantity field for a contract you want to trade.

   Note: These cells include: BidQty, BidPrc, AskPrc, AskQty, LastPrc, LastQty, ImpBidQty, ImpBidPrc, ImpAskPrc, ImpAskQty.

2. Launch the Floating Depth Window according to the property you set in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.



3. Click the row at the price you want to trade.

   Your Order Entry window seeds with the contract and price you clicked.

4. Adjust your quantity.
5. Adjust your Time in Force options.
6. Click **Buy** or **Sell** to trade.

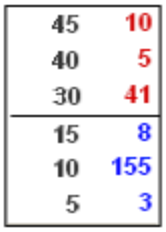
You successfully traded with the Floating Depth Window.

Floating Depth Window Examples

The Floating Depth Window will not launch if:

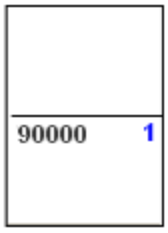
- There is no depth available.
- You try to launch it from a non-tradable contract.

The Floating Depth Window consolidates price rows to display the three best available bids and offers.



FDW 3 best bids and offers

Blank lines only appear if there are less than three levels of depth available to trade.



FDW blank lines

Note: The Floating Depth Window is not compatible with BrokerTec.

Trading with the Order Bar

You can set the **Order Bar** as your primary method for sending orders to the market. As a Floating Order Entry, the **Order Bar** works in direct conjunction with the Market Grid, Order Book, Autotrader, Spread Matrix, and Quote Board. To use the **Order Bar**, you must enable it as your Floating Order Entry, and enable the **Floating Order Entry** option in the functional window.

The Buy Order Bar

The Sell Order Bar

Order Bar Features

The **Order Bar** has the following features:

- **Enable the mouse for quick-click trading**: One advantage to the **Order Bar** is the ability to quick click an order into the market. You click the quantity and the cursor automatically moves to the **Buy** or **Sell** button. To use this feature, you must enable the **Auto Mouse Move** property.
- **Use hotkeys to make trades**: Another advantage to the **Order Bar** is its easy interaction with the keyboard. Use the default hotkeys or customize them to create your own.

Order Bar Procedures

Follow these procedures to use the **Order Bar**:

- Enabling the **Order Bar**
- Quick-click Trading
- Setting an order confirmation

▶ **To enable the Order Bar:**

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. On the **Trading** tab, in the **Floating Order Entry** property, click to select **Order Bar**.
3. Right-click the Market Grid, Order Book, Autotrader, Spread Matrix, or Quote Board and click to select **Floating Order Entry**.

   You can now call the **Order Bar** using the mouse or keyboard hotkeys.

You successfully enabled the **Order Bar**.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To quick-click trade:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Order Entry** tab.
3. Click to select the **Auto Mouse Move** property.
4. Click **OK**.
5. From the Market Grid, call the Buy Order Bar or Sell Order Bar using the following:

   Note: If click-trading is also enabled, the click-trading right mouse actions take precedence. (Disable click-trading using the Market Grid context menu.)

When enabled	To Buy	To Sell
Left-click	**Bid Prc** or **BidQty**	**AskPrc** or **AskQty**
Right-click	**AskPrc** or **AskQty**	**Bid Prc** or **BidQty**
The mouse immediately moves to the **Buy** or **Sell** button and, depending on what you click, either the price or the quantity is highlighted.		

6. Click the **Buy** or **Sell** button to place an order at the given price with the given quantity.

   - or -

   Type over the highlighted values, and adjust the parameters of the order before clicking the **Buy** or **Sell** button.

You successfully quick-click traded.

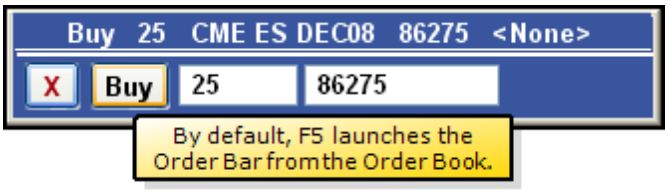
To set an order confirmation:

Click the **Lock** checkbox at the end of the **Order Bar** to enable a confirmation screen before orders are sent to the market.

You successfully set an order confirmation.

Modifying an Order with the Order Bar

You can enable the **Floating Order Entry** on the context menu, and use the Floating Order Entry to cancel/replace an order. When the **Floating Order Entry** window is the Order Bar, you can use the keyboard to launch the Order Bar and modify your order.



To modify an order with the Order Bar:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. On the **Trading** tab, in the **Floating Order Entry** property, click to select **Order Bar**.
3. Right-click the Order Book and click to select **Floating Order Entry**.
   You can now call the **Order Bar** using the mouse or keyboard hotkeys.
4. Navigate to the order you want to modify and press `F5`.
   Note: You can alter the hotkey in the **Hotkey** tab on the **Properties** menu.
5. Change the quantity or price.
6. Click **Buy** or **Sell** to send the order.

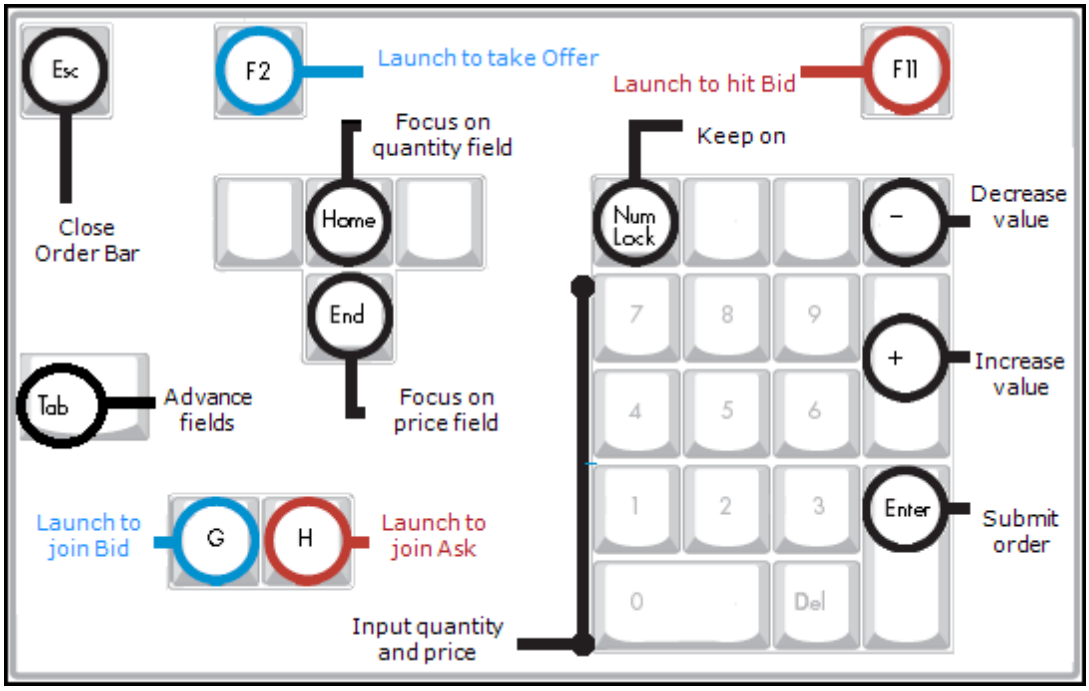
You successfully modified an order with the Order Bar.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Keyboard Trading with the Order Bar

You can use the keyboard to interact easily with the **Order Bar**. Use the default hotkeys or customize them to create your own.

TT Default Map



Description

Hotkey	Command	Description
G	Launch to join bid	Launch Order Bar as a Buy seeded with and focused on the Bid price.
F2	Launch to take offer	Launch Order Bar as a Buy seeded with and focused on the Ask price.
Home	Focus on quantity	Lets you edit the quantity field.
End	Focus on price	Lets you edit the price field.
Tab	Advance fields	Advance the cursor to the next field for editing.
Enter	Submit order	Submit the order as defined and close the Order Bar.
Esc	Close Order Bar	Close the Order Bar window.
Num Lock	Keep on	Lets you use the keypad to type numbers.
-	Decrease value	Decreases the numeric value of the field you are editing.
+	Increase value	Increases the numeric value of the field you are editing.
H	Launch to join ask	Launch the Order Bar as a Sell seeded with and focused on the Ask price.
F11	Launch to hit bid	Launch Order Bar as a Sell seeded with and focused on the Bid price.

Keyboard Trading Procedures

Follow these procedures to manage keyboard trading with the **Order Bar**:

- Trading using hotkeys
- Assigning hotkeys to the Order Bar

To trade using hotkeys:

1. Call the **Buy Order Bar** or **Sell Order Bar** using your specified keys.
2. Input the quantity and price.
3. Press TAB to advance fields, SHIFT+TAB to go back a field.
4. Press ENTER to submit the order.

You successfully traded using hotkeys.

To assign hotkeys to the Order Bar:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Hotkeys** tab.
3. In the **Keyboard Layout** field, click to select **Custom**.
4. In the **Component** column, click **Order Bar**.
5. In the **Command** column, click the command for which you want to assign a hotkey.
6. Click in the **Press new shortcut key** field.
7. Press the key or keys you want to represent that command.

   Note: Some keys cannot be used as hotkeys. (E.g., Delete, Backspace, Tab...and others.)
8. Click the **Assign** button.

You successfully assigned hotkeys to the Order Bar.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Cross Trades Overview

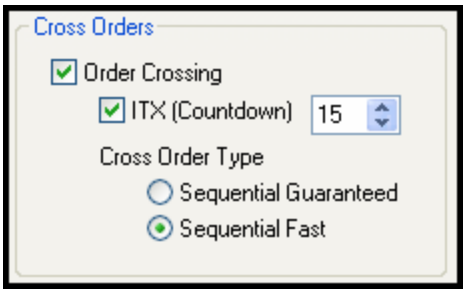
The cross trading feature lets you cross a prearranged order either with a party within the trading firm itself or with a specified party outside the firm.

Follow these procedures to cross trade:

- Enabling Cross Trading
- Executing a Cross/Cross With order

To enable Cross Trading:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Order Entry** tab.
3. In the **Cross Orders** section, click **Order Crossing**.



4. If you want to send (or are required to send by the exchange) an Intention to Cross notification, click the **ITX (Countdown)** field so it is marked and set the number of seconds to countdown.

Note: This timer is informational and does not trigger a cross order. Exchanges that do not support this announcement reject the ITX when it is sent.

5. In the **Cross Order Type** field, click one of these options:
   - **Sequential Fast**: Default. Both orders (buy and sell) immediately submit, one after the other. On occasion, heavy market conditions can lead to routing the orders through different routers. As a result, the wrong leg might arrive at the exchange host first.
   - **Sequential Guaranteed**: Waits for an acknowledgement of the first order from the exchange before sending the second order. Due to the delay, it is possible for a third party to take the offer or bid before both sides are matched.

   In both cases, if the first side fills (partially or completely), the second side of the cross order still submits.
6. Click **OK**.

You successfully enabled Cross Trading.

▶ **To execute a cross or cross with trade:**

Note: Remember that you must have previously set up customer profiles for each client you wish to conduct cross trades with.

1. In the **Order Entry** pane, click the **Cross** tab.

   Note: If your **Order Entry** pane does not display the **Cross** tab, see the preceding procedure.

2. Click **Cross** or **Cross w/**.
3. If you selected **Cross**, click the buyer or seller from the list boxes.

   If you selected **Cross w/**, click to select your **Opp. Side**.

4. In the Market Grid, select a contract.
5. Enter the quantity and price in the appropriate fields.
6. If you want to send (or are required to send by the exchange) an Intention to Cross notification, click the **ITX** button.

   The timer counts down.

7. To execute a cross trade, click **Buy First** or **Sell First**.

   - or -

   To execute a cross-with trade, click **Crs Buy** or **Crs Sell**.

You successfully executed a cross or cross with trade.

Cross and Cross With Trades

Use Cross trades in exchanges other than LIFFE CONNECT to indicate a specific party to trade with. Cross trades are always GTD orders. The following controls are added or deleted after you click **Cross** in the **Order Entry** pane.

Use Cross With trades for LIFFE CONNECT cross trades to indicate a specific counter party by entering the Trader ID. Support of this feature is exchange-specific. If the exchange does not support it, the message *Order Format Invalid* appears in the **Audit Trail** window.

Note: Remember that you must have previously set up customer profiles for each client you wish to conduct cross trades with.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Cross Order Execution and CBOT

Because of a rule implemented by CBOT, cross orders experience a time delay. The X_TRADER system complies with the time delay rule and manages your cross orders so exchanges accepted them.

When you execute your cross trade, you send both orders at the same time. However, the X_TRADER gateway system holds the second leg of your cross order and adheres to the following rules so your order is not rejected:

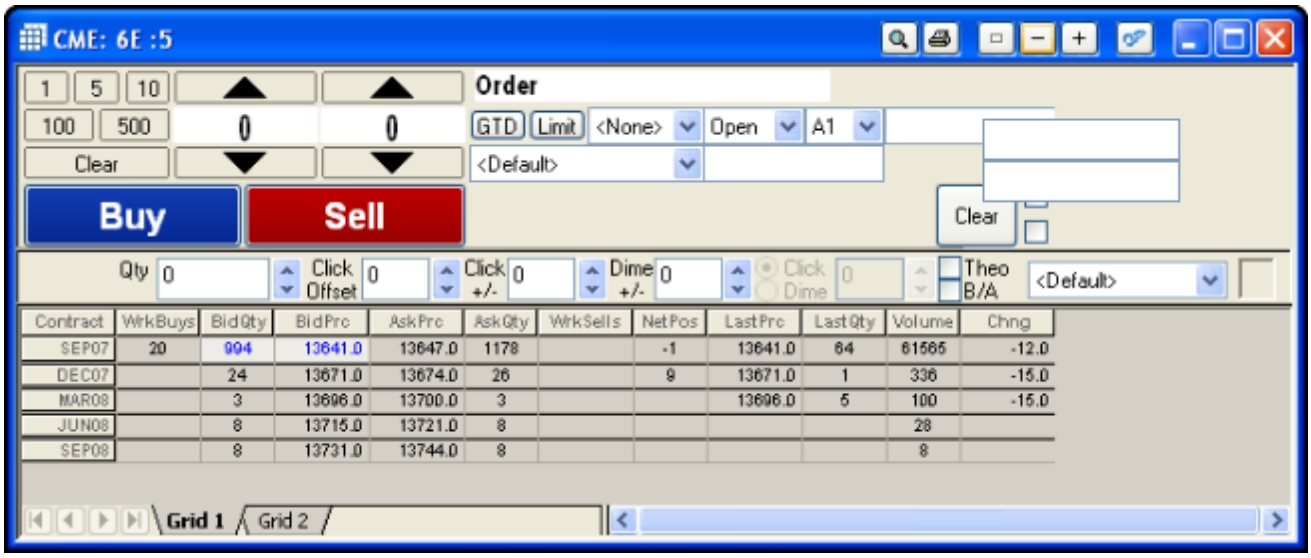
- 5 seconds between the legs for futures contracts and their associated spread contracts.
- 15 seconds between the legs for options contracts and their associated spread contracts.

Notes:

- If the first leg only partially fills, the second leg submits with the original quantity. No adjustments are made to the second leg.
- If the first leg completely fills, the second leg still goes to the exchange.
- The X_TRADER Gateway rejects sequential fast cross orders.

Click Trading Overview

Click Trading lets you right-click the bid price to send a limit sell order or right-click the ask price to send a limit buy order.



Follow these procedures to use Click Trading:

- Enabling/Disabling Click Trading
- Setting Default Properties in Click Trading
- Using Click Trading

Notes:

- When you enable Click Trading, all safety measures are removed.
- The Lock and Hold features are not available when Click Trading.

Enabling/Disabling Click Trading

To enable or disable click trading:

1. Right-click anywhere in the Market Grid to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Click the **Click Trade On** option to enable or disable click trading.

   A checkmark indicates you enabled the feature and the **Click Trading** pane opens above the Market Grid.

You successfully turned click trading on or off.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Setting Default Properties for Click Trading

Default properties control the mouse settings and other restrictions while Click Trading. Maintain these features in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.

To set the properties for click trading:

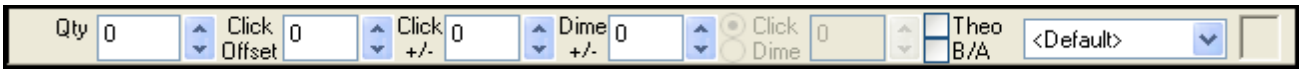
1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. In the **Properties** dialog box, click the **Trading** tab.
3. In the **Mouse Type** section, click the kind of mouse you use.

   Note: A three-button mouse is the default setting and is ideal for sending all types of Click Trading orders to market in the quickest manner possible.
4. In the **Dime** field, click GTD or IOC.

   Note: Any GTD orders still working at the end of your trading session are automatically deleted. IOC orders allow a partial fill before the balance is canceled.
5. In the **Click** field, click GTC or IOC.
6. To enable click trading on FFNet/NetPos, click to select the **Enable on FFNet/NetPos** checkbox.
7. Click **OK** to exit the **Properties** dialog box and save the selected options.

You successfully set the properties for click trading.

Using Click Trading in the Market Grid



To use click trading in the Market Grid:

Note: When you enable Click Trading, all safety measures are removed.

1. Enable Click Trading.
2. Enter the required quantities and information from the table below:

Field	Description
Qty	Enter your click trading order quantity.
Click Offset	Field, based on the Last Traded Price, protects you from sending an order too far away from the last traded price Enter the maximum number of ticks the price can move from the last traded price. **Note**: **Click Offset** and **Click** +/- are mutually exclusive.
Click +/- (Plus/Minus)	Field, based on the current inside market, lets you chase a fast moving market. Enter the maximum number of ticks the price can move from the inside market price. **Example**: If the **Click** +/- value is two ticks where the tick value for the product is .01 and bid price is 115.99, the worst price accepted is 115.97. If a better price is available, the order fills (e.g., 115.98 or 115.99). **Note**: This example assumes theoretical prices are not used.

Field	Description
Dime +/-	When you dime the market, the action implies order entry, not necessarily order execution. This feature lets you enter orders off the market without using the **Price** and **Quantity** fields in the **Order Entry** pane. The value you enter defines at what price, based on the current inside market, the order is entered. The feature is limited to values up to 99. **Example**: If you enter 1 and middle-click the mouse with the cursor on the current market bid, an order 1 tick better than the prevailing prices is entered. Conversely, if you enter a –1, an order 1 tick worse is entered.
Click vs. Dime options	Toggle between **Click** and **Dime** to define what occurs when you right-click: • Execute a trade (Click) • Enter an order (Dime) The **Click** and **Dime** buttons enable when you select a two-button mouse from the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.
Theo & B/A (Bid/Ask)	Lets you evaluate opportunities in the market. • Enable **Theo** to use theoreticals pasted in the **TheoPrc** column. • Enable **B/A** to use theoreticals pasted in the **TheoBid** or **TheoAsk** columns.
Account (Default)	Refers to the accounts set up in the **Customer Defaults** dialog box.
A1	Displays account code.

3. To send a trade to market using Click Trading:
   - Right-click the bid price to send a limit sell order.
   - Right-click the ask price to send a limit buy order.

You successfully used the click trading feature in the Market Grid.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Eurex Block Order Overview

The Eurex Block Order feature in X_TRADER provides a method to enter a buy and acknowledge a purchase of a large block trade into the Eurex exchange. Block orders are defined as those product trades which involve high-volume and whose traded price are separately agreed to by both parties outside of the normal exchange trading methods.

Block trade limits (minimum threshold that defines what constitutes a block trade for any given product) are defined by the exchange and vary depending on the product. In all cases, a private agreement on price and number of products to be traded exists, and must be reported to the exchange.

Buyers and Sellers have distinct roles in Eurex block trading:

- **Buyers**: Buyers initiate a block trade. They can also add, modify, or delete the trade.
- **Sellers**: Sellers can only receive and accept a block trade.

Follow these procedures to manage Eurex Block Orders:

- Submitting a Eurex block order (buy side)
- Modifying a Eurex block order trade
- Accepting a Eurex block order (sell side)
- Making a Block or Volatility Order Inquiry

Submitting a Eurex Block Order (Buy Side)

This procedure assumes both parties involved in a block trade are in communication with each other. Only the buyer can enter a block trade using the following procedure.

Note: Although block trading is defined as a trade between two parties outside of the normal exchange market, the Eurex exchange is the third party involved. Eurex checks the trade's quantity, price, and other information, before determining approval. After the exchange reviews the trade the Seller can complete their side of the transaction.

To enter a block trade into the Eurex exchange (Buyer initiated):

1. In the Market Grid, select the product you want to buy.
2. In the **Restriction** field, click **Block**.

   The **Sell** button grays out.
3. Type the five-letter member ID of the counterparty in the **Counterparty Information** field.
4. Click to select an account from the drop down list.

   You cannot use the default account.
5. Ensure your position is **Open**.
6. Type the amount to be traded and price for the whole trade.

   Note: The minimum volume for block trades varies according to product.
7. Click **Buy** to initiate the trade.

   The above procedure results in the following actions:
   - The block trade moves to the Order Book and gets a unique identifying number. The status is *Waiting for Approval.*
   - A message appears in the Audit Trail indicating the trade was sent to the exchange.

You successfully entered a block trade into the Eurex exchange.

Modifying a Eurex Block Order Trade

Only the Buyer can modify a block trade order on the Eurex exchange. A modification to a block trade (change or price or quantity, new counterparty, etc.) is identical to any other order modification and is done from the **Order Book** window.

Notes:
- Block trades becomes inactive if the seller does not approve it within 30 minutes of entry (or its last modification).
- The buyer can reactivate the transaction during the current trading day by retrieving and resubmitting it.
- Once the seller has accepted the transaction, the buyer cannot modify or cancel the transaction without contacting the exchange.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Accepting a Eurex Block or Volatility Order (Sell Side)

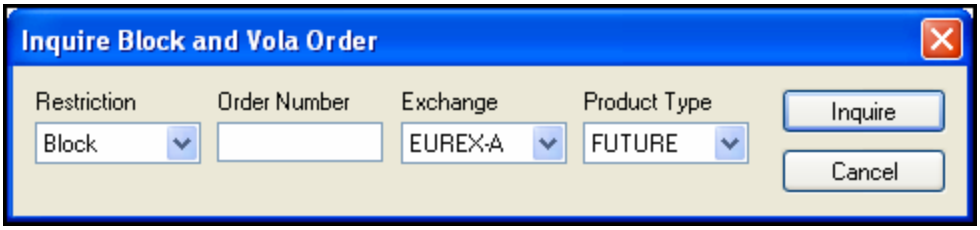
Sellers should be in communication with the Buyers of the block trade and know when the trade initiates. Information only available to the buy side of the trade is required to complete the block trading process.

Note: Although block trading is defined as a trade between two parties outside of the normal exchange market, the Eurex exchange is the third party involved. Eurex checks the trade's quantity, price, and other information, before determining approval. After the exchange reviews the trade the Seller can complete their side of the transaction.

To accept a block trade on Eurex (Seller acceptance):

1. With X_TRADER open and logged into the Eurex exchange, open the Order Book.
2. Right-click in the Order Book to access the context menu and click **Inquire Block and Vola Order**.

   The **Inquire Block and Vola Order** dialog box appears.



3. In the **Restriction** field, click whether the order is a Block order or a Volatility order.
4. In the **Order Number** field, type the exchange generated order number of the trade initiated by the buyer.

   Note: This information must be obtained from the Buyer.
5. In the **Exchange** field, click the Eurex exchange on which the order was submitted.
6. In the **Product Type** field, click the order type.
7. Click **Inquire**.

   In the Order Book, the **Submit** button becomes the **Accept** button.
8. Click to select the sell side of the order in the bottom of the Order Book, and re-select your customer account in the top of the Order Book.
9. Click **Accept**.

   The Order Book and **Fill** window indicate the accepted trade information.

You successfully accepted a block trade entered into the Eurex exchange.

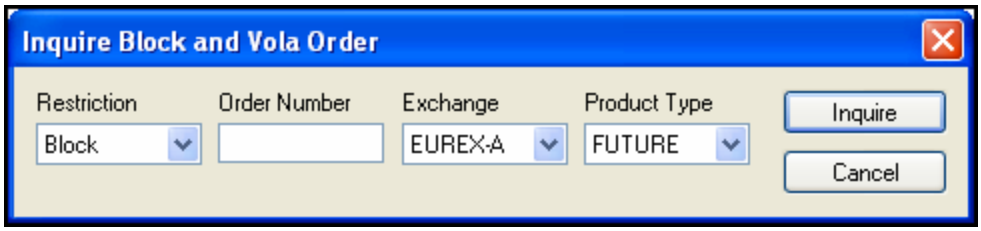
Making a Block or Volatility Order Inquiry

Use the **Inquire Block Order** dialog box to receive and validate orders for the sell side of a Eurex block trade.

To make a block or volatility order inquiry:

1. With X_TRADER open and logged into the Eurex exchange, open the Order Book.
2. Right-click in the Order Book to access the context menu and click **Inquire Block and Vola Order**.

   The **Inquire Block and Vola Order** dialog box appears.



3. In the **Restriction** field, click whether the order is a Block order or a Volatility order.
4. In the **Order Number** field, type the exchange generated order number of the trade initiated by the buyer.

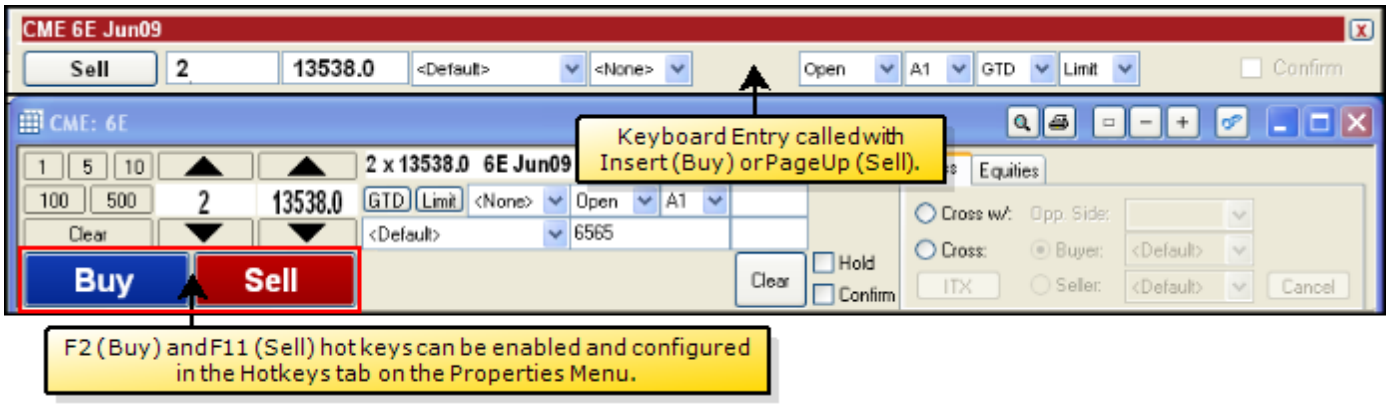
   Note: This information must be obtained from the Buyer.
5. In the **Exchange** field, click the Eurex exchange on which the order was submitted.
6. In the **Product Type** field, click whether the order type.
7. Click **Inquire**.

You successfully made a block or volatility order inquiry.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Entering Orders Using the Keyboard

If you prefer, you can trade with the keyboard using either the Keyboard Entry or the Buy and Sell hotkeys.



Keyboard Entry

Keyboard entry adds onto the top of the **Market** window when called.

▶ **To open the Keyboard Entry and send an order to market:**

1. Click any Market Grid cell of the product you wish to trade.
2. Press the `Insert` (Buy order) or `PageUp` (Sell order) key.

   The **Keyboard Entry** window appears at the top of the **Order Entry** pane.
3. In the first field, type the quantity to buy or sell.

   Note: `Tab` moves the cursor left to right. `Shift+Tab` moves the cursor right to left.
4. In the second field, type the price to buy or sell at.
5. Click the **down arrow** and select **Open** or **Close**.
6. Complete the appropriate order data in the remaining fields.
7. After entering the order data, press `ENTER` to review the order.
8. Press `ENTER` a second time to send the order to market.

   Note: To cancel the order, prior to sending the order to market, press `ESC` to close the **Keyboard Entry** window.

You successfully opened the **Keyboard Entry** window.

Buy and Sell Hotkeys

Enable and configure hotkeys on the **Properties** menu.

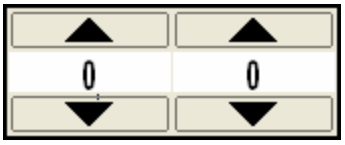
To enable and configure Buy and Sell hotkeys:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Hotkeys** tab.
3. In the **Keyboard Layout** field, click to select **Custom**.
4. In the **Component** column, click **Order Pane**.
5. In the **Command** column, click the command for which you want to assign a hotkey.
6. Click in the **Press new shortcut key** field.
7. Press the key or keys you want to represent that command.

   Note: Some keys cannot be used as hotkeys. (E.g., `Delete`, `Backspace`, `Tab`...and others.)
8. Click the **Assign** button.

You successfully assigned hotkeys to the Order Bar.

Controlling Quantity or Price Using the Keyboard



The mouse or the spin buttons may be used to adjust the quantity or price. However, you may also use the keyboard to manually enter a quantity or price.

To enter a quantity or price using the keyboard:

1. Click to select a Market Grid cell and press the `Insert` (Buy order) or `PageUp` (Sell order) key.

   - or -

   If the Floating Order Entry window is enabled, click to select a Market Grid row and press the `Insert` (Buy order) or `PageUp` (Sell order) key.
2. Press `TAB` or `SHIFT+TAB` to move to the **quantity** or **price** text box.(Shown above)
3. Use the keyboard to enter a value.
4. Press `F2` to send a Buy order.

   - or -

   Press `F11` to submit a Sell order.

   Note: Enable and configure the hotkeys in the **HotKeys** tab on the **Properties** menu.

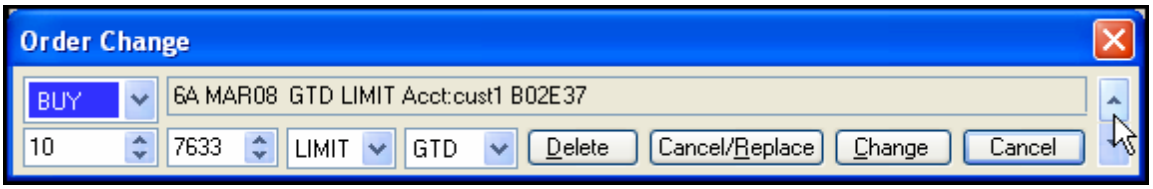
You successfully entered a quantity using the keyboard.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Order Change Dialog Box Overview

Hold down the CTRL key and click in a cell where a working order exists to access the **Order Change** dialog box from the following X_TRADER windows:

- Market Grid
- Spread Matrix
- Butterfly Condor Matrix



You can perform other transactions while keeping the **Order Change** dialog box open. When you open an **Order Change** dialog box, it displays on top of the parent window and can be moved. The dialog box and its order save with your workspace.

Note: You may have only one **Order Change** dialog box open at a time.

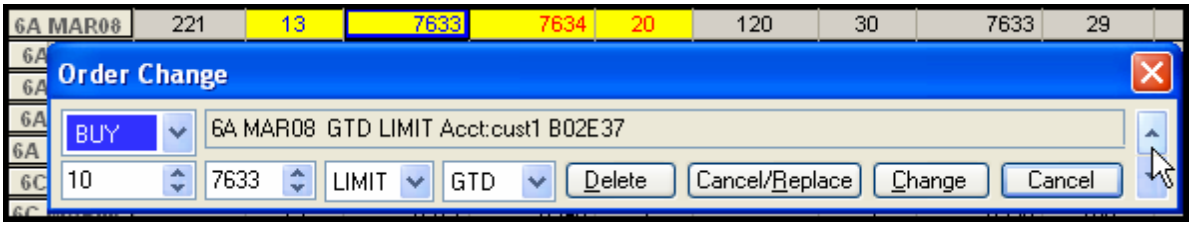
Using the Order Change Dialog Box

The **Order Change** dialog box lets you delete, cancel/replace or change a working order without accessing the Order Book.

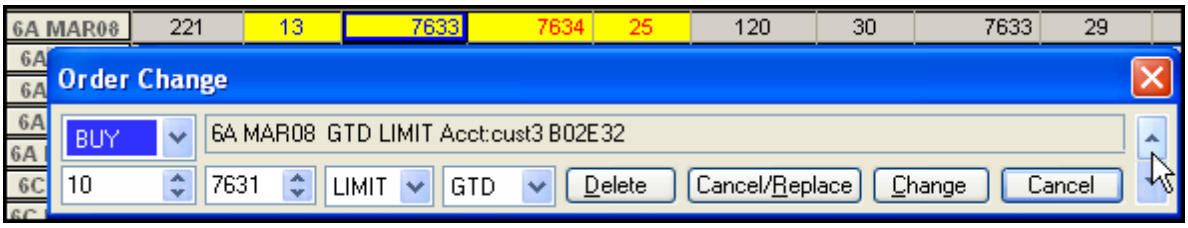
To use the Order Change dialog box:

1. Hold down the Ctrl key and click in a cell where a working order exists.

   The **Order Change** dialog box appears, showing the order closest to the market.



2. Use the Page Up or Page Down arrows to scroll through the orders and select the working order you want to change.



3. Make any changes to the order and click the appropriate button: **Delete**, **Cancel/ Replace**, **Change**, or **Cancel**.

Note: You cannot change the Limit/Market or order type (i.e., GTD) fields.

You successfully used the **Order Change** dialog box.

Setting Implieds

Implied prices and quantities derive from direct orders in a combination of outright contracts and spreads/strategies. Implied pricing evolved at exchanges that trade contracts, spreads and strategies involving different combinations of the contract months.

Example: A bid in one contract month and an offer in a second contract month combine to imply a bid in the spread between the two months.

By calculating and displaying implied prices and quantities, exchanges found they could improve the best Bid/Ask price or add liquidity to certain contracts or strategies.

Note: Implied data does not display for Condor Matrices because LIFFE does not match implieds from Condor Matrices.

To set implieds:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. On the **Trading** tab, click to select the options you want:
   - **Include Implieds in Market columns and in Depth**: Exchange calculated implieds.
   - **Calculate Implieds instead of Exchange Implieds**: X_TRADER calculated implieds.
3. Click **OK**.

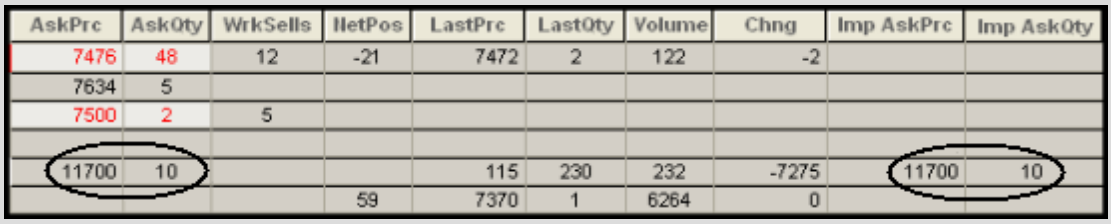
You successfully set implieds.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Viewing Implieds

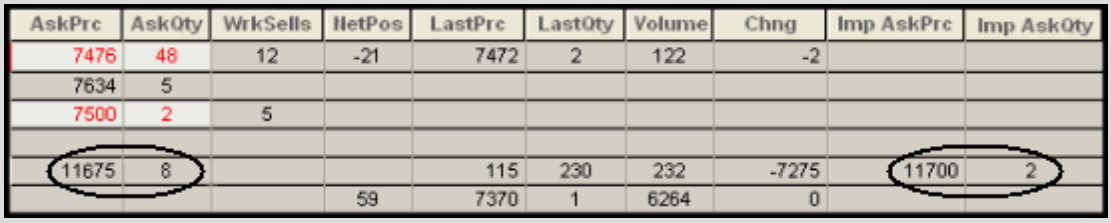
The **Include Implieds in Market columns and in Depth** property on the **Trading** tab, lets you determine whether or not implied prices and quantities appear in the same columns as outright prices and quantities.

Example 1: When this property is enabled, the **Imp AskPrc** and **Imp AskQty** columns reflect the same data in the **AskPrc** and **AskQty** columns.



AskPrc	AskQty	WrkSells	NetPos	LastPrc	LastQty	Volume	Chng	Imp AskPrc	Imp AskQty
7476	48	12	-21	7472	2	122	-2		
7634	5								
7500	2	5							
11700	10			115	230	232	-7275	11700	10
			59	7370	1	6264	0		

Example 2: When this property is disabled, the prices and quantities report separately in their respective columns. Assuming two of the total ask quantities are implieds, separating implieds from outrights appear like this.



AskPrc	AskQty	WrkSells	NetPos	LastPrc	LastQty	Volume	Chng	Imp AskPrc	Imp AskQty
7476	48	12	-21	7472	2	122	-2		
7634	5								
7500	2	5							
11675	8			115	230	232	-7275	11700	2
			59	7370	1	6264	0		

Note: Implied prices only appear in the market when they are equal to or better than the outright prices.

Implied In

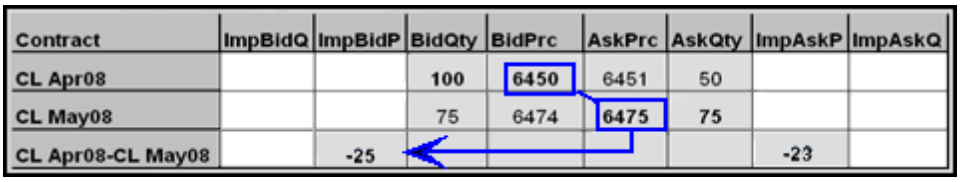
An Implied in is a spread price generated by the differential of two contracts. The natural curve of futures contracts dictates deferred contracts will be priced higher than near contracts. Therefore, spread prices are often negative prices.

Formula:

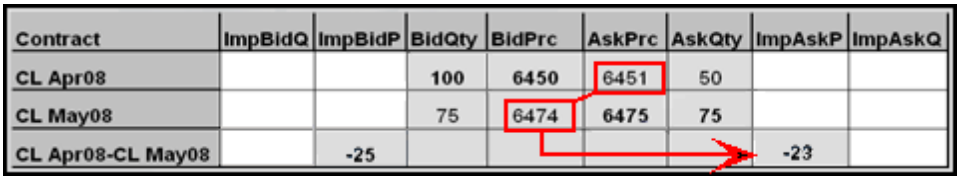
- Bid spread price for Spread AB = (Bid Price Leg A) – (Ask Price Leg B)
- Ask spread price for Spread AB = (Ask Price Leg A) – (Bid Price Leg B)

In the examples below, the spread prices are as follows:

- Bid spread price for Spread AB = (6450) - (6475) = -25.
- Ask spread price for Spread AB =(6451) - (6474) = -23.



Contract	ImpBidQ	ImpBidP	BidQty	BidPrc	AskPrc	AskQty	ImpAskP	ImpAskQ
CL Apr08			100	6450	6451	50		
CL May08			75	6474	6475	75		
CL Apr08-CL May08		-25					-23	



Contract	ImpBidQ	ImpBidP	BidQty	BidPrc	AskPrc	AskQty	ImpAskP	ImpAskQ
CL Apr08			100	6450	6451	50		
CL May08			75	6474	6475	75		
CL Apr08-CL May08		-25					-23	

Implied Out

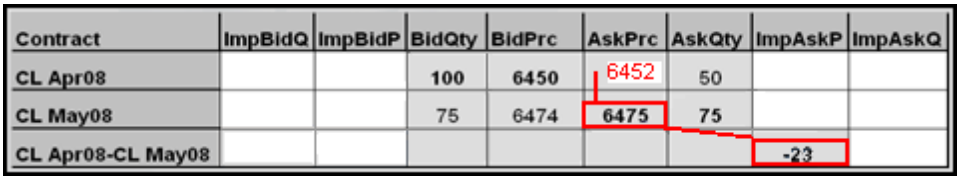
An implied out is a leg price generated by the spread price and one of the legs of the spread. You can imply out a price in the first or second leg.

Formulas:

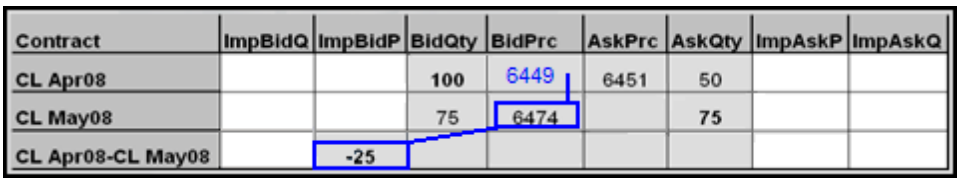
- Bid Price Leg A = (Bid price Spread AB) + (Bid price of leg B)
- Ask Price Leg A = (Ask price Spread AB) + (Ask price of leg B)

In the examples below:

- Bid Price Leg A = (-25) + (6474) = 6449
- Ask Price Leg A = (-23) + (6475) = 6452



Contract	ImpBidQ	ImpBidP	BidQty	BidPrc	AskPrc	AskQty	ImpAskP	ImpAskQ
CL Apr08			100	6450	6452	50		
CL May08			75	6474	6475	75		
CL Apr08-CL May08							-23	



Contract	ImpBidQ	ImpBidP	BidQty	BidPrc	AskPrc	AskQty	ImpAskP	ImpAskQ
CL Apr08			100	6449	6451	50		
CL May08			75	6474		75		
CL Apr08-CL May08		-25						

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Implieds From Implieds

Implieds from implieds (second generation implieds) occur when one of the prices you are using to imply another price is itself an implied price. A first generation implied is composed of only direct prices. A second generation implied requires one first generation implied price and at least one direct price.

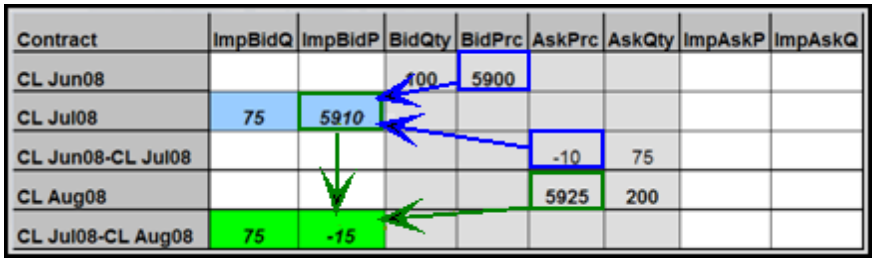
Implied functionality varies by exchange, dissemination rules may be different than matching rules and exchanges may give priority in matching to different generations. These rules continually change based upon market demand.

Formulas:

- Implied Bid Price Leg B = (Bid Price Leg A) - (Ask spread price for Spread AB)
- Implied Bid spread Price for Spread BC = (Imp Bid price Leg B) – (Ask Price Leg C)

In the example below:

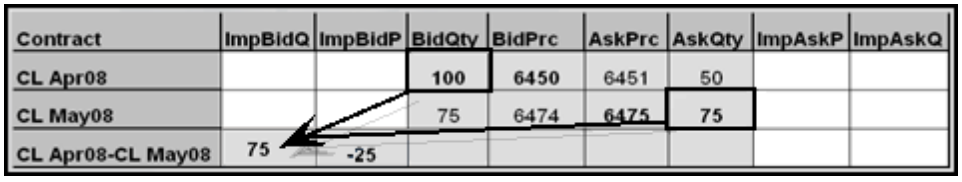
- Implied Bid Price Leg B = (5900) - (-10) = 5910
- Implied Bid spread Price for Spread BC = (5910) - (5925) = -15



Implied Quantities

Implied quantities are typically the minimum quantity shared between two outright leg orders.

In the example below, the implied April/May bid price has a quantity of 75. This is limited by the 75 May Ask quantity.



Quoting Overview

You can generate quotes in X_TRADER through a proprietary theoretical pricing model using spread table(s) and product group(s). You can respond to RFQs manually or enable autoquoting to automatically send a response.

Before you can use the quoting features within X_TRADER, you must perform the three step process to enable quoting.

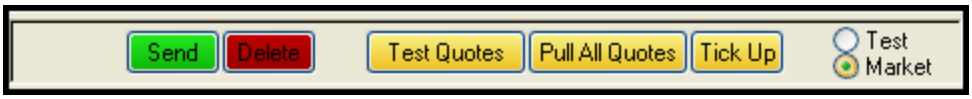
Follow these procedures to manage quoting:

- Enabling Quoting
- Editing, Generating and Sending Quotes
- Tracking Quotes
- Activating or Deactivating a Strike or an Expiration
- Activating or Deactivating multiple Strikes or Expirations
- Deleting Mass or Individual Quotes
- Disabling Quoting

Tip: If a pair of orders working in quoting mode are close enough and the price adjusts down, the orders change without problem in a normal market. If the price adjusts up, the orders can fill against one another. To help prevent this enable the **Avoid orders that cross with each other** property in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu. This should delete one of the orders before they cross.

Quoting Additions to the Market Grid Pane

When you turn on the context menu's **Quoting** option, the quoting bar appears and quoting columns add to your Market Grid.



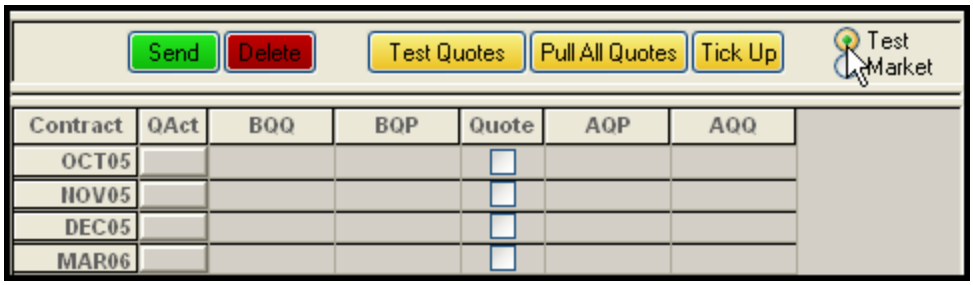
The quoting bar has the following functions:

Field	Description
Send	Sends mass quotes to market for all activated strikes/expirations. You can edit the test quote columns. Manually edit a quote and click **Send** and the information goes in the test quote columns. If you choose not to edit these columns, click **Send** to generate a new quote—that you need to confirm—based on current market conditions.
Delete	Deletes mass quotes sent to market. Test quotes are still retained. Use this button to pull all live quotes. If any unusual occurrence causes your workstation or X_TRADER to unexpectedly shutdown, immediately after restarting click **Delete**.
Test Quotes	Generates test quotes wherever possible.
Pull All Quotes	Pulls all live quotes from the market.
Tick Up	Moves the bid offer up or down by one tick.
Test	Sends test quotes to the market.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

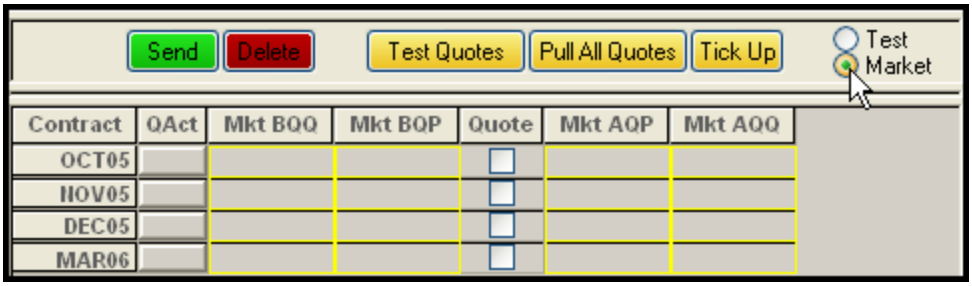
Field	Description
Market	Sends market quotes to the market.

If the quoting bar is in **Test** mode (the default) the additional columns are:



Field	Description
QAct	Sends a quote for a single strike/expiration. If the strike/expiration is activated, a confirmation dialog box appears, and you can edit the quote information or accept the generated quote. Click **Add** to send the quote, **Delete** to delete the quote, or **Cancel** to cancel the action.
BQQ	Bid Quote Quantity (test quote).
BQP	Bid Quote Price (test quote).
Quote	Pulls all live quotes from the market. Indicates the active (checked) or inactive (unchecked) status of the strike/expiration. Check this box to send a quote to market. An unchecked box denotes an inactive strike/expiration and no quote is sent. Deselecting this box deletes a quote from the market if one exists. To select and activate/deactivate strikes/expirations, right-click anywhere in the Quote column to access the context menu. From this menu, click **Select All**, **Calls**, **Puts**, **2-Sided Mkts**, or **Last Prc**. Then click **Activate** or **Deactivate**. All checked boxes in the **Quote** column are active strikes/expirations; all others are deactivated. Refer to **Activating or Deactivating a Strike or an Expiration** on page 234 for more information.
AQP	Ask Quote Price (test quote).
AQQ	Ask Quote Quantity (test quote) The above test quote columns display when you click **Test Quotes** or **Market Quotes**. Market quotes display when you click **Market Quotes** or **Send**. If the Market Quote columns currently display, click **Test Quotes** to automatically change to the Test Quotes environment. When these column headings display, only the test quote environment appears. The quantities always match those set in the product group dialog box after quote generation, although they may change if you manually edit them. When you send mass quotes, the market quote columns (defined below) display. However, sending a single market quote maintains the test quote display, provided that the test quote environment was active when the individual market quote was sent. The cells for the currently sent market quote are blue to let you know that the quote hit the market.

If the quoting bar is in **Market** mode the additional columns are:



Field	Description
Mkt BQQ	Market Bid Quote Quantity.
Mkt BQP	Market Bid Quote Price.
Mkt AQP	Market Ask Quote Price.
Mkt AQQ	Market Ask Quote Quantity. These columns display all active quotes in the market and update according to price and quantity.

Enabling Quoting

Follow all these procedures to enable quoting:

1. **Creating quoting preferences**: In order to use the quoting feature, you indicate your quoting preferences.
2. **Enabling quoting as a feature**: You enable quoting as a feature from the **Properties** menu. By default it is disabled.
3. **Turning on quoting for a single window**:You turn quoting on for each individual **Market** window.

▶ **Procedure 1: To create quoting preferences:**

X_TRADER quoting requires all of the following:

- **One or more spread tables**: Spread tables let you define how wide quote spreads should be, based on a product's time to expiration and price. Multiple spread tables provide flexibility within the quoting system. Refer to **Spread Tables Setup** on page 82 for more information.
- **One or more product groups**: Product groups let you define how the bid/ask values are calculated. You can specify the quote type, spread table, delete time, account, as well as other parameters. You can enable or disable Autoquoting via your product groups. Refer to **Product Group Information Setup** on page 74 for more information.
- **Each quoted product must be associated to a product group**: Product groups determine how a quote is generated. Therefore, to generate quotes, each product must be associated with one (and only one) product group. Refer to **Associating a Product to a Product Group** on page 80 for more information.

You successfully set up the quoting features.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

▶ Procedure 2: To enable quoting as a feature:

Quoting preferences must first be created. (See Procedure 1 above)

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
   The **Properties** dialog box opens with the **Trading** tab displayed by default.
2. Click to select the **Quoting** box to enable quoting.
   A checkmark indicates that quoting is enabled for all **Market** windows.

You successfully enabled quoting as a feature. Continue to the next procedure to turn quoting on.

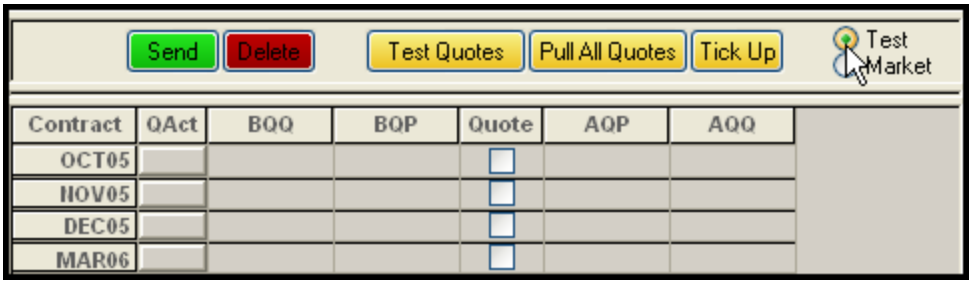
▶ Procedure 3: To turn on quoting for a single window:

Quoting must first be enabled. (See Procedure 2 above.)

1. Right-click anywhere in the Market Grid to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

2. Highlight **Quoting** and click **Show**.
   The quoting bar is added between the **Order Entry** pane and the Market Grid, and new columns appear in the Market Grid.



   Alternatively, click **Show/Hide columns** and click **RFQ**.
   An **RFQ** button displays after the **Del Srs** column for every contract.

   Click the **RFQ** button to send a request for quote on any contract. By default, clicking on the button sends a generic, two-sided indicative RFQ with no size.

You successfully turned quoting on for a single window.

Editing, Generating, and Sending Quotes

Follow these procedures to edit, generate and send quotes:

- Generating quotes
- Editing a quote (change pricing or other information)
- Sending a single quote
- Sending mass quotes

To generate quotes:

Make sure quoting is enabled and click **Test Quotes**.

- or -

Click the **RFQ** button to send a request for quote on any contract. By default, clicking on the button sends a generic, two-sided indicative RFQ with no size.

You successfully generated quotes.

To edit a quote: (change pricing or other information):

1. Directly from the Market Grid, double-click the **BQP** (Bid Quote Price) or **AQP** (Ask Quote Price).
2. Edit the price in the **Send Quote** dialog box.

You successfully edited a quote.

To send a single quote:

1. Click **QAct** to send an individual quote to market.

   The **Send Quote** dialog box opens so that you can edit and confirm the quote.
2. Click **Add** to send the quote to market.

   The test quote columns continue to display, but the cell for the sent quote is displayed in blue to indicate that the quote hit the market.

You successfully sent a single quote.

To send mass quotes:

1. Click **Send** in the **Order Entry** pane to send the test quotes to market.
2. Click **Send** to regenerate unedited quotes based on current market conditions.

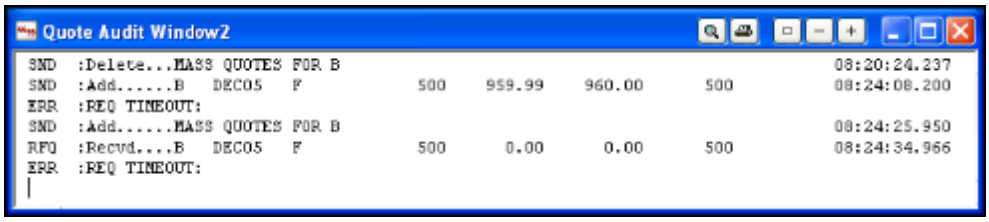
   The new quotes are sent to market. When you send mass quotes the market quote columns automatically display.

You successfully sent mass quotes.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Tracking Quotes

All exchange messages relating to quoting display in the Quote Audit Trail. Use this window to confirm outbound quoting events and monitor inbound quoting events (i.e., RFQs).



X_TRADER uses the Quote Audit Trail to monitor quoting activity. The Quote Audit Trail displays messages related to quoting from the exchanges. You can also use this message window to monitor incoming and outgoing RFQs, as well as manual and autoquoting responses to RFQs.

▶ **To open the Quote Audit Trail:**

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Quote Audit Trail**.

- or -

From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

You successfully opened the Quote Audit Trail.

Activating or Deactivating a Strike or an Expiration

You must activate the strike/expiration before sending the quotes to market. If a quote is not activated, test quotes are generated, but are not sent to market.

Contract	QAct	BQQ	BQP	Quote	AQP	AQQ
DEC05				☐		
MAR06				☐		
JUN06				☐		
SEP06				☐		
DEC06				☐		
MAR07				☐		

In the Market Grid, the **Quote** column indicates the status of the strike/expiration:

- A checked box in the **Quote** column indicates an activated strike/expiration. Generated or manually entered quotes are sent to market.
- An unchecked box in the **Quote** column indicates a deactivated strike/expiration. Generated and manually entered quotes are NOT sent to market.

▶ **To manually activate or deactivate an individual strike or expiration:**

Click to select (activate) or deselect (deactivate) the box in the **Quote** column.

Note: Deselecting (deactivating) a strike/expiration deletes a quote from the market, if one exists.

You successfully activated or deactivated an individual strike or expiration.

Activating/Deactivating Multiple Strikes or Expirations

When viewing quotes from multiple windows, a second quoting **Market** window with the same contract does not display all existing quotes. The second window only sees data about live quotes after the workstation receives an update.

Additionally, if you send a new quote with only a single changed parameter, the first window displays the entire quote, but the second window only receives an update of changed information. Therefore, the second window only receives the changed parameters. This information also applies to a trader who is logged onto more than one workstation.

To activate or deactivate multiple Strikes or Expirations:

1. Right-click anywhere in one of the **Quote** columns (**BQQ**, **BQP**, **Quote**, **AQQ**, or **AQP**) to access the context menu.
2. Click **Select** to choose which strikes/expirations to activate/deactivate. These are your selections:
   - **All**: All strikes/expirations are selected.
   - **Calls**: Only calls are selected.
   - **Puts**: Only puts are selected.
   - **2-Sided Mkts**: Only 2-sided markets are selected.
   - **Last Prc**: Only strikes/expirations with a last price are selected.
3. From the context menu, click **Activate** or **Deactivate**.
4. Click outside the context menu to exit.

You successfully activated or deactivated multiple Strikes or Expirations.

Deleting Mass or Individual Quotes

Follow these procedures to delete quotes:

- Deleting all quotes in the market
- Deleting a single quote

To delete all quotes in the market:

Click **Delete** to delete all quotes from the market.

You successfully deleted all quotes from the market.

To delete a single quote:

Uncheck the **Quote** column box of the strike/expiration.

This deactivates the strike/expiration and deletes the quote.

You successfully deleted a single quote. Click to select the **Quote** column box to re-activate the strike/expiration.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Disabling Quoting

Follow these procedures to disable quoting:

- Disabling quoting for a single window
- Disabling quoting as a feature

To disable quoting for a single window:

1. Right-click anywhere in the Market Grid to access the context menu.

   Note: If Click Trading is enabled, do not click in the **Bid/Ask** price columns.

   If quoting is on, a check mark appears next to **Show** in the **Quoting** submenu.
2. Click **Show**.

   The quoting bar and additional columns disappear from the Market Grid.

You have successfully disabled quoting for a single window.

To disable quoting as a feature:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.

   The **Properties** dialog box opens with the **Trading** tab displayed by default.
2. Click to uncheck the **Quoting** box to disable quoting.

You successfully disabled quoting as a feature in X_TRADER.

Status of Quotes at X_TRADER Shutdown

The status of working orders at shutdown depends on how X_TRADER is shutdown.

- **Normal Shutdown**: If you exit X_TRADER normally, working orders remain working. The exception is Autospreader and Autotrader. Their working orders delete when you shutdown X_TRADER.
- **Abnormal Shutdown**: When X_TRADER experiences an abnormal shutdown, live quotes cannot be pulled from the market. Since quoting data is tracked on the local workstation, there is no record of active quotes. Since the quotes remain active in the market, they may unknowingly fill.

Tip: If this occurs, restart X_TRADER as soon as possible and click **Delete** from the quoting **Market** window. This pulls all live quotes from the market.

Trading Eurodollar Options

The following changes were made to X_TRADER to support Eurodollar options:

- Market Grid changes
- Request For Quote changes

Market Grid Changes

Four new columns were added in the Market Grid. They are hidden by default:

- **IndBidQty**: Best indicative Bid Quantity
- **IndAskQty**: Best indicative Ask Quantity
- **IndBidPrc**: Best indicative Bid Price
- **IndAskPrc**: Best indicative Ask Price

Note: The prices in these columns are not directly tradable. They show an approximation of the tradable prices.

Contract	Del Srs	WrkBuys	BidQty	BidPrc	IndBidQty	IndBidPrc	IndAskPrc	IndAskQty	AskPrc	AskQty
APR06 C8950	DEL				1000	51.0	51.5	1000		
APR06 P8950	DEL				300	43.5	44.0	300		
APR06 C8975	DEL				1000	43.0	43.5	1000		
APR06 P8975	DEL				100	10.5	12.0	100		
APR06 C9000	DEL				1000	52.0	53.5	1000		
APR06 P9000	DEL				900	20.5	21.5	900		
APR06 C9025	DEL				400	39.0	40.5	400		
APR06 P9025	DEL				900	39.5	41.0	900		

Request For Quote (RFQ) Window

Two new fields appear in the RFQ window:

- **Side**: Determines what kind of trade you are requesting the quote for. Options are: Buy, Sell, Both
- **Ind/Tradable**: States whether the quote being sent is indicative or tradable.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Sequence of Events

Trading Eurodollar Options follows this sequence of events:

- Market Makers supply indicative bids and indicative offers whose prices display in new indicative columns in the Market Grid. These prices are not tradable, rather, they show an approximation of the tradable price.

  Note: If you want an indicative price not shown, send an RFQ for an indicative price.

- You send out an RFQ for a tradable price on any commodity.

  Note: Commodities do not have to already have an indicative price to request a tradable price.

- Market Maker supplies a tradable price that appears in the Bid Price and Ask Price columns like any other contract in X_TRADER.
- You decide whether to make the trade.

To trade Eurodollar Options:

1. Log on to CME.
2. Enter Eurodollar Options contracts into the Market Grid.
3. Right-click the Market Grid and click **Select Columns**.
4. Click to select: **IndBidQty**, **IndBidPrc**, **IndAskPrc**, **IndAskQty**
   Indicative prices and quantities appear in the Market Grid.
5. Right-click the contract you want to get a tradable price on.
6. Click **Send RFQ**.
7. In the **Qty** field, enter a quantity you want to get a tradable price on.
8. In the **Side** field, click the kind of trade you want tradable prices on: **Buy**, **Sell** or **Both Sides**
9. In the **Ind/Tradable** field, click **Tradable**.
10. Click **Send**.
    A tradable price will be appear in the **Bid Price** or **Ask Price** columns on the Market Grid.
11. Execute the trade using the Market Grid.

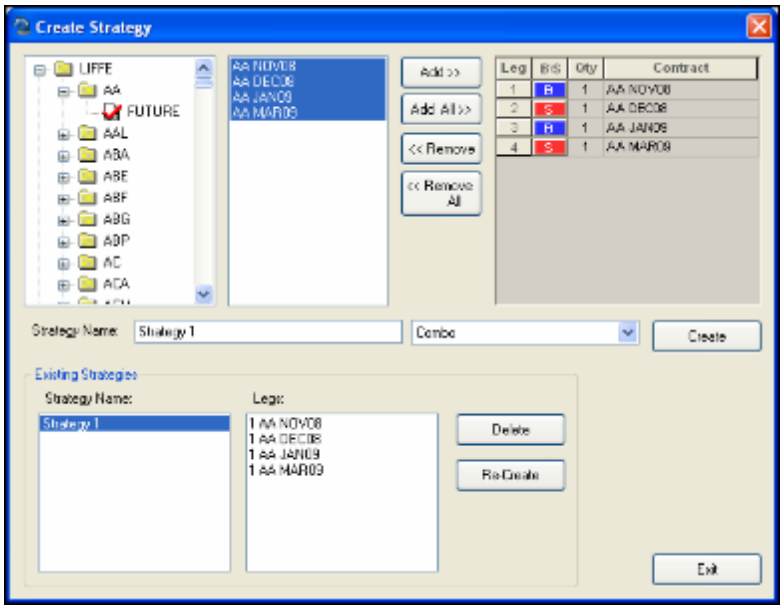
You successfully traded Eurodollar Options.

Strategies Overview

Strategies are synthetic spread instruments where the legs are options, futures, or spreads. Strategies are created on the exchange and are exchange-traded instruments. The price differential between the legs is guaranteed.

Notes:

- When enabled, the **Hide New Contracts** property blocks new strategies from automatically appearing in the Market Grid when they are released. Enable via the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.
- When creating volatility strategies, do not assume a sign on the delta. You must include the sign when creating this strategy.
  The sign of the delta indicates whether you are buying or selling the underlying. + Buying / - Selling. Delta in this context acts as a hedge ratio and declares the number of futures that must be bought (or sold) to offset the risk of the options position.



Follow these procedures to manage Spread Strategies:

- Creating a New Strategy
- Setting Outright or Spread Prices
- Trading with a Strategy
- Adding a Strategy to the Market Window
- Renaming an Existing Strategy
- Recreating a Strategy
- Amending Strategies
- Deleting a Created Spread or Strategy

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Created Outrights and X_TRADER

The LIFFE exchange lets you create new outrights. In other words, you can create a new strike/expiration. Although X_TRADER supports spontaneous display of newly created outrights as they occur in real time, you cannot create outrights in X_TRADER.

SFE Custom Market Strategies

When creating a strategy for the Sydney Futures (SFE), a new strategy called Custom Market appears on the **Create Strategy** window. As you add SFE contracts to the legs in your strategy, a **Price** column appears. You must add prices to each leg in the strategy prior to creating the strategy.

Creating a New Strategy

To create a new spread:

1. Right-click the Market Grid to access the context menu, and click **Create Strategy**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Create Strategy**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

   The **Create Strategy** dialog box opens.
2. Click the **down arrow** in the middle of the window and select a **strategy type**.

   Refer to the exchange specific *System Admin Manual* for strategy definitions.
3. In the top left section, click the + sign to open the exchange folders and select an instrument.

   The instrument marks with a check and the available contract months display to the right.
4. Double-click a contract month to add contracts one leg at a time.

   - or -

   Click the **Add** or **Add All** to add the contract months.
5. Edit the spread data as appropriate.
   - Click **B/S** to toggle between Buy and Sell.
   - Change the **Qty** field per leg where permitted.
   - To remove a leg, click the number under the **Leg** column and click **Remove**.

   Note: If you are creating a strategy for SFE, you must add a price to each leg in the **Price** column.
6. Repeat steps 2-5 adding as many legs as you want.
7. In the **Strategy Name** field, type an alias.

   Note: If you leave this box blank, the name will be the spread type followed by the ratio and leg expirations.
8. Click **Create**.

   If the exchange accepts the strategy, the spread appears in the **Existing Strategies** section, as well as, Market Explorer.

   The **Audit Trail** window also displays confirmation messages. If the strategy creation fails, the **Audit Trail** window displays an error message. A *Successful* message means the strategy is validated by the TT Gateway.

You successfully created a new strategy.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Adding a Strategy to the Market Window

Once the exchange accepts a strategy you created, the spread appears in the **Existing Strategies** section, as well as, Market Explorer. You add the strategy to the **Market** window just like you add any other instrument.

Refer to **Populating Windows with Contracts** on page 168.

Note: Strategies highlight in yellow for three seconds when they appear in the **Market** window.

Trading a Spread or Strategy

There is no difference to trading the strategies you create and those published by the exchange. You select the Spread product type from Market Explorer and open it in the same **Market** window.

The strategy name you entered appears in the **Product** column. If you did not enter a personalized name, the default name is the spread type, spread ratio, expiration.

Note: As always, refer to the exchange's market rules for trading information specific to that exchange.

Trading Strategies with a Maximum Limits

If your trading environment uses Guardian Pre-execution Risk Management (Credit Controls), the **Maximum Order Quantity** limit, **Maximum Position** limit, and **Trade Out** fields impact trading in the following manner:

- Each leg of the strategy is subject to your quantity and position limits.

  Example 1: You place a buy order for 15 GE Mar08 – Jun08 Calendar spread. According to Spread Risk controls, you would be long 15 Mar08 GE and short 15 Jun08 GE. If your **Maximum Position** is 20, you could only buy 5 more Mar08 GE, or sell 5 more Jun08 GE.

- You can only exceed your quantity limit if your Trade Out designation is set to yes.

  Example 2: Assuming your position is long 20 Mar08 GE and short -20 Jun08 GE, you place an order for 20 GE Jun08 – Mar08.

  - If your **Maximum Order Quantity** is 15 and **Trade Out** is set to no, this order is rejected.
  - If your **Maximum Order Quantity** is 15 and **Trade Out** is set to yes, this order is accepted.

Renaming an Existing Strategy

In addition to the procedure below, you can rename a strategy in the **Create Strategy** window, or create a new strategy based upon the existing one. Refer to **Amending a Strategy** on page 244.

▶ **To rename an existing strategy:**

1. In the Market Grid **Product** column double-click the spread name.

   - or -

   Right-click a cell in the spread row to access the context menu and click **Name Product**.
2. Enter the new spread name, and click **OK**.

   To revert to the original name (spread type, ratio, legs expirations) click **Restore**.

You successfully renamed an existing strategy.

Recreating a Spread Strategy

You can use the **Create Strategy** window to recreate strategies saved in a workspace.

▶ **To recreate a strategy:**

1. Open a workspace with a previously created strategy.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

   The **Create Strategy** dialog box opens.
3. In the **Strategy Name** list, at the bottom of the screen, click the strategy you want to recreate.

   Note: To select multiple spread strategies, press and hold the CTRL key and continue clicking spread strategies. Then, release the CTRL key.
4. Click the **Re-Create** button.

You successfully recreated a strategy.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Amending a Strategy

You can change your existing strategies and either replace them or create a new strategy based on an existing one.

To change an existing strategy:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. In the **Existing Strategies** section, click the name of an existing strategy.
   The attributes of the strategy appear and are editable.
3. Change the attributes, including the designated legs, as needed.
4. If you want to preserve the old strategy, change the **Strategy Name** field.
   - or -
   If you want to replace the existing strategy, do not change the **Strategy Name** field.
5. Click **Create**.

You successfully changed an existing strategy.

Deleting an Existing Strategy

To delete an existing strategy:

1. Right-click the Market Grid to access the context menu, and click **Create Strategy**.
   - or -
   From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Create Strategy**.
   - or -
   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
   The **Create Strategy** dialog box opens.
2. From the **Existing Strategies** section, click the name of strategy.
   The legs of the selected spread name display.
3. Click **Delete**.

You successfully deleted an existing strategy.

CHAPTER 7

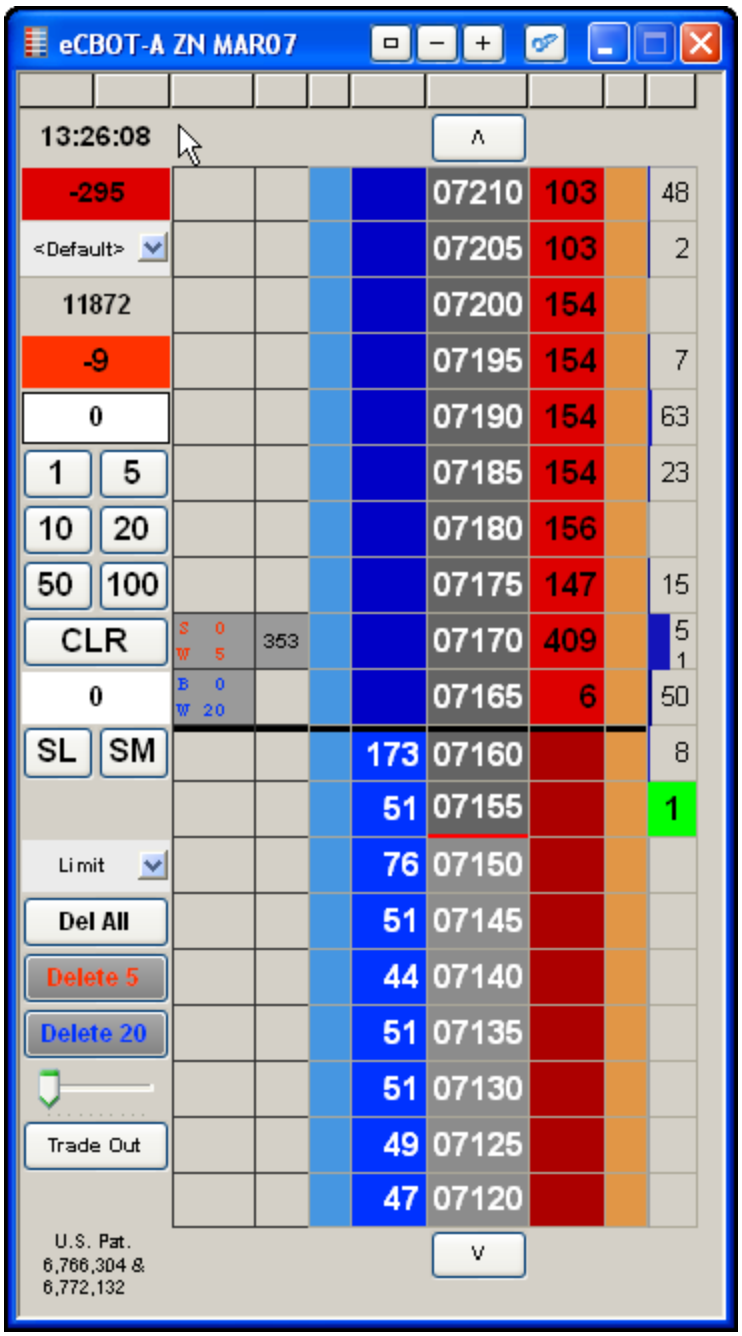
MD Trader® Overview

Note: MD Trader is protected by U.S. Patents Numbers 6,766,304 and 6,772,132.

MD Traderdynamically displays the market depth for a product. It lets you quickly buy or sell products across the depth using one click of the mouse.

This section breaks into the following categories:

- **Populating MD Trader** on page 250
- **Using the MD Trader Context Menu** on page 252
- **Using MD Trader** on page 253
- **Setting MD Trader Properties** on page 260
- **Customizing MD Trader** on page 273
- **Keyboard Trading in MD Trader** on page 279



▶ **To open MD Trader from the Control Panel:**

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **MD Trader**.

- or -

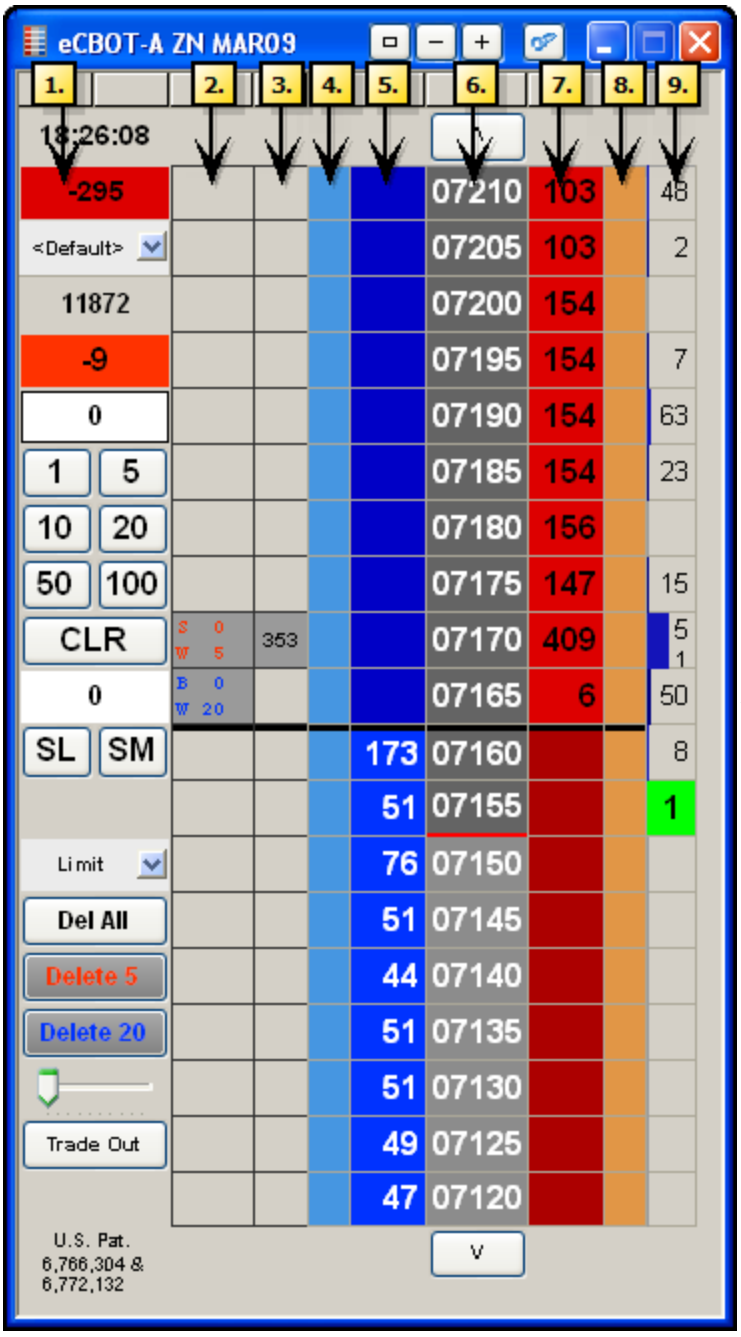
From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

You successfully opened MD Trader.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

MD Trader Field Descriptions

The **MD Trader** window maintains default settings that can be modified in its **Properties** menu. Enable the **Show Tooltips** property to see a small text description of certain fields when you hover the cursor over them.



Tip: Although certain columns and options boxes do not appear in the **MD Trader** window by default, for illustration purposes, this diagram displays all available options and columns.

Note: MD Trader is protected by U.S. Patents Numbers 6,766,304 and 6,772,132.

Property	Description
System Clock	Displays the current time according to your workstation.
Net Change	Displays the net changes. Net change is the difference between the last traded price and

Property	Description
	the settlement price.
Customer List	Let you select any customer to trade for from the customer list.
Total Contract Volume	Displays the total volume traded for that contract.
Net Position	Displays your net position. Click the **Net Position** field to trade out your position. This automatically populates the **Order Entry** field with your net position.
Order Quantity	Indicates the order quantity sent to market. After you submit the first trade of the day, this field populates with the value you place in the **Default Quantity** field.
1 / 10 / 50 / 5 / 20 / 100	Preset order quantity buttons. To customize a pre-set order quantity, right-click a button. Enter a value using the keyboard, and press `Enter`.
CLR	Clears the **Order Quantity** field.
Default Order Quantity	Populates the **Order Quantity** field after each trade with the value entered in this field.
SL & SM	Flags your next order as a Stop Limit or Stop Market order. Access the **MD Trader Properties** menu from the context menu to add more order type buttons.
Del All	Deletes all working, held and stop orders for this series of contracts. This feature behaves differently for an exchange trader versus a proxy (TTORD) trader: • If an exchange trader uses this feature, all working for that contract for all sponsored proxy traders are deleted. • If a TTORD trader attempts to use this feature, it converts one message into to multiple individual delete requests by the client application to prevent a trader from deleting the exchange trader's working orders (for that contract).
Delete *n* (red)	Deletes working sells (indicating the number of working sells).
Delete *n* (blue)	Deletes working buys (indicating the number of working buys)
Price Consolidation Slider	Consolidates price depth in the **Price** column. Slide it to the right to consolidate price levels. Slide it to the left to flatten your price depth.
Trade Out	Flattens your position. Refer to **Trading Out of a Position** on page 270. When you use the **Trade Out** button, MD Trader deletes all working orders on both sides of the market and sends an order that removes you from your position, long or short, regardless of your credit limit.

Column 2	Description
Working Quantity Column	Displays all working quantities (W) and executions (S or B) for an order.

Column 3	Description
Estimated Position In Queue (EPIQ)	Indicates how many contracts are in front of your order at any given price. Refer to **Viewing your Estimated Position in Queue** on page 272.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Column 4	Description
Bid Indicator Column	Indicates price settings when you enable the **Bid indicator column** property. You may paste a value in the column from a spreadsheet. The value of the spreadsheet appears in a white box.

Column 5	Description
Buy Column	Displays current market bids, implied bid outright prices, implied bid spread prices and implieds from implieds bid values. When you enable Keyboard Trading, a colored cursor appears in the **Buy** column, indicating the current price level for an order. Refer to **Enabling Keyboard Trading in MD Trader** on page 282.

Column 6	Description
Price Column	Indicates market price and depth. Arrows appear at the top and bottom of this column, letting you page up or page down to view more prices: • To move the market view upwards, click the up arrow: • To move the market view downwards, click the down arrow: A yellow line indicates the highest price of the day. A red line indicates the lowest price of the day. A darkened background indicates the prices fall between the high and low. **Note**: If no other price is available, but you still want to scroll up and down, use the arrow keys on your keyboard.

Column 7	Description
Sell Column	Displays current market offers, implied offer outright prices, implied offer spread prices and implied from implied offer values. When you enable Keyboard Trading, a colored cursor appears in the **Sell** column,indicating the current price level for an order. Refer to **Enabling Keyboard Trading in MD Trader** on page 282.

Column 8	Description
Ask Indicator Column	Indicates price settings when you enable the **Ask indicator column** property. You may paste a value in the column from a spreadsheet. The value of the spreadsheet appears in a white box.

Column 9	Description
Last Traded Quantity Column	Indicates the last traded quantity at that price. Also, you can configure this column to display Volume by Price in bar, text, or tool tip format. Refer to **MD Display Tab** on page 131.

Additional Fields	Description
Scroll Bar	Indicates orders exist above or below what is visible in the window. Use a mouse to scroll up or down MD Trader.
Market Mid-Point Bar	Designates the midpoint of the inside market with a bold black line. Refer to **Displaying the Mid-Point of Inside Market** on page 266.

MD Trader Features

Some MD Trader features include:

- View in small mode. Keep all the functionality but take up less space on your desktop. Refer to **Displaying a Small MD Trader** on page 265.
- Set so all floating order entry windows launched in the Market Grid, Spread Matrix, Butterfly Condor Matrix, Autotrader, or Quote Board are **MD Trader** windows. Refer to **Using Floating Order Entry** on page 176 to enable.
- Rename the window using the titlebar context menu.
- Continually send Good to Cancel orders by enabling the **GTC** checkbox. Refer to **MD Trader Field Descriptions** on page 246.
- Globally recenter all windows using the **Recentering** properties. When you recenter one **MD Trader** window, all open **MD Trader** windows recenter as well. Refer to **MD Display Tab** on page 131.
- Customize color coding, mouse wheel behavior, and sound notifications.
- Designate a second default quantity for your right-click trading.

Other options MD Trader displays include:

- Implied prices and quantities.
- Daily high and low trades.
- Contract's price range.
- Volume by price bar chart or text.
- Your customer profiles.
- Time and sales for quick view of recent price, quantity and time transaction details. Refer to **Adding Time and Sales** on page 274.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Populating MD Trader

Follow these procedures to populate MD Trader with contracts:

- Populating MD Trader from Market Explorer
- Populating MD Trader using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer
- Populating MD Trader using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid
- Populating MD Trader using the Market Grid context menu

To populate MD Trader from Market Explorer:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
3. In the **Products** section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
4. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Instruments** field updates as you type.
5. From the **Instrument Type** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
6. Press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.

   - or -

   To open all products in the **Instruments** field, click the >> button and skip to step 7.
7. Click the > button to transfer the products from the **Instruments** box to the **Selected Instruments** box.
8. Click the **Function** box in the upper right corner of the Market Explorer and choose **MD Trader**.
9. Click **Start**.

You successfully populated MD Trader from Market Explorer.

To populate MD Trader using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer:

1. If MD Trader is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open it.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
3. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
4. In the **Products** section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
5. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Instruments** field updates as you type.
6. From the **Instrument Type** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
7. From the **Instruments** box, press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.
8. With the cursor over one of the selected products in the **Instruments** box, click and hold the mouse button.
9. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the open MD Trader.

   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters a window, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
10. Release the mouse button.

You successfully populated MD Trader using drag-and-drop from the Market Explorer.

To populate MD Trader using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid:

1. If MD Trader is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open it.
2. From an open Market Grid, click the product and hold the mouse button.
3. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the open MD Trader.

   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters a window, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
4. When the cursor enters MD Trader, release the mouse button.

You successfully populated MD Trader using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid.

To populate MD Trader using the Market Grid context menu:

1. In the Market Grid, right-click the row of the product you want to open in MD Trader.
2. Click **MD Trader**.

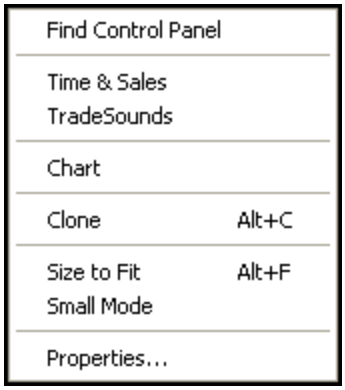
You successfully populated MD Trader using the Market Grid context menu.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Using the MD Trader Context Menu

Right-click MD Trader to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:



- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Time & Sales**: Adds the time and sales pane, showing price, quantity and time columns.
- **TradeSounds**: Enables sounds you associate with your trades based on quantity.
- **Chart**: Opens an X_STUDY chart for the selected contract.
- **Clone**: Creates a duplicate **MD Trader** window.

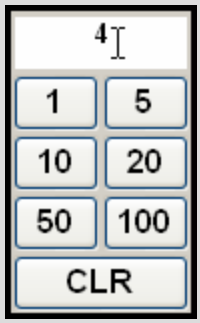
  Note: You cannot clone a Floating Order Entry window displayed as MD Trader (has a yellow border).

- **Size to Fit**: Resizes to show all viewable data.
- **Small Mode**: Makes a smaller version of the window. When enabled, this context menu changes to **Standard Mode**.
- **Properties**: Opens the **MD Properties** menu.
- **Paste Link**: Inserts a copied link from Excel into the **Bid** or **Ask indicator** columns. Only available when data is copied.
- **Delete Link**: Removes pasted link from the **Bid** or **Ask indicator** columns. Only available when a formula has been pasted.

Note: You cannot access the context menu from the following locations:

- **Last Traded Quantity** column
- **Working order**, **bid** or **ask** columns
- **Delete Bids** or **Delete Offers** quantity buttons

- Numerical quantity buttons



Using MD Trader

Follow these procedures to use MD Trader:

- Recognizing the Average Price of Open Position
- Centering the Market
- Changing order quantity
- Changing working orders
- Deleting trades from the market
- Reading the net change indicator
- Selecting a customer profile
- Setting the default quantity
- Setting the trade quantity
- Setting Time In Force
- Reading the text and grid colors

Recognizing Average Price of Open Position

The average price of your open position is the average price of all your fills at different price levels. You can use this price point to gauge whether trading out of your position will provide you with a realized gain, loss, or scratch.

The value of the open position begins at the current open position for the product. If no open position exists, then the average price equals zero.

The price of the open position calculates on the First In First Out (FIFO) method used for filled orders. The first fills received are the first fills discarded when determining the average price.

Note: When calculating average price, MD Trader rounds longs up and shorts down.

Centering the Market

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with this command.

To center the market:

Press the `Spacebar`.

This centers the market in MD Trader, but does not affect the position or location of the buy or sell side cursors, which are adjusted using a different set of mapped key strokes.

You successfully centered the market.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Changing Order Quantity Using a Mouse

In MD Trader most users use the keyboard to enter order quantity amounts in the **Order Quantity** field. However, you can also use the mouse wheel to change order quantity.

Using the mouse wheel to change the order quantity is subject to the following constraints:

- The restrictions established by Guardian firstly, and the maximum trade quantity defined on the **MD Trading** tab secondarily.
- Orders increase or decreases by a quantity of ten.

Follow these procedures to change the order quantity using the mouse:

- Setting quantity change property
- Changing the order quantity using the mouse wheel

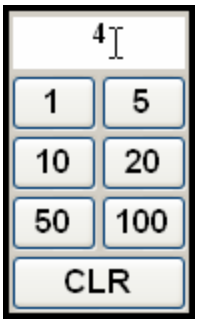
To set the quantity change property:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. Click to select the **Enable qty change on left/right click in edit fields** option.
4. To set this property for all subsequently opened MD Trader windows, click to select **Set as Global default**.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully set the quantity change property.

To change order quantity using the mouse wheel:

1. Set the quantity change property.
2. Click in the **Order Quantity** box.



3. Move the mouse wheel to increase or decrease the order quantity.

You successfully changed order quantity using the mouse wheel.

Changing Working Orders

You can drag-and-drop working orders from one location to another in MD Trader.

To drag-and-drop a working order:

1. Right-click and continue holding down any price and working cell information in the **Working Quantity** column.

   Warning! Be very careful. A right-click and release deletes the order!

2. Drag and drop the price/quantity to the cell where you want to place the order and release the button.

You successfully dragged and dropped a working order.

Deleting Orders

Follow these procedures to delete your orders in MD Trader:

- Deleting all your orders
- Deleting a single order
- Deleting all bids or all offers
- Deleting orders using the working quantity column

To delete all your orders:

If you have the **Delete all when LTQ column clicked** property enabled, left or right-click on any grid cell in the **Last Traded Quantity** column to delete all of your working bids and offers.

- or -

Click the **Delete All** button.

You successfully deleted all your orders.

To delete a single order:

To delete a single order, click its cell in the **Working Quantity** column.

You successfully deleted a single order.

To delete all Bids or all Offers:

If you have the **Delete Bid/Ask** property enabled:

- Click the blue **Delete *n*** to delete all workig bids.
- Click the red **Delete *n*** to delete all working offers.

You successfully deleted all Bids or all Offers.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To delete the working quantity of all orders at a given price level:

Left or right click on any cell in the **Working Quantity** column.

If the working quantity is for 50 orders, for example, in five separate 10-lot orders, all five orders delete. If there is only a single 50-lot order, this single order deletes.

You successfully deleted the working quantity of all orders at a given price level.

Reading the Net Change Indicator in MD Trader

In MD Trader the **Net Change indicator** is a small box immediately below the system clock. It displays a net change in price for a traded product in the current day measured against the previous day's settlement price. If there is no settlement price, the closing price is used.

The net change is color coded:

- red for a negative change
- green for a positive change.

The unit of measure is in tick increments for the product.

Selecting a Customer Profile in MD Trader

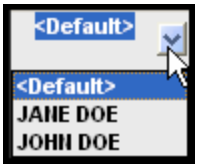
Certain markets require a customer name be selected before any trades enter the market.

Example: CME requires it.

The customer profile is one of any in the **Customer List**. To manage the **Customer List**, from the **Control Panel**, point to the **Settings** menu and click **Customer Defaults**.

To select a customer profile in MD Trader:

1. Click on the **down arrow** two cells beneath the clock ticker.



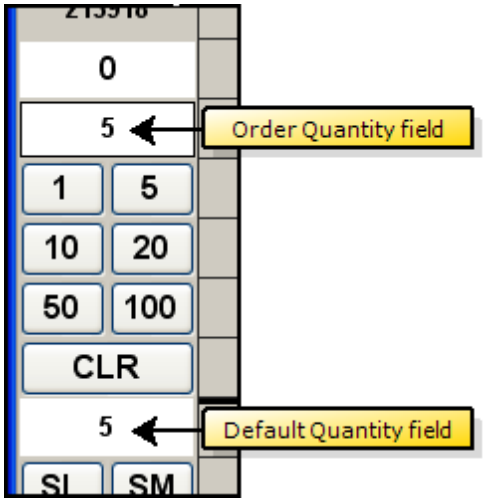
2. Click a customer name from the list.

You successfully selected a customer profile in MD Trader.

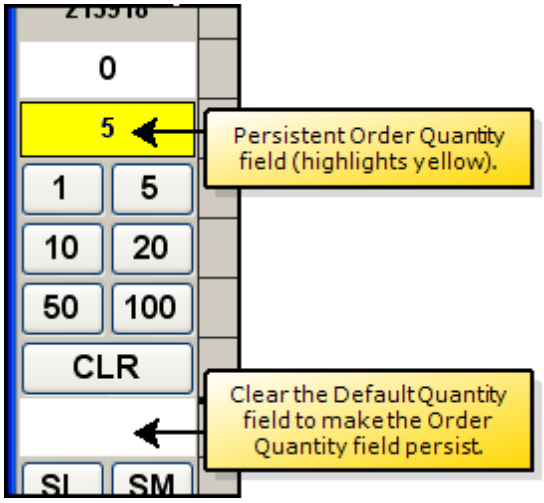
Setting the Default Quantity

In MD Trader setting the **Default Quantity** field is not required, but once you send an initial order, the **Order Quantity** field continually resets itself to the default quantity.

Alternatively, you can clear the **Default Quantity** field and make the **Order Quantity** persistent.



Default Qty field populates Order Qty field



Order Qty field persists

You set the maximum quantity for trades with the **Maximum order quantity** property. However, the restrictions established by Guardian take precedence over this property.

To set the default quantity:

1. Click in the **Default Quantity** field under the **CLR** button.
2. Use the `Delete` key on the keyboard to clear the contents of the field.
3. Enter a default quantity.

   - or -

   Leave the **Default Quantity** field blank to have the **Order Quantity** field persist.
4. Press `Enter` to set the default quantity.

You successfully set the default quantity.

Setting the Trade Quantity

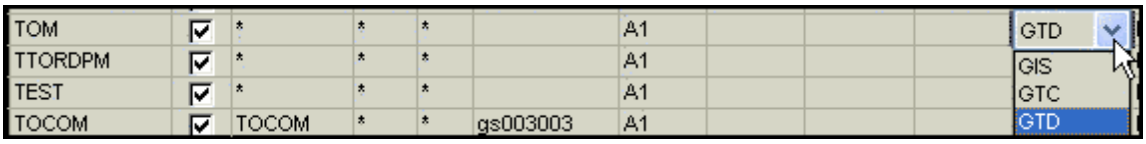
In MD Trader you must set a value in the **Order Quantity** field to trade. Once you send an initial order, this field resets itself with the value in the **Default Quantity** field.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Setting Time In Force

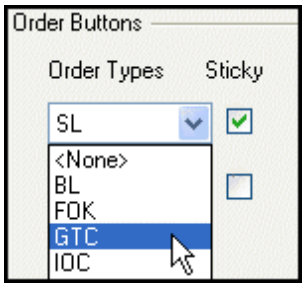
By default all orders sent in MD Trader are GTD (good until the end of the day). However, you can override this setting in multiple ways.

- First, you can set each customer's default TIF using the Customer Defaults window. This setting overrides the default MD Trader setting.

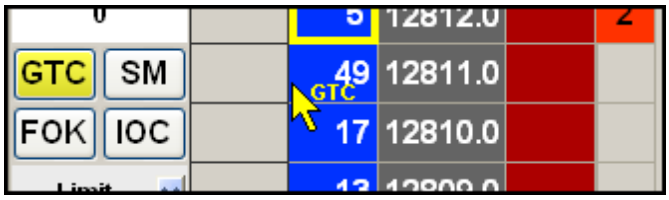


Set your Time in Force on the Customer Defaults window.

- Second, you can set GTC as an Order Button in the **MD Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu. Then, you can select the button prior to placing your order in MD Trader.



Set GTC as an Order Button



Click GTC before placing an order

Text and Grid Colors

Many of the grids, text boxes, and indicators in MD Trader are color coded to give you a visual indication of market position and other information. The grid below summarizes the default colors:

Column or Text Box	Associated Colors
Working Quantity Column	Foreground color: Gray Working Sell Text: Red Font Working Buy: Blue Font Executed Sell: Blue Font Executed Buy: Red Font
Net Position Box	Background color: Red or Green depending on position. Short Position: Red Font Long Position: Green Font
Bid Column	Foreground color: Blue Font Color: White
Sell Column	Foreground color: Red Font Color: Black
Last Traded Quantity Column	Foreground color: Gray Trade at decreased price: Red Font Trade at increased price: Green Font Trade at same price: White Font

You can customize many colors using the **MD Color** tab on the **Properties** menu. Among the colors you can customize include:

- LTP Up, Down, or Unchanged
- Net Change Up, Down or Unchanged
- Net Position Flat, Long or Short
- Buy and Sell side columns
- Working Buys or Sells
- Best Bid and/or Ask
- Average Price of Long and/or Short Position

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Setting MD Trader Properties

You set properties for your local **MD Trader** window from the **MD Properties** menu, accessed from the context menu.

Note: The **Set as Global Default** checkbox at the bottom of each tab applies properties to all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows. Alternatively, you can set global properties via the **Settings** menu on the **Control Panel**.

Tab Name	Description
MD Trading	Set trading parameters for MD Trader, including maximum order quantity.
MD Display	Set display options for MD Trader, including EPIQ and volume at price.
MD Color	Customize color specific options and features for MD Trader.
MD Advanced	Enable and define the User-Defined Price (UDP) column in MD Trader which, among other things, allows you to trade in yield.

Use the properties menu to set these properties:

- Auto Centering
- Average Price Highlighting
- Recognizing the Average Price of Open Position
- Consolidating Prices
- Creating a User-Defined Price (UDP) Column
- Displaying a Small MD Trader Window
- Displaying the Mid-Point of Inside Market
- Keeping MD Trader on Top
- One-Click Trading
- Placing Stop Orders
- Setting the Maximum Trade Quantity
- Trading Out a Position Using One-Click
- Trading in Yield
- Viewing your EPIQ

Auto Centering in MD Trader

When enabled, the auto-centering feature available in MD Trader automatically centers the grid display.

Note: This feature works independently of the **Participate in Global Recentering** property. Refer to **MD Display Tab** on page 131 for more information.

To set automatic grid centering:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **MD Display** tab.
4. Click to select the **Automatic Grid Centering** option.
5. Choose the option that determines when MD Trader recenters:
   - Every _ seconds
   - Last Traded Price Within _ rows from top/bottom
   - Inside Market Within _ rows from the top/bottom
6. If you want MD Trader to flash prior to recentering, click to select the **Enable Grid Recenter Warning**.
7. To set this property for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
8. Click **OK**.

You successfully set Auto Grid Centering.

Average Price Highlighting

When enabled, the average price highlighting feature automatically displays the average open price short and long. Enabled by default.

The average open price short highlights **bold blue**, while average open price long highlights **bold red**.

Note: MD Trader average price rounds longs up and shorts down.

To set average price highlighting:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **MD Display** tab.
4. Click to select the **Display Average Price of Position** option.
5. To set this property for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
6. Click **OK**.

You successfully set Average Price Highlighting.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Consolidating Prices

Price consolidation condenses the display of price information in the static price column. This lets you view a greater range of prices without clouding the total quantity available.

You can configure price consolidation to select an offset and an order distribution method (join the bid or offer) that enters orders for the consolidated price rows.

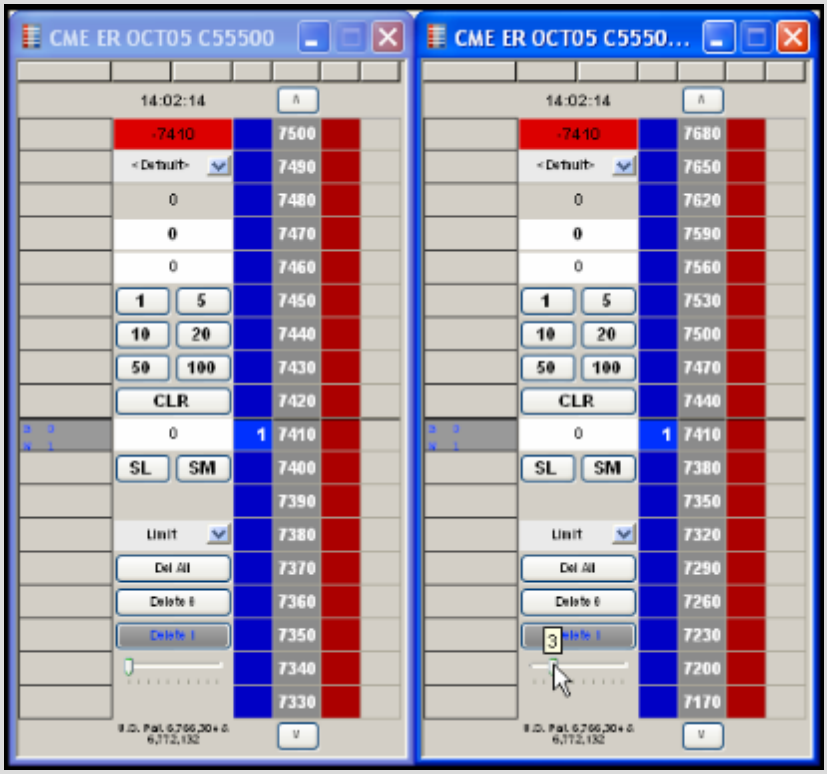
To consolidate your prices:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **MD Display** tab.
4. In the **Price Consolidation** section, type in the **# Prices per line** and **Offset**.
5. If you want to see the slider, click the **Show Slider Control Increment** and type in how many ticks each increment stands for.
6. To set for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as default**.
7. Click **OK**.

You successfully consolidated your prices.

Example:

The right **MD Trader** window in the following screen shot displays a consolidated price with the increment moved to 3.

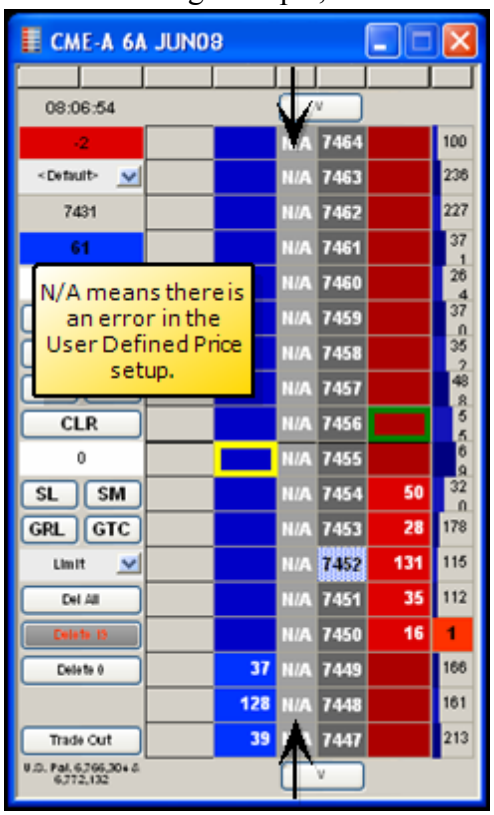


Note: MD Trader is protected by U.S. Patents Numbers 6,766,304 and 6,772,132.

Creating a User-Defined Price Column

You can create a User-Defined Price (UDP) column in MD Trader using the **MD Advanced** tab. This column appears to the left of the standard price column and can be set to show the **Net Change**, **Price As Yield**, **Yield-To-Maturity**, or a custom pricing model for a given contract.

In the following example, the Net Change is shown in decimals.



For help creating the User-Defined Price column, see the **MD Advanced Tab** on page 138.

Note: When you enable both **Price Consolidation** (on the **MD Display** tab) and the **Enable User-Defined Price Column** (on the **MD Advanced** tab), the prices consolidate first. The consolidated price is then used to perform any calculations.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Invalid Calculations in the UDP

Because the **Display Yield-To-Maturity** setting is based on an algorithm, N/A values can appear in the User-Defined Price column. This occurs when you set inaccurate values in the property's parameters for a given contract.

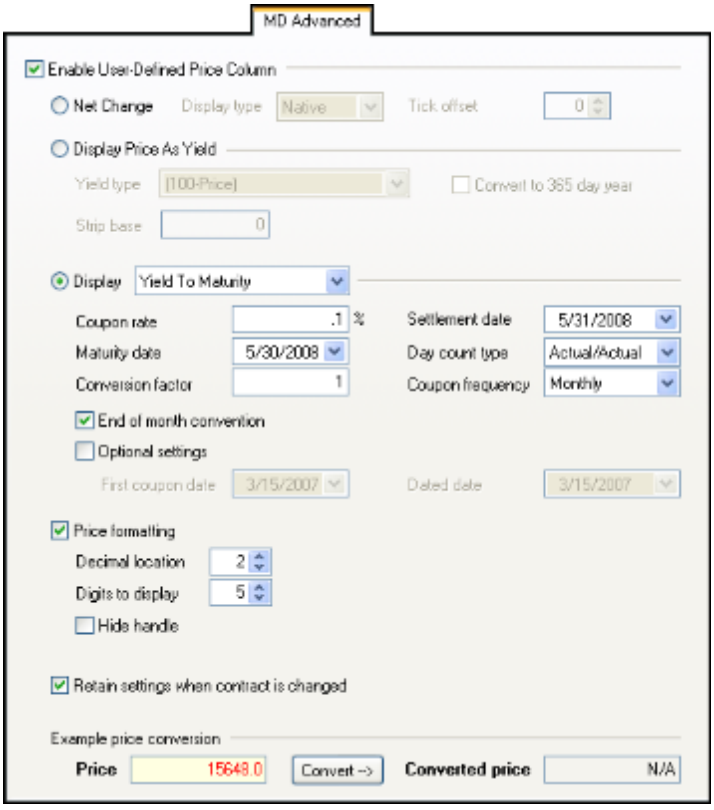


Fig 1. MD Advanced tab

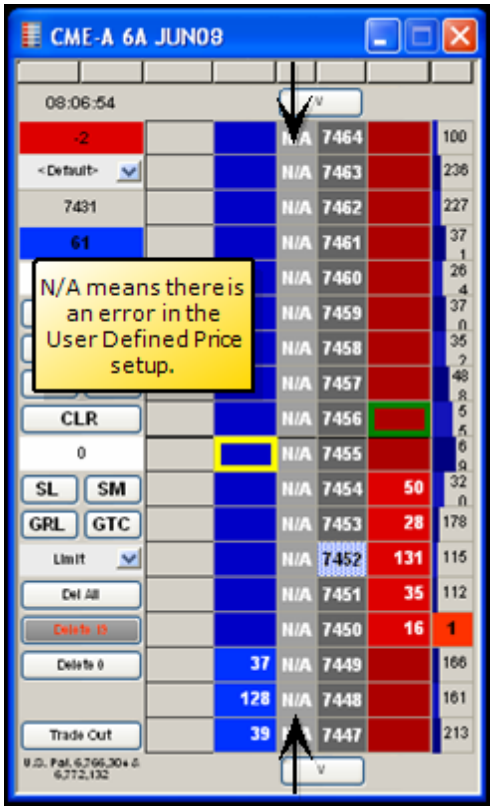


Fig. 2 New User-Defined Price Column

Displaying a Small MD Trader

Follow these procedures to display a smaller MD Trader.

- Displaying a small MD Trader using the **Properties** menu
- Displaying a small MD Trader using the context menu

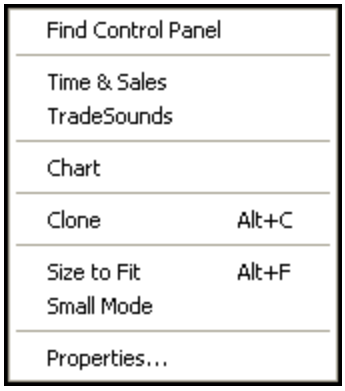
To display a small MD Trader using the Properties menu:

1. Right-click MD Trader and click **Properties**.
2. Click the **MD Display** tab.
3. Click to select the **Use Small MD Trader as Default** option.
4. To set this property for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully displayed a small MD Trader.

To display a small MD Trader using the context menu:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click to access the context menu.



3. Click **Small Mode**.

You successfully displayed a small MD Trader.

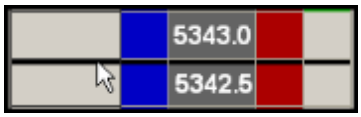
Titlebar Buttons

The **Zoom** and **Market Explorer** buttons do not automatically display in this smaller version of the window. This lets you view the product and contract in the MD Trader titlebar. If you want to view the titlebar buttons, go to the **MD Display** tab on the **Properties** menu and disable the **Hide Titlebar Buttons** property. Alternatively, you can use the **Show/Hide Titlebar Buttons** option on the context menu to show or hide the titlebar buttons for that particular MD Trader.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Displaying the Mid-Point of Inside Market

To make it easier to identify the mid-point of the inside market, MD Trader places a bold line across the width of its grid (see the cursor below).



Here are some rules for mid-point placement:

- The mid-point line appears midway between the best bid and best offer in the market.
- If there is a one-sided market the mid-point line appears directly above or below the best bid or offer in the market, respectively.
- If there is no market, then the line appears at the last trade price.
- If the number of price rows (or ticks) between the best bid and best offer is an odd number, then the mid-point line appears in the upper cell of the middle value.
- If the number of price rows is an even value (or zero), then the mid-point appears between the middle values.

To display the mid-point of the inside market:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **MD Display** tab.
4. Click to select the **Highlight Midpoint of Last Recenter** option.
5. To set for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
6. Click **OK**.

You successfully displayed the mid-point of the inside market.

Keeping MD Trader on Top

MD Trader has a property in the **MD Display** tab that serves to keep the MD Trader always on top of other X_TRADER windows on the desktop.

To enable the on top feature:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. Click the **MD Display** tab.
4. Click to select the **Keep MD Trader on Top** option.
5. To set for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
6. Click **OK**.

You successfully enabled the on top feature.

One-Click Trading with MD Trader

MD Trader lets you buy or sell products using one click of the mouse. It offers a trader the ability to one-click trade across the depth of a market for either a buy or sell order. The grid format dynamically displays the market depth for a given product, and lets you enter orders quickly by simply clicking in specific cells of the grid.

Follow these procedures to use one-click trading with MD Trader:

- Setting one-click trading
- Using one-click trading with MD Trader

To set one-click trading:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. In the **Order Parameter** section, enter a Maximum Order Quantity.
4. To set this property for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully set one-click trading.

To use one-click trading with MD Trader:

1. Set one-click trading.
2. Open MD Trader.
3. Select a customer profile.
4. Enter an order quantity.
5. Refer to the tables below to perform one-click trading:

   Left-click in the Buy or Ask columns

   Immediately sends a buy or sell order to the market. The quantity field dictates the quantity for the order. The row you click dictates the price.

To...	Left-click...	Market Result...
Buy	The **Buy** column.	If the cell does not have bid quantities and the adjacent **Sell** column has offer quantities, you are lifting the ask. If the cell has bid quantities, you are joining the bid.
Sell	The **Sell** column.	If the cell does not have offer quantities and the adjacent **Buy** column has bid quantities, you are hitting the bid. If the cell has offer quantities, you are joining offer.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Right-click in the Buy or Ask columns

Immediately sends a sweeping buy or sell order to the market. The row you click dictates the price.

To...	Right-click...	Market Result...
Buy	The **Buy** column.	Sends in a buy for as many contracts as exist from the best ask price up to that price level.
Sell	The **Sell** column.	Sends in a sell for as many contracts as exist from the best bid price down to that price level.

If you right-click a cell populated with either a bid or offer, no orders are placed.

You successfully used one-click trading with MD Trader.

Placing Stop Orders

MD Trader supports the Stop Market and Limit order types. In the case of the Stop Limit order, you also set the number of ticks from the stop entry price. Enable Stop orders in the **MD Trading** tab.

Follow these procedures to place Stop orders in MD Trader:

- Enabling the Stop Market feature
- Enabling the Stop Limit feature
- Setting a Stop Market Order
- Setting a Stop Limit Order

To enable the Stop Market feature:

1. Right-click in the **MD Trader** window to open the context menu and click **Properties**.
2. Click the **MD Trading** tab.
3. In the **Enable Order Types** section, click to select the **Stop Market Orders** option.
4. To set for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
5. Click **OK** to return to MD Trader.

   A button labeled **SM** appears in MD Trader.

You successfully enabled the Stop Market feature.

To enable the Stop Limit feature:

1. To enable the Stop Limit feature locally, right-click in the **MD Trader** window to open the context menu and click **Properties**.
2. Click the **MD Trading** tab.
3. In the **Enable Order Types** section, click to select the **Stop Limit Orders** option.
4. If you want to set the stop limit price a set number of ticks from the stop entry price, type the number of ticks in the **Set Stop Limit Price** field.
5. To set for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** window, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
6. Click **OK** to return to MD Trader.

   A button labeled **SL** appears on MD Trader.

You successfully enabled the Stop Limit feature.

To set a stop market order:

1. Select a quantity to go into the market.
2. Click the **SM** button in MD Trader.

   The cursor and **SL** button turns yellow.

3. Move the yellow cursor to the price **Buy** or **Sell** column opposite the tick value where you want to put the stop.
4. Click the mouse button.

   The stop is placed and indicated in the **Working Quantity** column as a stop.

You successfully set a stop market order.

To set a stop limit order:

1. Select a quantity to go into the market.
2. Click the **SL** button in MD Trader.

   The cursor and **SL** button turns yellow.

3. Move the yellow cursor to the price **Buy** or **Sell** column opposite the tick value where you want to put the stop.
4. Click the mouse button.

   The stop is placed and indicated in the **Working Quantity** column as a stop.

You successfully set a stop limit order.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Setting the Maximum Trade Quantity

In MD Trader you must set a value in the **Maximum order quantity** property on the **MD Trading** tab before you trade. This quantity prevents you from entering an order larger than your limit. For example, if the maximum trade quantity is 50, you are not permitted to sweep the market with an order quantity of 300.

Note: The following are exceptions to the maximum trade quantity setting:

- Enabling TradeOut
- Restrictions established by Guardian

To set the maximum trade quantity:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. In the **Order Parameter** section, type a maximum order quantity.
4. To set this property for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully set the maximum trade quantity.

Trading Out of a Position

The Trade Out feature lets you flatten your position. Before MD Trader submits an offsetting order, it sends delete requests for all working orders for that contract. You need to send a second tradeout request if an existing working order fills. You can trade out of a position using a Limit order or a Market order.

If you choose to trade out using a Limit order, MD Trader determines your position (long or short) and calculates the ticks to skew off the inside market price at which your position is flattened. If long, it evaluates the bid price. If short, it evaluates the ask price.

Assigning a specific number of ticks to skew ensures your order, once entered, (not necessarily executed) is only a pre-determined distance from the inside market. When you click the **TradeOut** button, you enter a Limit order based on the current price. If the market moves and the offsetting price is not available, your limit order remains working at the price you entered it.

Follow these procedures to trade out of a position:

- Setting the Tradeout method locally
- Trading out of a position using the mouse
- Trading out of a position using the keyboard

To set the Tradeout method:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. In the **TradeOut Method** section, choose your trade out method:
   - Using LIMIT Order <n#> of ticks to skew
   - Using MARKET Order
4. Click the **MD Display** tab.
5. Click to select the **Show TradeOut** button.

   The **TradeOut** button automatically displays in MD Trader.
6. To set this property for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
7. Click **OK**.

You successfully set the Tradeout method.

To trade out of a position using your mouse:

1. Set your Tradeout method locally or globally.
2. Click the **TradeOut** button in MD Trader.

   Before sending the offsetting order, MD Trader sends delete requests for all working orders for that contract. MD Trader then sends an order that allows you to exit from your position regardless of your credit limit.

You successfully traded out of a position using the mouse.

To trade out of a position using the keyboard:

1. Set your tradeout method locally or globally.
2. Press the `Shift+T` key.

   Before sending the offsetting order, MD Trader sends delete requests for all working orders for that contract. MD Trader then sends an order that allows you to exit from your position regardless of your credit limit.

You successfully traded out of a position using the keyboard.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

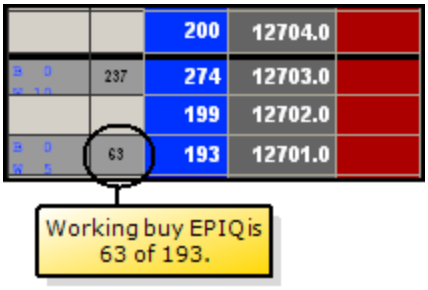
Viewing your Estimated Position in Queue

You can view your Estimated Position in Queue (EPIQ) in MD Trader and the Market Grid. EPIQ estimates how many contracts are in front of your order at any given price.

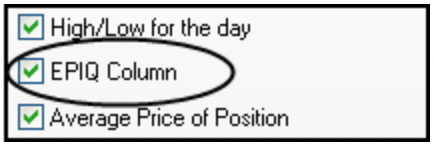
- If your EPIQ is 10, there are approximately 10 contracts ahead of your order.
- If 3 contracts trade, your EPIQ changes to 7.
- If your EPIQ is 0, your order should be the next to fill.

Note: EPIQ is not sent from the exchanges. X_TRADER calculates an EPIQ based on quantity of trades occurring in front of the order, and does not account for cancelled orders nor pro-rata allocations.

MD Trader



In MD Trader the EPIQ is a set of columns to the left of the buy quantities.



To display the EPIQ, click to select the property on the **MD Display** tab.

Color Codes

In MD Trader, the EPIQ number is color-coded to give you even more information about your order.

- By default your EPIQ number is black.
- If your order is the inside market, the color turns white.
- If your order is the first in the queue, the color turns yellow.

You can configure EPIQ colors on the **MD Color** tab.

Customizing MD Trader

To customize MD Trader, perform these procedures:

- Adding Sound
- Adding Time and Sales
- Customizing the Default Quantity Buttons
- Managing Links
- Moving Grid Columns
- Resizing the MD Trader Grid
- Zooming In and Out

Adding Sound to MD Trader

If your computer is equipped with a sound card and speakers, you can set MD Trader to make sounds. There are two property windows that control the sounds you can use:

- The **Sounds** tab
- The **TradeSounds** dialog box

The **Sounds** tab controls what you hear when you left or right-click. These sounds are heard when you click on the following columns:

- Buy Side
- Sell Side
- Working Quantity
- Last Traded Quantity

Other sounds associated with X_TRADER are also set on the **Sounds** tab.

The **TradeSounds** dialog box controls what you hear when trade updates come from an exchange. They are completely configurable and can be set for up to five quantity levels.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

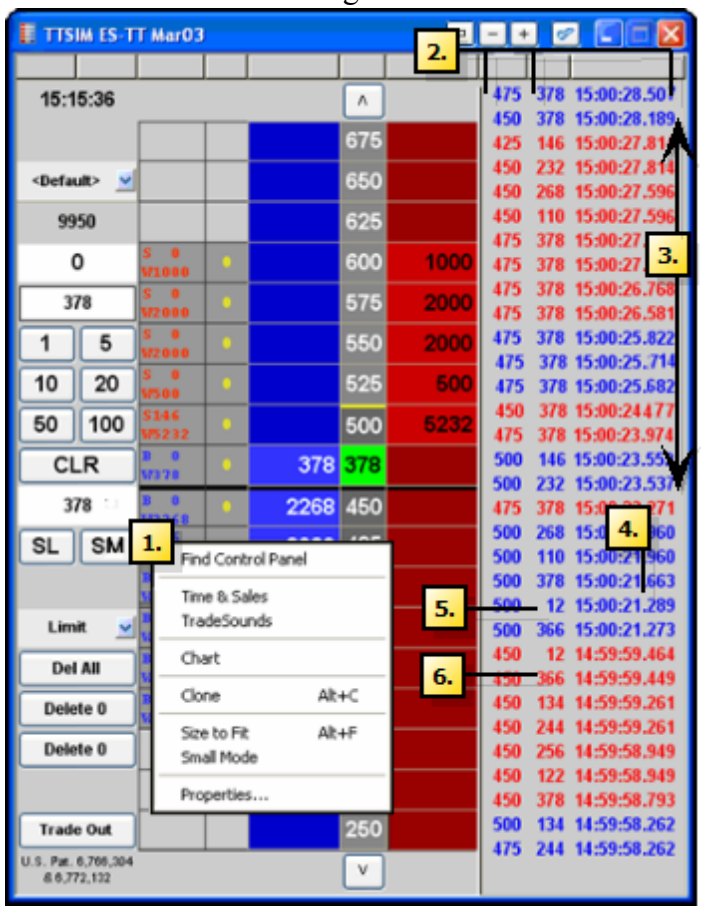
Adding Time and Sales

You can add a time and sales pane to MD Trader to show the price, quantity and time of the latest trades. Initially, when you add time and sales, the pane is blank. However, as trades occur, the pane begins to scroll like the **Time and Sales** window, with the most recent trades at the top.

Note: The time and sales pane is not available for display in Autospreader.

Follow these procedures to use time and sales in MD Trader:

- Adding time and sales to MD Trader
- Showing the time column
- Removing time and sales from MD Trader
- Moving the time and sales columns



1. To show time and sales, select **Time & Sales** from the context menu.
2. The time and sales pane shows: price, quantity and time in that order.
3. The time column is initially hidden. (Right-click to **Show/Hide columns**.)
4. Time is to the millisecond. (hh:mm:ss.mmm)
5. Blue text means the ask was lifted.
6. Red text means the bid was hit.

To add time and sales to MD Trader:

1. Right-click an open **MD Trader** window.
2. Click **Time & Sales**.

You successfully added time and sales to MD Trader.

To show the Time column:

1. Right-click the time and sales pane and click **Select Columns**.
2. Click to select the **Time** column.
3. Click **OK**.

You successfully shown the **Time** column.

To remove time and sales from MD Trader:

Right-click an open **MD Trader** window and deselect **Time & Sales**.

- or -

Right-click the Time and Sales pane and click **Close**.

You successfully removed time and sales from MD Trader.

To move the time and sales column:

Note: You cannot rearrange the order of the time and sales columns (price, quantity, time).

1. Click and hold a time and sales column header.
2. Drag the column header to either the left or right side of the **MD Trader** window.
3. Release the mouse button.

You successfully moved the time and sales column.

Customizing the Default Quantity Buttons in MD Trader

You can customize the preset order quantity buttons in MD Trader. These buttons are stored as part of a workspace.

To define a custom preset order quantity:

1. Right-click the **Preset Order Quantity** button.
2. Type a value using the keyboard.
3. Press `Enter`.

You successfully defined a custom preset order quantity.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Managing Links in MD Trader

You can paste data from an Excel spreadsheet into the indicator columns in MD Trader. When a price matches the pasted value in an indicator column, a marker appears next to this price value.

Using this method, you can indicate price points based on a proprietary algorithm. For example, you can paste the Last Traded Price for a product from X_TRADER to a spreadsheet with a proprietary formula. After the formula produces a new price value, you can paste that value into the indicator columns in MD Trader. This can help you make buy and sell decisions.

Links are retained if you hide the indicator columns. They also save with your workspaces.

Tip: Shade your cell in Excel so you can better see the results in MD Trader. This is very useful when using the laser line feature.

Follow these procedures to manage links in MD Trader:

- Displaying the indicator columns
- Pasting a link from Excel into MD Trader
- Deleting a link from MD Trader

To display the indicator columns:

1. Right-click MD Trader to open the context menu and click **Properties**.
2. Click the **MD Display** tab.
3. In the **Bid/Ask display** section, click to select **Bid indicator column** and **Ask indicator column**.
4. To set for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully displayed the indicator columns.

To paste a link from Excel into MD Trader:

1. In Excel, right-click the cell you wish to copy.
2. Click **Copy**.
3. Right-click in MD Trader to access the context menu.
   The context menu appears.
4. Click **Paste Link**.
   An indicator appears opposite the price level of the pasted value.

You successfully pasted a link from Excel into MD Trader.

To delete a link from MD Trader:

1. Right-click in MD Trader to access the context menu.
2. Click **Delete Link**.
   The indicator is removed.

You successfully deleted a link from MD Trader.

Using the Laser Line

When you paste a link from Excel into MD Trader, the indicator columns shade the color of the cell in Excel. This shade indicates the approximate value of the link in relation to the MD Trader **Price** column.

This functionality still exists, however it has been enhanced.

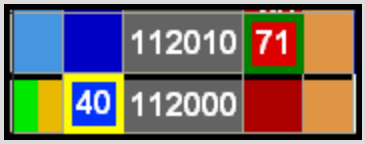
Now, when you have the indicator columns hidden, and you paste a link from Excel, a laser line appears over the number in the **Price** column to indicate a realistic approximation of the value of the link created in Excel.

Example:

In Excel we have two formulas saved. The values of which have the following attributes:

- A green shaded cell has a value of 112007
- An orange shaded cell has a value of 112003

With the indicator columns shown, you paste the respective links in MD Trader, and get a green and orange shaded cell indicating values in Excel rounding down closest to 112000 in the MD Trader **Price** column.



- or -

You hide the indicator columns, paste the respective links in MD Trader, and the laser lines give direct indications of where the values in Excel are in relation to the MD Trader **Price** column.

To use the laser line indicator:

1. Create your formula or value in Excel.
2. In Excel, click the **Format** menu and choose **Cells**.
3. Click the **Pattern** tab.
4. Click the color you want to shade the cell and click **OK**.
5. Right-click the shaded cell and click **Copy**.
6. In MD Trader, if the indicator columns are shown, go to the next step.

   - or -

   In MD Trader, if the indicator columns are not shown, go Step 11.
7. Right-click MD Trader and click **Properties**.
8. Click the **MD Display** tab.
9. Click to de-select **Bid indicator column** and **Ask indicator column**.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Right-click MD Trader and click **Paste Link**.

You successfully used the laser line indicator.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Moving Grid Columns

You can drag-and-drop the columns in MD Trader to a different locations in the grid.

To drag and drop columns to a different location in MD Trader:

1. Click the top of the column you want to move.
   A box outline appears beneath the mouse pointer.
2. Click a second time and hold the mouse button on the column you want to move.
3. Move the column left or right to the desired position.
   A red line indicates where the column is moving.
4. Release the mouse button.
   The column moves to its new location.

You successfully moved columns to a different location in MD Trader.

Resizing the MD Trader Window

If you make MD Trader a smaller size using the mouse, it does not display a horizontal scroll bar and your view of the depth is cut off on the right side.

Follow these procedures to resize MD Trader and maintain full view of the depth:

- Resizing MD Trader to fit the window
- Resizing the window to fit MD Trader

To resize the window to fit MD Trader:

Right-click MD Trader to access the context menu and click **Size to Fit**.

MD Trader expands to the proper size and removes the scroll bars.

You successfully resized the grid in MD Trader.

Using the Mouse to Control the Zoom Feature

To control the zoom using the mouse wheel:

1. Hold down the `Ctrl` key on the keyboard.
2. Depress and use the mouse wheel to zoom MD Trader in or out.
3. Release the `Ctrl` key to freeze the view in its current position.

You successfully controlled the zoom.

Keyboard Trading in MD Trader

In addition to click-trading in MD Trader using a mouse, you can use the keyboard to make trades. Enabling keyboard trading provides an alternative for entering orders and does not disable the mouse.

Follow these procedures to manage keyboard trading:

- Enabling Keyboard Trading
- Changing Hotkeys for MD Trader

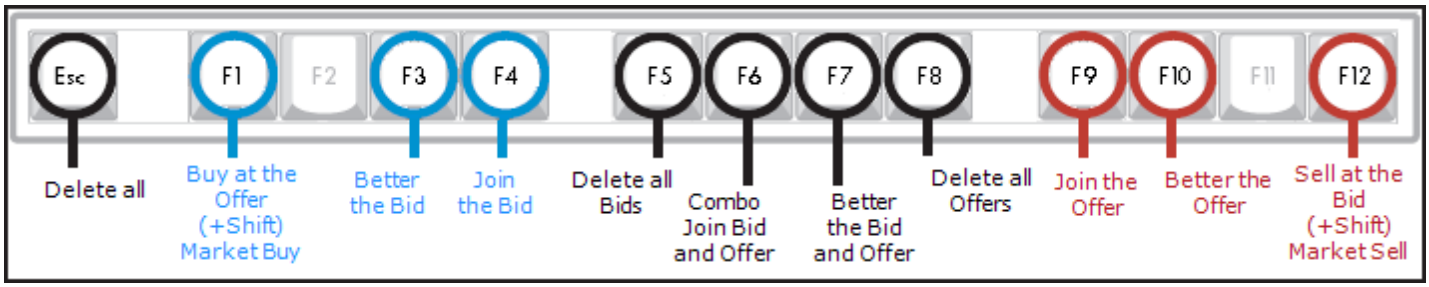
The keyboard hotkeys in MD Trader break into two categories:

- Function Hotkeys
- Main Hotkeys

Function Hotkeys

The function hotkeys consist of the `Esc` and `F` keys at the top of your keyboard.

TT Default Map



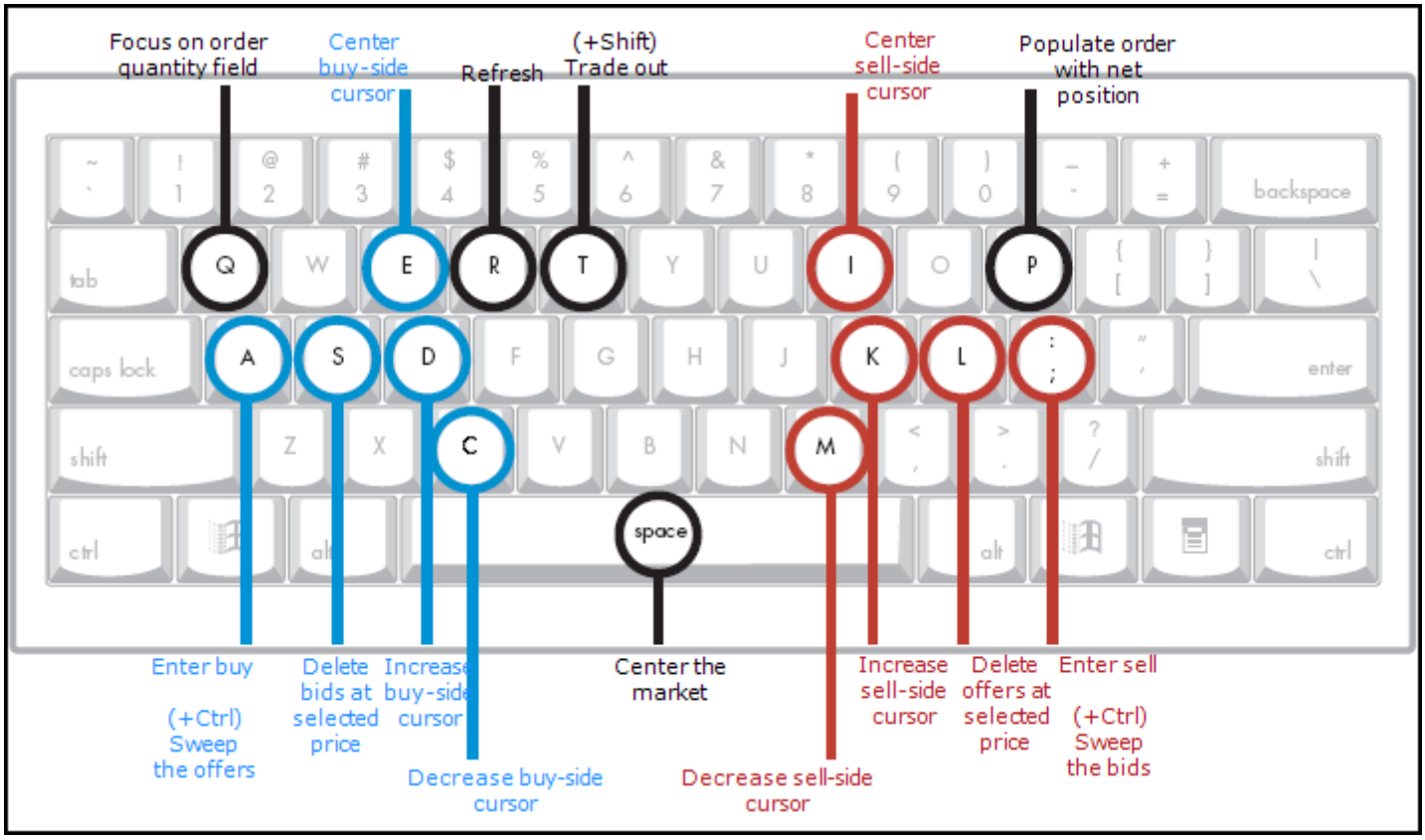
Hotkey	Command	Description
F1	Buy at the Offer	Enter buy order at best offer
Shift+F1	Market Buy	Enter market buy order
F3	Better the Bid	Enter buy order one tick above the best bid
F4	Join the Bid	Enter buy order at best bid
Esc	Delete All	Delete all working orders
F5	Delete All Bids	Delete all bids
F6	Combo Join Bid and Offer	Enter both a buy order at best bid and a sell order at best offer
F7	Better the Bid and Offer	Enter a buy order one tick above the best bid and a sell order one tick below the best offer
F8	Delete All Offers	Delete all offers
F9	Join the Offer	Enter sell order at best offer
F10	Better the Offer	Enter sell order one tick below the best offer
F12	Sell at the Bid	Enter sell order at best bid
Shift+F12	Market Sell	Enter market sell order

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Main Hotkeys

The main hotkeys are in the body of your keyboard.

TT Default Map



Hotkey	Command	Description
A	Buy at Buy-Side Cursor	Enter buy order at price of buy-side cursor
S	Delete Bid(s) at Buy-Side Cursor	Delete the working order(s) at price of buy-side cursor
Ctrl+A	Sweep Offers up to Buy-Side Cursor	Enter buy order(s) to sweep the market from inside market up to price of buy-side cursor
D	Increase Buy-Side Cursor	Increase cursor one price level
C	Decrease Buy-Side Cursor	Decrease cursor one price level
E	Center Buy-Side Cursor	Move buy-side cursor to best bid price; if no bids, move cursor to center of grid
Q	Bring Focus to Order Quantity Field	Apply focus to the Order Quantity field
P	Load Net Position in Order Quantity Field	Load the current net position into the Order Quantity field
Spacebar	Center the Market	Center the grid on the inside market
Shift+T	Trade Out	Delete all working bids and offers and enter orders to off-set position

Hotkey	Command	Description
;	Sell at Sell-Side Cursor	Enter sell order at price of sell-side cursor
L	Delete Sell(s) at Sell-Side Cursor	Delete the working order(s) at price of sell-side cursor
Ctrl+;	Sweep Bids Down to Sell-Side Cursor	Enter sell order(s) to sweep the market from inside market down to price of sell-side cursor
K	Increase Sell-Side Cursor	Increase cursor one price level
M	Decrease Sell-Side Cursor	Decrease cursor one price level
I	Center Sell-Side Cursor	Move sell-side cursor to best offer price; if no offers, move cursor to center of grid

Unrestricted Keyboard Functions

Certain keyboard functions can be used with or without enabling keyboard trading.

If you press a key specified below, MD Trader performs the related function:

If you press...	Then MD Trader...
A numeral key **Note**: This does not refer to the number keypad.	Enters the order quantity in the **Order Quantity** field.
The `P` key	Loads your current position in the **Order Quantity** field.
The `Spacebar`	Centers the grid.
The `up arrow`	Scrolls the grid up.
The `down arrow`	Scrolls the grid down.
The `Page Up` key	Pages up. You may no longer see available prices because it paged up too far.
The `Page Down` key	Pages down. You may no longer see available prices because it paged down too far.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Enabling Keyboard Trading in MD Trader

Keyboard trading is disabled by default.

Notes:

- You do not need to enable the keyboard to perform some functions in MD Trader. Refer to **Unrestricted Keyboard Functions** on page 281.
- For a map of MD Trader keyboard functions refer to **Keyboard Trading in MD Trader** on page 279.
- You can change the hotkey associated with mapped keys. Refer to **Changing Hotkeys in MD Trader** on page 283.

Follow these procedures to enable keyboard trading:

- Enabling keyboard trading using the local context menu
- Enabling keyboard trading from the global **Properties** menu

To enable keyboard trading using the local context menu:

1. Open MD Trader.
2. Right-click anywhere in MD Trader and click **Properties**.
3. Click to select the **Enable keyboard and function key trading** option.
4. To set this property for all subsequently opened **MD Trader** windows, click to select **Set as Global Default**.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully enabled keyboard trading using the local context menu.

To enable keyboard trading from the global Properties menu:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Hotkeys** tab.
3. In the **Component** section, click to select **MD Trader**.
4. Click **OK**.

You successfully enabled keyboard trading from the global **Properties** menu.

Changing Hotkeys in MD Trader

You can change the hotkeys associated with commands in MD Trader using the **Hotkeys** tab on the **Properties** menu.

Note: You must enable keyboard trading to use the hotkey commands.

To change a hotkey:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Hotkeys** tab.
3. In the Keyboard Layout field, click to select **Custom**.
4. In the **Component** section, click **MD Trader**.
5. In the **Command** section, click the command for which you would like to change the hotkey.
6. Click in the **Press new shortcut key** field.
7. Type your new hotkey.
8. Click **Assign**.

   If the hotkey is already assigned to a different command, you are prompted.

You successfully changed a hotkey.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Keyboard Procedures

Use the following procedures to trade using the keyboard in MD Trader:

- Entering a Buy Order
- Entering a Sell Order
- Entering the Order Quantity
- Deleting All Orders, Bids and Offers
- Centering the Market
- Loading the Net Position
- Sending a Market Order
- Setting the Limit Price
- Sweeping the Market
- Hitting the Bid
- Taking the Offer
- Dime the Offer
- Dime the Bid
- Join the Bid
- Join the Offer
- Combo Dime the Bid or Offer
- Combo Join the Bid and Offer

In addition, refer to **Keyboard Trading in MD Trader** on page 279 for a comprehensive keyboard maps and descriptions.

Entering a Buy Order Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can enter a buy order using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To enter a buy order:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the D and C keys to select the desired limit price.
3. Press the Q key to focus keyboard entry on the **Order Quantity** field.
4. Type in the desired quantity of the buy order on the keypad.
5. Press the A key to send the buy order.

You successfully entered a buy order.

Entering a Sell Order Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can enter a sell order using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To enter a sell order:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the `K` and `M` keys to select the desired limit price.
3. Press the `Q` key to focus keyboard entry on the **Order Quantity** field.
4. Type in the desired quantity of the sell order on the keypad.
5. Press the `;` key to send the sell order.

You successfully entered a sell order.

Enter the Order Quantity Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can enter the order quantity using the keyboard.

To enter an order quantity into the Order Quantity field of MD Trader:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press a numeric key on the keyboard.

   A cursor appears in the **Order Quantity** field.
3. Type the desired quantity.
4. Press `Enter`.

You successfully entered the order quantity using the keyboard.

Deleting All Orders, Working Bids, or Working Offers Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can delete all orders, working bids, or working offers using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To Delete	Press
All orders	`Shift+Esc`
All working bids	`Shift+V`
All working offers	`Shift+N`

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Loading the Net Position in the Order Entry Field Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can load the net position in the **Order Entry** field using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To load the Net Position in the Order Entry field:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the `P` key.

   The **Order Entry** field is populated with the net position (in order to go flat in the market).

You successfully loaded the net position in the **Order Entry** field.

Sending a Market Order Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can enter a market order using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To send a market order:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the `Shift+F1` key.

   The only time in force supported is a Good Till Day (GTD) order, and the only order restriction you can use is Immediate or Cancel (IOC), available from the button in MD Trader. The quantity sold would be based on the amount in the order quantity field or on the preset default order quantity.

You successfully sent a market order.

Setting the Limit Price Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can set the limit price (position of the cursor) for either the buy or sell side with the following keys.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

Key	Action
`E`	Center buy side cursor
`D`	Increase buy side cursor
`C`	Decrease buy side cursor
`I`	Center sell side cursor
`K`	Increase sell side cursor
`M`	Decrease sell side cursor

Sweeping the Market Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can sweep all the buys or sells up to a point set by the buy or sell side cursor using the keys listed below. How deep you can sweep the market depends on the level of price depth set by the exchange.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To sweep the market up to a specified price point on the Buy side:

1. Use a combination of the `D` and `C` keys to set the position of the buy side cursor.
2. Use the combination of the `Ctrl` and `A` keys to sweep the offers up to the price level indicated by the buy side cursor.

You successfully swept the sells in the market up to a specified price point.

To sweep the market up to a specified price point on the Sell side:

1. Use a combination of the `K` and `M` keys to set the position of the sell side cursor.
2. Use the combination of the `Ctrl` and `:/;` keys to sweep the bids up to the price level indicated by the sell side cursor.

You successfully swept the sells in the market up to a specified price point.

Hitting the Bid Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can "hit the bid" using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To hit the Bid:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the `F12` key.

   MD Trader enters a sell order at the current best bid in the market. The quantity sold is based on the amount in the order quantity field or on the preset default order quantity.

You successfully hit the bid.

Taking the Offer Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can take the offer using the following actions:

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To take the offer:

Press the `F1` key.

MD Trader enters a buy order at the current best offer in the market. The quantity sold is based on the amount in the order quantity field or on the preset default order quantity.

You successfully took the offer.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Dime the Offer Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can dime the offer using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To dime the offer:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the F10 key.

   MD Trader enters a sell order one tick below the current best offers in the market.

You successfully dimed the offer.

Dime the Bid Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can dime the bid using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To dime the bid:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the F3 key.

   MD Trader enters a buy order one tick above the current best bid in the market.

You successfully dimed the bid.

Join the Bid Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can join the bid using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To join the bid:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the F4 key.

   MD Trader enters a buy order at the current best bid in the market. The quantity sold is based on the amount in the order quantity field or on the preset default order quantity.

You successfully joined the bid.

Join the Offer Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can join the offer using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

To join the offer:

1. Enable keyboard trading locally or globally.
2. Press the F9 key.

   MD Trader enters a sell order at the current best offer in the market. The quantity sold is based on the traders current position or on the preset default order quantity.

You successfully joined the offer.

Combo Dime the Bid or Offer Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can combo dime the bid and offer.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

Combo dime the bid or offer:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the F7 key.

   MD Trader enters a sell order one tick better than the current best offer in the market and a buy order is sent one tick better than the current best bid price in the market. The quantity sold is based on the amount in the order quantity field or on the preset default order quantity.

You successfully combo dimed the bid or offer.

Combo Join the Bid and Offer Using the Keyboard

In MD Trader once keyboard trading is enabled, you can combo join the bid and offer using the keyboard.

Note: You can change the hotkeys associated with these commands.

Combo join the bid and offer:

1. Enable keyboard trading.
2. Press the F6 key.

   MD Trader enters a sell order at the current best offer in the market and a buy order is sent at the current best bid price in the market. The quantity sold is based on the amount in the order quantity field or on the preset default order quantity.

You successfully combo joined the bid and offer.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Game Pad Control in MD Trader

It is possible with keyboard functionality enabled to use a game pad control, which emulates keyboard key presses. In effect, using a gamepad maps the buttons on the gamepad to specific key strokes on the keyboard which, in turn, are mapped to specific MD Trader functionality. The gamepad plugs into the keyboard port on the workstation.

Warning! Trading Technologies has tested gamepad functionality in connection with keyboard mapping using a product by Suncom. Trading Technologies will not provide instructions on how to set up the gamepad with a keyboard nor does the company support users who do attempt to use this add-on in their trading. Traders wanting to use this functionality are encouraged to contact the gamepad manufacturer for specific instructions on how to connect this add-on to their system.

CHAPTER 8

Order Types

Order types are different ways of telling X_TRADER how you want your order to interact with the market. Depending on your trading background, you might refer to order types as order restrictions or even time in force. For clarity, we categorize order types as follows:

Order Type	Description	Types
Time in force	Length of time your order works in the market.	• Good til Day (GTD) • Good til Cancel (GTC) • Good til Date (Date) • Good in Session (GIS)
Market and Limit	Standard order designations.	• Market • Limit
Stops	Orders with a stop price.	• Stop • Trailing Stop
Restrictions	Nearly all other order types.	• BLO • IOC • IT • FOK • OCO • MOO • MOC • MLM • MTL • LOO • LOC • Eurex Block Orders • Vola Orders
Liffe Wholesale	Order types used to place wholesale orders.	• Block • Basis • Against Actuals • Exchange For Swap • Flex Options

This chapter discusses order restrictions and stop orders. You manage their availability on the **Order Entry** tab and **MD Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.

Refer to **Wholesale Trading Types** on page 382 for more information on them.

Refer to **Order Entry Pane Field Descriptions** on page 172 for more information on time in force and the difference between Market and Limit orders.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Exchanges and Order Types

Each exchange determines how they support order types. The definition and use of the type may differ between exchanges and marketplaces.

If the exchange does not support the order type, the **Audit Trail** window displays an error message from the exchange. If the exchange does support the order type, the exchange handles the order execution. Letting the exchange execute the order type optimizes your order's speed to the market.

Refer to the *TT Gateway System Administration Manuals* for each exchange to find a list of supported order types.

Order Restriction Definitions

You can execute the following order type restrictions using the Market Grid or MD Trader:

- **Best Limit (BL)**: Joins the best bid or offer without the requirement of a price being entered. Available on TOCOM.
- **Block**: Trades a high-volume with a price agreed to by both parties outside of the normal exchange trading methods. Available on Eurex (Refer to **Eurex Block Order Overview** on page 218) and LIFFE (Refer to **Wholesale Trading Overview** on page 381).
- **Fill or Kill (FOK)**: Immediately fills the entire order or immediately cancels the entire order.
- **Iceberg**: Sends only a portion of the order quantity to the market at a time. Each order quantity is equal. When one portion fills, the next portion is sent until the entire order quantity fills.
- **If Touched (IT)**: If Touched (IT) orders enter the market a set number of ticks away from the inside market and are activated only after the market touches its price level.
- **Immediate or Cancel (IOC)**: Immediately fills the order to the extent possible and cancels the balance.
- **Limit on Close (LOC)**: Sends Limit orders during the closing auction of the current business day. Any portion not filled at the close cancels. (Currently available on TSE and OSE)
- **Limit on Open (LOO)**: Sets limit orders that only execute at the open. Any portion not filled at the open cancels. (Currently available on TSE and OSE)
- **Limit to Market (LTM)**: Sends Limit orders where any unfilled portion converts to a market order at the close. (Currently available on TSE and OSE)
- **Market Limit Market (MLM)**: MLM sets a buy order placed above the best offer to fill by the best offer, and a sell order placed below the best bid to fill by the best bid.
- **Market On Close (MOC)**: Sends Market orders during the closing auction of the current business day. Orders can be entered at any time during the trading day.
- **Market on Open (MOO)**: Sends Market orders during the pre-opening period, intended for execution at the opening market price.
- **Market To Limit (MTL)**: Sends a Market order with the condition that on a partial fill, the remaining quantity rests as a Limit order at the price that was just hit or taken. Available on TOCOM and SGX.

- **Minimum Volume (MV):** Sets the minimum order quantity that must be available in the market or the entire order cancels.
- **Order Cancels Order (OCO):** Sets two orders of the same quantity for the same contract at different price levels. When one order executes the other order cancels.

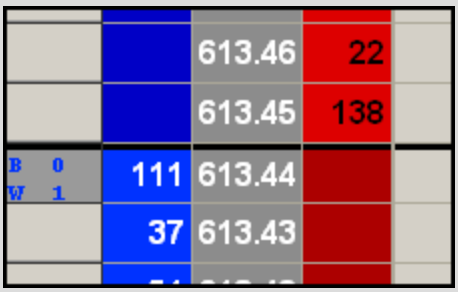
Note: OCO's are only available in MD Trader and the Order Book.

- **Stop**: Sets the Stop Price for both Market and Limit orders. X_TRADER supports both Stop Limit and Stop Market orders on all exchanges.
- **Trailing Stop (TStop):** Sets the Stop Price a fixed distance from the current market price and moves dynamically.
- **Volatility:** Volatility orders are separately agreed to by both parties and approved by Eurex.
- **Equity orders**: Indicates an exemption from short-sell notifications for some trading types. They are not supported by all markets.

Best Limit

Best Limit (BL) orders are similar to Market orders in that you enter them without a price. But, while Market orders aim to hit the bid or take the offer, a BL order lets you join the best bid or offer. BL order types are only available on TOCOM.

Example: Given the following market...



- If a 10 lot BL is entered on the Buy side, it enters the market at 613.44 (A 10 lot buy Market order would trade at 613.45).
- If a 10 lot BL entered on the Sell side, it enters the market at 613.45 (A 10 lot sell Market order would trade at 613.44).

You can submit BL orders through the Market Grid or MD Trader. In addition, BL orders can be sent in combination with the following Stop orders and with a specific Time in Force (TIF):

- BL-GTD
- BL-GTC
- BL-GTDate
- Stop-BL
- Stop-BL-GTD
- Stop-BL-GTC
- Stop BL-GTDate

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Iceberg

An Iceberg order executes a large order by splitting the order into smaller disclosed quantity orders. When one disclosed quantity order is filled, the next disclosed quantity order is sent until the entire order quantity fills.

Characteristics

Characteristics of an Iceberg order include:

- They are Limit orders.
- Each disclosed quantity is equal.
- You set the disclosed quantity as a number or as a percentage of the order.

  Note: In MD Trader, you set the disclosed quantity as a number.
- Iceberg orders can only be Limit orders.

Deleting

If you delete an Iceberg order, working disclosed quantity orders also delete. If a working disclosed quantity order deletes, any partially filled order deletes as well.

Rounding

For products that trade in round lots, if the calculated disclosed quantity results in an odd lot, it rounds up to the closest round lot. Also, when using a percentage of the total order, an Iceberg order may result in fractional lots. If this occurs, X_TRADER executes your order according to the following rules:

- If the order is n<1, it rounds up to 1.
- If the order is <n.5, it rounds down.
- If the order is >n.5, it rounds up.

Procedure

Follow this procedure to place Iceberg orders:

To place an Iceberg order:

1. If you have a specific customer account you want to trade for, select it now.

   Note: You can setup customer profiles, or use the <Default> profile to trade with.

2. From the Market Grid, click in the appropriate expiration/strike row on the bid or ask side of the screen.

   If you click the **BidQty** or **AskQty** cells, the **Quantity** and **Price** fields display the current quantity and price information. The contract information appears in the **Order Summary** field.

   - or -

   If you click the **BidPrc** or **AskPrc**, or **LastPrc** cells, the **Price** field displays the current price, but the **Quantity** field remains zero (0). The contract information appears in the **Order Summary** field.

3. Modify order information if necessary.
4. Click the **Order Restriction** menu and select **Iceberg**.

   The **Disclose** field appears.

5. Click **Disclose**.
6. Click **Qty** or **Percentage**.
7. Set the quantity as a number or as a percentage of total order.

   Note: If you select a percentage to disclose and then modify the order quantity, the disclosed percentage remains the same while the disclosed quantity adjusts to reflect the percentage of the new order quantity.

   Example:You enter an Iceberg order with quantity of 10. The disclosed quantity is 10% of the total order. Therefore, the disclosed quantity calculates as 1. If you change the order quantity to 20, the percentages stay at 10% and the disclosed quantity adjusts to 2.

8. To execute, click Buy or Sell.

You successfully placed an Iceberg order.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

If Touched

If Touched (IT) orders enter the market at a certain price or a set number of ticks away from the inside market. If the market touches the price level on the order (it does not have to trade through the price), the order is activated. If Touched can be:

- Limit IT (LIT)
- Market IT (MIT)
- Market to Limit IT (MTL-IT; Available on TOCOM and SGX)

Notes:

- Since IT orders are synthetic, their use is restricted to exchanges that natively support them.
- Since TOCOM does not send a last traded price for spreads, you can not enter IT orders in spreads when trading TOCOM.

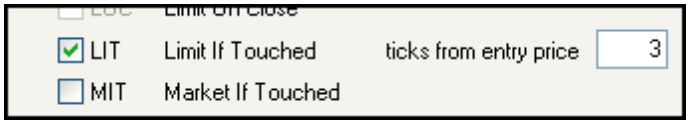
Market Grid

In the Market Grid, you set IT orders on the Order Pane and designate a price the market must touch in order to send your order. You can also set further restrictions (such as Limit, Market, or Market to Limit), and Time in Force (such as GTD).

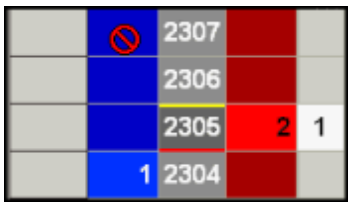
Note: If you are sending a Limit IT order, you must enter a price.

MD Trader

In MD Trader, you set LIT or MIT orders from the **MD Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu and designate a set number of ticks away from the inside market that your order will rest until touched.



In MD Trader you must enter Buy IT orders below the current inside market and Sell IT orders above the current inside market. If you try to enter an IT order incorrectly, a red a circle with a slash through it appears.



Market

A Market order is an order placed without a price with the intention of hitting the best Bid or taking the best Offer currently available in the market.

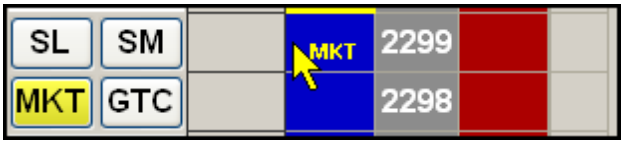
Note: Support of Market orders varies by exchange.

Market Grid

In the Market Grid, you set Market orders on the Order Pane. Once selected, the price field grays out.

MD Trader

In MD Trader, you set Market from the **MD Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu. Like all order types in MD Trader, you can set MKT as an order button. Clicking anywhere in the Buy or Sell column sends an order to immediately fill.



Market On Open (MOO)

An MOO order sends Market orders during the pre-opening period, intended for execution at the opening market price. This order type is not available through MD Trader.

Because the order is intended to execute at opening market prices:

- MOO orders must be Market orders and cannot be Limit orders.
- You can only specify a quantity, not a price.

To place a Market On Open order:

1. From the Market Grid, click the contract you wish to trade.
2. In the **Order Type** field, click to select **MOO**.
   The **Price** field becomes unavailable.
3. Specify the quantity.
4. Click **Buy** or **Sell**.

You successfully placed a Market On Open order.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Market On Close (MOC)

A Market On Close order sends Market orders during the closing auction of the current business day. Orders can be entered at any time during the trading day.

Because the order is intended to execute at the closing for the day:

- MOC orders must be Market orders and cannot be Limit orders.
- You can only specify a quantity, not a price.

To place a Market On Close order:

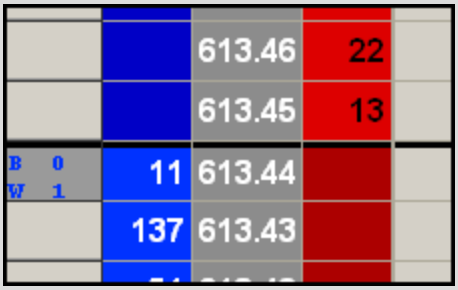
1. From the Market Grid, click the contract you wish to trade.
2. In the **Order Type** field, click to select **MOC**.
   The **Price** field becomes unavailable.
3. Specify the quantity.
4. Click **Buy** or **Sell**.

You successfully placed a Market On Close order.

Market to Limit

Market to Limit (MTL) orders send a Market order with the condition that on a partial fill, the remaining quantity rests as a Limit order at the price that was just hit or taken. Available on TOCOM and SGX.

Example: Given the following market...



- If a 15 lot MTL is entered on the Buy side, it fills 13 @ 613.45. The remaining 2 lot rests as a Limit order @ 613.45.
- If a 15 lot MTL is entered on the Sell side, it fills 11 @ 613.44. The remaining 4 lot rests as a Limit order @ 613.44.

You can submit MTL orders through the Market Grid or MD Trader. In addition, MTL orders can be sent in combination with the following order types and with a specific Time in Force:

Order Type combination	MD Trader	Market Grid
MTL-GTD	x	x
MTL-GTC	x	x
MTL-GTDate	x	x
MTL-FOK	x	x
MTL-IOC	x	x
MTL-IT-GTC		x
MTL-IT-GTD		x
MTL-IT-GTDate		x
Stop-MTL-GTD		x
Stop-MTL-GTC		x
Stop-MTL-GTDate		x

Note: SGX also includes: MTL-MOO and MTL-MOC

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Minimum Volume

A Minimum Volume (MV) order sets the minimum acceptable order quantity to be met or the entire order cancels.

Example:You want to trade 100 lots with a minimum volume of 25 lots. If at least 25 lots cannot be executed, the entire order is canceled.

The Minimum Volume order type is not supported by all exchanges. (e.g., EUREX does not support.)

To place a Minimum Volume order:

1. From the Market Grid, click the contract you wish to trade.
2. In the **Order Type** field, click to select **MV**.

   The **Min Vol** field appears.
3. Type the minimum volume.

   Note: You cannot send an order with a minimum volume greater than the order quantity.
4. Click **Buy** or **Sell**.

You successfully placed a Minimum Volume order.

Order Cancels Order

An Order Cancels Order (OCO) order sets two orders of the same quantity for the same contract at different price levels. When one order executes the other order cancels. You can use the OCO order type in MD Trader and the Order Book.

Notes:

- You cannot use OCO's in the Market Grid.
- If your OCO gets partially filled, the second order reduces by the quantity filled in the first order.
- OCO orders need X_TRADER open to work. They are removed from the market if you shutdown.

Cursor Changes

When connecting two orders in an OCO relationship, your cursor turns orange to match the OCO button. In addition, the initials of the order type appear under your cursor: **LIM** (Limit), **SL** (Stop Limit), **SM** (Stop Market).

Strategy Types

When you select OCO from the MD Trading tab, you select the strategy your OCO orders follow. Strategies are designed to accomplish specific goals. A Bracket applied to a current Long position is intended to exit the position at either a profit or a protective stop. Hence both orders must be Sell orders.

- **Bracket**: First OCO order is Limit. Second OCO order is Stop Limit or Stop Market. Both orders must be on same side of market. (i.e., 2 Buys or 2 Sells)
- **Breakout**: Both OCO orders can be Stop Limit or Stop Market. Both orders must be on opposite sides of market. (i.e., 1 Buy and 1 Sell)
- **Custom**: Both OCO orders can be Limit, Stop Limit or Stop Market. No restrictions other than check for invalid price levels by order type.

Order Book Additions

To support OCOs, Link Type and Link ID columns exist in the Order Book.

- **Link Type** shows all orders that are OCOs.
- **Link ID** gives the OCO a unique identifier. So you can tell which two orders are linked together.

Note: When you create an OCO on a contract that matches the native OCO parameters (Limit and Stop Market), X_TRADER will send one order as the native OCO. Native OCOs appear in the Order Book as a single order with the Limit price, the Stop price, and the OCO tag in the **Rstr** column.

Invalid OCO Price Levels

When you position the cursor over an invalid price level, a circle with a slash through it appears. This occurrence depends on the order type you are using.

Example: Placing a Limit order at any price level which results in an immediate fill (like buying above the inside offer or selling below the inside bid) is invalid.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Placing OCO Orders

Follow these procedures to place OCO Orders:

- Creating OCO orders in MD Trader
- Creating OCO orders in the Order Book

To create OCO orders in the Order Book:

1. Click to select the first order.
2. Hold the `Ctrl` key and click to select the second order.
3. Right-click and click **Link As OCO**.

   The orders are given an OCO **Link Type** and a **Link ID**. The orders are also color-coded to indicate their OCO relationship.

You successfully created OCO orders in the Order Book.

To create OCO orders in MD Trader:

1. In the **Properties** menu, click the **MD Trading** tab.
2. In the **Enable Order Types** section, click to select **OCO**.
3. In the adjacent field, select the strategy for your order types when placing OCO orders: **Bracket**, **Breakout** or **Custom**.
4. In the **Default Type for Order** fields, change the default selections as needed.
5. In the **Assign Buttons** section, click to select **OCO**.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Click **OK**.
8. In MD Trader, click the **OCO** button.

   The button and cursor turn orange and the text, “LIM” appears below the cursor, indicating a Limit order.
9. If you want to assign a different order type, click "SL" or "SM" for Stop Limit and Stop Market order types.
10. Set your quantity.
11. Click the buy or sell price level you want to place the first order at.

    The cursor stays orange until both the next order is placed.

    Note: To cancel, click the **OCO** button again before placing the second order.
12. Click the buy or sell price level you want to place the second order at

You successfully created OCO orders in MD Trader.

Stop Order

Stop orders let you set the price that triggers the order. Stop orders can be Limit or Market orders. X_TRADER supports Stop orders on all exchanges. A stop order displays in the Order Book with a Working status, and negative order number (-###), indicating it is not actually in the market. When the stop triggers, the order becomes the native order type and remains in the Order Book until it fills.

Note: Since TOCOM does not send a last traded price for spreads, you can not enter Stop orders in spreads when trading TOCOM.

Stop Trigger Rules

If the order server goes down, or the trader who originates the Stop order is not logged in when the order triggers, the order is sent to market with the Trader ID of another trader with the same Group ID. If another trader in the same group is not available, the order status changes from Working to Hold. Held Stop orders do not trigger until the original trader or a trader with the same Group ID resubmits it.

A stop limit order is accepted when the limit price meets these criteria:

- Trigger price<= Best Ask price, for a Sell Stop Limit
- Trigger price>=Best Bid price, for a Buy Stop Limit
- Trigger price<= Limit price, for a Buy Stop Limit
- Trigger price>= Limit price, for a Sell Stop Limit

A stop limit or market order is triggered only if the last traded price is within the trigger range. The trigger conditions are:

- Last Traded price<= Trigger price, for a Sell Stop order
- Last Traded price>= Trigger price, for a Buy Stop order

Stop orders in place for the same product at the same trigger price (for the same trader or multiple traders), process in a FIFO (first in, first out) order.

Invalid Price Levels

When you position the cursor over an invalid price level, a circle with a slash through it appears.

Invalid price levels are as follows:

- **Buy Stop**: Attempt to buy below the inside Bid.
- **Sell Stop**: Attempt to sell above the inside Offer.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Placing Stop Orders

Follow this procedures to place Stop orders:

To place a Stop order:

1. If you have a specific customer account you want to trade for, select it now.

   Note: You can setup customer profiles, or use the <Default> profile to trade with.

2. From the Market Grid, click in the appropriate expiration/strike row on the bid or ask side of the screen.

   If you click the **BidQty** or **AskQty** cells, the **Quantity** and **Price** fields display the current quantity and price information. The contract information appears in the **Order Summary** field.

   - or -

   If you click the **BidPrc** or **AskPrc**, or **LastPrc** cells, the **Price** field displays the current price, but the **Quantity** field remains zero (0). The contract information appears in the **Order Summary** field.

3. Modify order information if necessary.
4. Click the **Order Restriction** menu and select **Stop**.

   The **Stop Price** field appears.

5. To toggle the order type, click the **Limit** button.

   The **Order Type** button toggles between **Limit** and **Mkt** when clicked.

6. To set a stop price, in the **Stop Price** field, use the arrows or type the stop price.
7. Click Buy or Sell.

You successfully placed a Stop order.

Trailing Stops

A Trailing Stop (TStop) order sets the Stop Price a fixed distance from the current market price and moves dynamically. Trailing Stops can be limit or market orders.

Note:

- Trailing Stop orders cannot be entered via click-trading, nor the keyboard entry mode.
- Trailing Stop orders need X_TRADER to remain open to continue working. They are removed from the market if you shutdown.

Trailing Stop Sell

A trailing stop market for a sell order sets the stop price at a fixed amount below the market price.

- If the market price rises, the stop loss price rises by this amount.
- If the market price falls, the stop loss price remains the same.

Trailing Stop Buy

A trailing stop market for a buy order sets the stop price at a fixed amount above the market price.

- If the market price falls, the stop loss price falls by this amount.
- If the market price rises, the stop loss price remains the same.

Trailing Stop Limit Orders

Trailing Stop Limit orders work the same way but you define a limit price. When the order triggers, a limit order is submitted at the price you defined.

Volatility

On the Eurex exchange, the following distinction exists for Vola and Volatility trades:

- A Vola trade is an OTC trade separately agreed to by both parties and approved by Eurex. This trade requires you to perform an options trade and hedge it with a futures trade. This Vola trade is the order type available in the Market Grid.
- A Volatility strategy is an Options strategy you can create. These strategies consist of Options spread and Futures and are referred to as Vola for short. X_TRADER does not support entering Block orders for these strategies. X_TRADER does support Block orders for Futures and Options.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

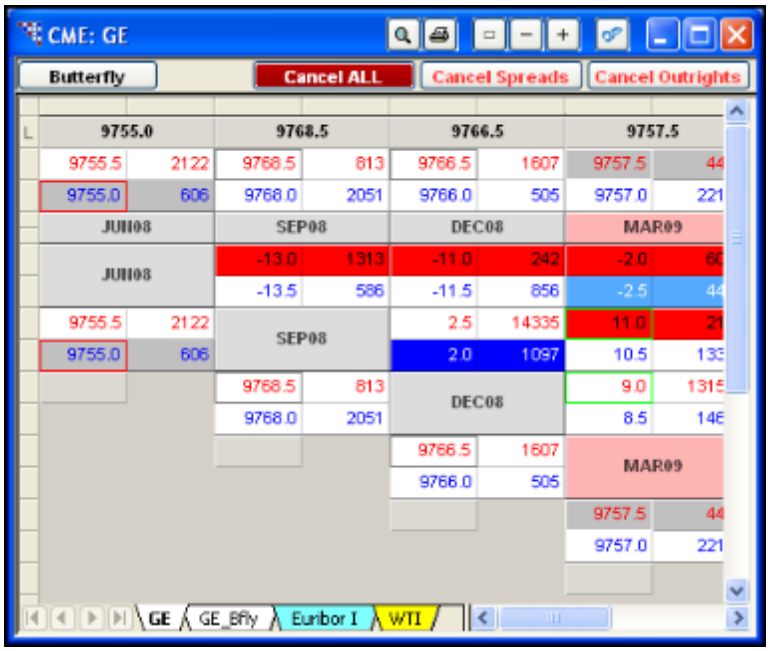
[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

CHAPTER 9

Spread Matrix Overview

The **Spread Matrix** window lets you view market data and enter orders for outright contracts and exchange-traded calendar spreads. Ideally, the Spread Matrix view helps lower your risk when trading spreads.



Notes:

- You can have up to twenty tabs in one **Spread Matrix** window. (Refer to **Using Tabbed Windows** on page 193)
- You can trade using the Floating Depth popup window. (Refer to **Floating Depth Window** on page 205)

Follow these procedures to use the Spread Matrix:

- Generating a Spread Matrix
- Reading the Spread Matrix
- Customizing the Spread Matrix
- Trading with the Spread Matrix
- Changing a Working Order in the Spread Matrix
- Canceling Orders
- Setting Outright or Spread Prices
- Viewing the Butterfly Condor Matrix

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Generating a Spread Matrix

Follow these procedures to generate a Spread Matrix. If you select multiple products when you generate a Spread Matrix, the **Spread Matrix** window generates a tab for each product:

- Generating a Spread Matrix from the Control Panel
- Generating a Spread Matrix from Market Explorer
- Generating a Spread Matrix using the Market Grid context menu

To generate a Spread Matrix from the Control Panel:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Spread Matrix**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. From either **Market Explorer** or the **Market Grid** window, click the product for which you want to generate a Spread Matrix.
3. Drag the contract into the blank **Spread Matrix** window.

You successfully generated a Spread Matrix from the Control Panel.

To generate a Spread Matrix from Market Explorer:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. In the **Exchange** section, click the exchange that hosts the product you want to find.
3. From the **Instrument Type** box, click **Futures**.
4. In the **Products** section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
5. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Instruments** field updates as you type.
6. Press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.
7. Click the **>** button to transfer the products from the **Instruments** box to the **Selected Instruments** box.
8. Click the **Function** box in the upper right corner of the Market Explorer and choose **Spread Matrix**.
9. Click **Start**.

You successfully generated a Spread Matrix from Market Explorer.

To generate a Spread Matrix using the Market Grid context menu:

1. In the Market Grid, click the **Contract** column of the product for which you want to generate a Spread Matrix.

   Note: To select multiple contracts, press and hold the CTRL key and continue clicking contracts.

   - or -

   To select any successive contracts in a row, click and drag the cursor over the contracts to highlight them

2. Right-click to access the context menu and click **Spread Matrix**.

   The Spread Matrix appears. The month selected from the Market Grid displays as the first month in the Spread Matrix.

3. Right-click the Spread Matrix, highlight **Spread Display** and click **Butterfly** to view the Butterfly Condor Matrix.

You successfully generated a Spread Matrix using the Market Grid context menu.

Customizing the Spread Matrix

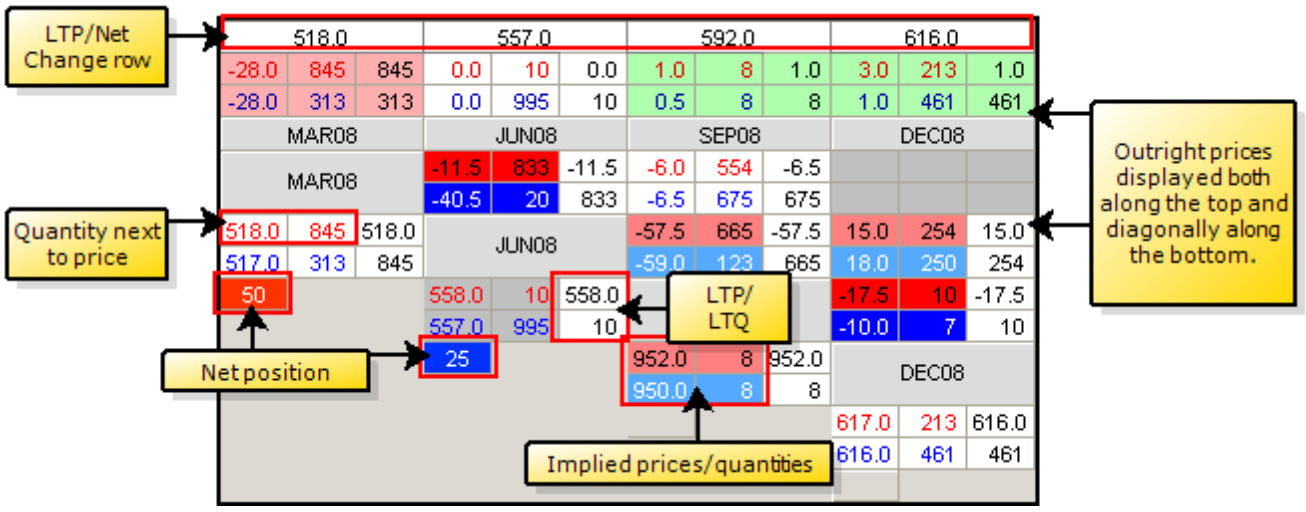
The **Spread Matrix** window is customizable so you can easily identify trade data. Customize and format Spread Matrices using the:

- **Window tabs**: Replace many spread matrix windows in your workspace with one tabbed window.
- **Context menu**: Choose how to display prices, price type, and format your fonts.
- **Spread Matrix** tab: Customize how Spread Matrix looks and acts using the **Spread Matrix** tab on the **Properties** menu.
- **Trading** tab: Set the following properties:
  - Color Top of Book
  - Highlight Own Orders
  - Minimum Highlighting Mode
- **Color** tab: Customize under the Spread Matrix section.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Reading the Spread Matrix

The graphic below identifies some of the parts of the Spread Matrix window. Much of the window can be customized to suit your trading style.



Notes:

- LTP and LTQ must be enabled from the **Spread Matrix** tab on the **Properties** menu.
- The Spread Matrix displays:
  - Calculated implied data even when it is not at the best price. Implied functionality varies by exchange. They determine how the implieds settings function in X_ TRADER. Enable this feature in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.
  - Outright prices along the top, diagonally along the bottom or both. Select how outright prices display in your Spread Matrix in the **Spread Matrix** tab on the **Properties** menu.
- The Spread Matrix lets you:
  - Trade the best three bids or offers with the Floating Depth Window.
  - Change your working orders on the Spread Matrix using the **Order Change** dialog box and a Floating Order Book.
  - Click-trade to submit an order.

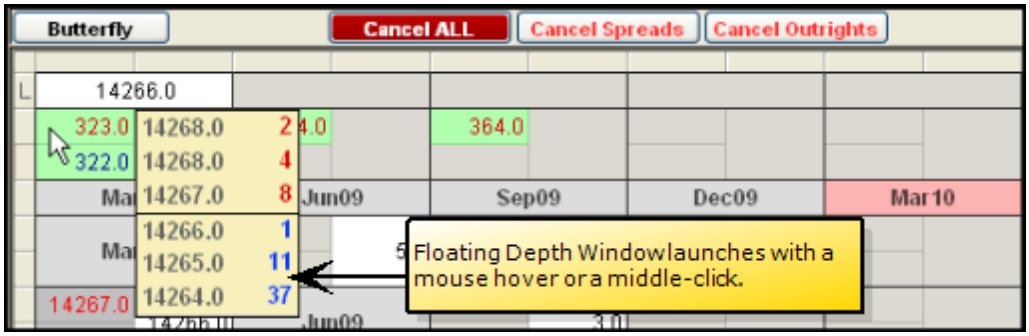
Trading with the Spread Matrix

Follow these procedures to trade with the **Spread Matrix** window:

- **Using the Floating Order Book** on page 343
- **Using the Order Change Dialog Box** on page 224
- Using the Floating Depth Window
- Using the Floating Order Entry
- Using Click Trading

▶ To trade with the Floating Depth Window:

1. In the Market Grid or Spread Matrix window, put your cursor over a price or quantity field for a contract you want to trade.
2. Launch the Floating Depth Window according to the property you set in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.



3. Click the row at the price you want to trade.

   Your Order Entry window seeds with the contract and price you clicked.
4. Adjust your quantity.
5. Adjust your Time in Force options.
6. Click **Buy** or **Sell** to trade.

You successfully traded with the Floating Depth Window.

▶ To trade using the Floating Order Entry:

1. Click any of the price or quantity cells to populate data in the **Floating Order Entry** window.

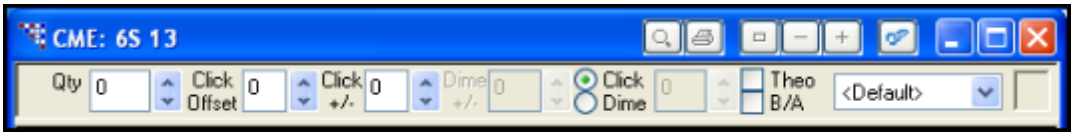
   The **Floating Order Entry** window appears. This can be the **Order Entry** pane, MD Trader, or the Order Bar.
2. Use the **Floating Order Entry** window to submit your order.

You successfully traded using the Floating Order Entry.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To Click Trade in the Spread Matrix:

1. Right-click in the **Spread Matrix** window to access the context menu and click **Click Trade**.
   The **Click Trade** bar appears above the Spread Matrix.



2. Set the order parameters as needed.
3. To submit orders:
   - Right-click in a **Bid Price** cell to seed a sell order.
   - Right-click in an **Ask Price** to cell seed a buy order.

Note: If you right-click in a **Quantity** cell, the context menu appears and no orders submit.

You successfully click traded in Spread Matrix.

Changing a Working Order – Spread and Butterfly Condor Matrices

To save you time, you can now change a working order without having to access your Order Book. This is done using one of two methods:

- Using the **Order Change** Dialog Box
- Using the Floating Order Book

Canceling Orders

The buttons at the top of the Spread Matrix let you cancel your working orders for the displayed contract(s). If you have orders for different contracts on separate tabs, they will not be canceled. If your orders are hidden using the **Show/Hide Series** context menu option, they will not be canceled.

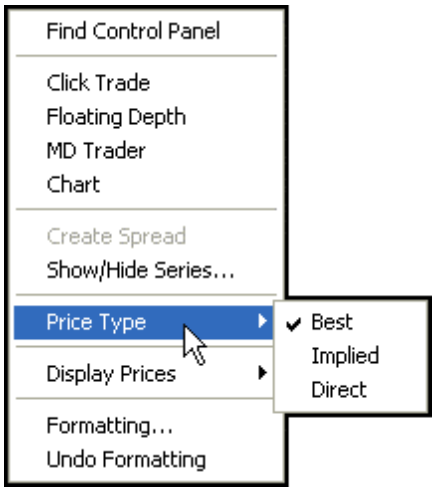
You have three options:

- **Cancel All**: Cancels all your spread and outright orders for the displayed contract(s).
- **Cancel Spreads**: Cancels all your spread orders for the displayed contract(s). If you have outright orders for the displayed contract, they will not be canceled.
- **Cancel Outrights**: Cancels all your outright orders for the displayed contract(s). If you have spread orders for the displayed contract, they will not be canceled.

Setting Outright or Spread Prices

To set the Outright Price or Spread Price:

1. Right-click to show the context menu.



2. Scroll to **Price Type** and choose: **Best**, **Implied** or **Direct**.

You successfully set the outright price or spread price.

Spread and Butterfly Condor Matrix Properties

The **Spread Matrix** tab on the **Properties** menu houses most properties for the Spread and Butterfly Condor Matrices. However, the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** has the following properties which affect the matrices:

- Color Top of Book
- Highlight Own Orders
- Minimum Highlighting Mode
    - Butterfly Condor Matrix only highlights when both the quantity and price change.
    - Highlighting depends on whether the last traded price is on the bid or ask.
    - If the last traded price was not on the bid or ask, the matrix does not highlight.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Spread Matrix Calculations

The calculations made for a Spread Matrix follow:

Outright Prices:

- Spread ask = (Front Month Ask) – (Back Month Bid)
- Spread bid = (Front Month Bid) – (Back Month Ask)

Note: This formula applies to calculating a commodity spread price. The formula reverses when calculating financial spd prcs (ES, Russell) and currency (6E, Dollar Index). When buying those spreads, you buy the deferred and sell the near.

Outright Quantities:

- Best price outright quantity = Lesser of the front month quantity and back month quantity
- Best price spread quantity = Spread quantity
- Outright price and spread price are equal = Lesser of the front month quantity and the back month quantity + the spread quantity.

Implied Pricing and Implied from Implied Pricing:

Refer to **Setting Implieds** on page 225.

Spread Matrix Context Menu

Right-click the **Spread Matrix** window to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:

Note: Only the LIFFE exchange supports the trading of Butterfly and Condor Matrices as a product.

- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Click Trade**: Enables click trading from the **Spread Matrix** window and displays the **Click Trade** dialog box.
- **Floating Depth**: Enables the Floating Depth Window.
- **MD Trader**: Opens an **MD Trader** window.
- **Chart**: Opens an X_STUDY chart for the selected contract.
- **Create Spread**: Creates a spread.
- **Show/Hide Series**: Lets you select which contracts to show.
- **Price Type**: Displays prices as Best (default), Implied, or Direct.
- **Display Prices**: Displays Spread Matrix prices as Net Change (versus actual prices), and institutes a new color scheme.
    - Negative prices display in pink.
    - Positive prices display in light green.
    - Prices with no change display in white
- **Formatting**: Lets you customize fonts and borders.
- **Undo Formatting**: Returns formatting to the default.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Butterfly Condor Matrix Overview

A Butterfly is a trading strategy that involves the following trades:

- Buy (or Sell) of one contract in near Calendar month;
- Sell (or Buy) of 2 contracts in a far month;
- Buy (or Sell) of one contract in an even later month.

The combined price of the two contracts being sold (bought) subtracts from the combined price of the two contracts being bought (sold).

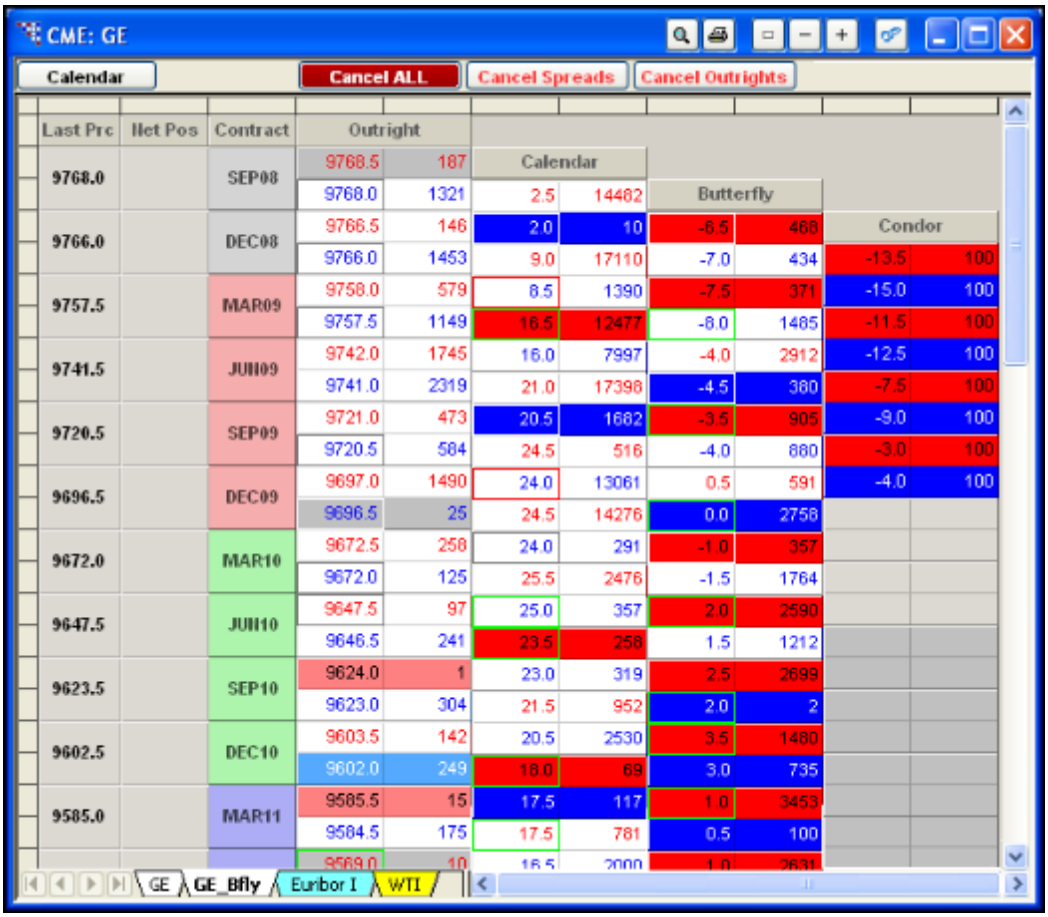
A Condor is a trading strategy that involves the following trades:

- Buy (or Sell) of one contract month in the first month of the strategy;
- Sell (or Buy) of one contract in a far month;
- Sell (or Buy) of one contract in a further month;
- Buy (or Sell) of one contract in an even later month.

The pricing of the Condor Matrix =

(Month 1 – Month 2) – (Month 3 – Month 4)

Note: Implied data does not display for Condor Matrices because LIFFE does not match implieds from Condor Matrices.



Most of the procedures and features for the Butterfly Condor Matrix are the same as the Spread Matrix. Follow these procedures to use the Butterfly Condor Matrix:

- Generating the Butterfly Condor Matrix
- Customizing the Spread Matrix
- Trading with the Spread Matrix
- Changing a Working Order Spread Matrix
- Canceling Orders
- Setting Outright or Spread Prices

Generating a Butterfly Condor Matrix

You generate a Butterfly Condor Matrix using an existing Spread Matrix.

Note: Implied data does not display for Condor Matrices because LIFFE does not match implieds from Condor Matrices.

Follow these procedures to generate a Butterfly Condor Matrix:

- Generating a Butterfly Condor Matrix
- Viewing a Butterfly Condor Matrix in the same window as a Spread Matrix

To generate a Butterfly Condor Matrix:

1. Generate a Spread Matrix.
2. At the top of the Spread Matrix click the **Butterfly** button.

You successfully generated a Butterfly Condor Matrix.

To view a Butterfly Condor Matrix in the same window:

1. Generate a Spread Matrix.
2. Add a tab to the Spread Matrix.
3. Generate a Spread Matrix in the new tab.
4. At the top of the Spread Matrix click the **Butterfly** button.

You successfully generated a Butterfly Condor Matrix.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Butterfly Matrix Calculations

The calculations made for a Butterfly Matrix follow:

Implied Bid Price =

1st Leg (Front Month) BidPrice

-

(2) x [2nd Leg (Middle Month) AskPrice]

+

3rd Leg (Back Month) BidPrice

Implied Ask Price =

1st Leg (Front Month) AskPrice

-

(2) x [2nd Leg (Middle Month) Bid Price]

+

3rd Leg (Back Month) AskPrice

Implied Bid Quantity =

Lesser of 1st Leg (Front Month) Bid Quantity

and

[2nd Leg(Middle Month) Ask quantity] / 2

and

3rd Leg (Back Month) Bid Quantity

Implied Ask Quantity =

Lesser of 1st Leg (Front Month) Ask Quantity

and

[2nd Leg (Middle Month) Bid quantity] / 2

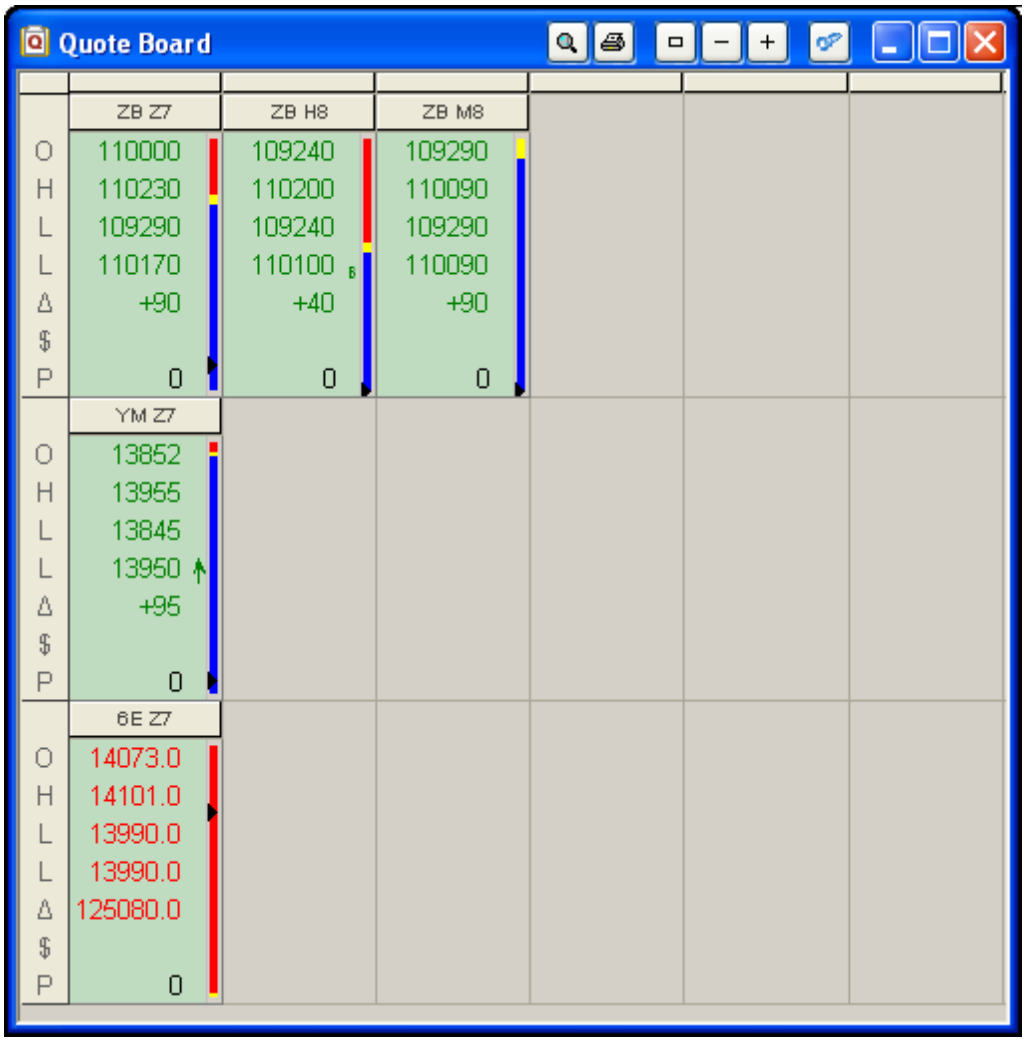
and

3rd Leg (Back Month) Ask Quantity

CHAPTER 10

Quote Board Overview

Quote Board displays the open, high, low, last, and net change prices for several products at once. It also displays your position and P/L. The screen can be launched with pre-selected contracts, or contracts can be dragged in. The number of quotes you can add is only limited by the size of the window on your screen.



The first time launched, Quote Board displays three rows of eight quote panes. Drag and drop contracts from Market Explorer or the Market Grid to populate it.

To access Quote Board:

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Quote Board**.

- or -

From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

You successfully accessed Quote Board.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Quote Board Features

Quote Board features include:

- Place multiple quote panes for the same contract on the Quote Board.
- Move the panes within the Quote Board and between multiple **Quote Board** windows.
- Enable the **Floating Order Entry** option in the context menu. Then, click a Quote Board pane to seed a **Floating Order Entry** window.
- Drag and drop a Quote Board pane into MD Trader.

Populating Quote Board

Follow these procedures to populate Quote Board with contracts:

- Populating Quote Board from Market Explorer
- Populate Quote Board using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer
- Populating Quote Board using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid
- Populating Quote Board using the Market Grid context menu

To populate Quote Board from Market Explorer:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
3. In the **Products**section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
4. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Instruments** field updates as you type.
5. From the **Instrument Type** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
6. Press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.

   - or -

   To open all products in the **Instruments** field, click the >> button and skip to step 8.
7. Click the > button to transfer the products from the **Instruments** box to the **Selected Instruments** box.
8. Click the **Function** box in the upper right corner of the Market Explorer and choose **Quote Board**.
9. Click **Start**.

You successfully populated Quote Board from Market Explorer.

To populate Quote Board using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer:

1. If Quote Board is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open it.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
3. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
4. In the **Products**section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
5. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Instruments** field updates as you type.
6. From the **Instrument Type** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
7. From the **Instruments** box, press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.
8. With the cursor over one of the selected products in the **Instruments** box, click and hold the mouse button.
9. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the open Quote Board.

   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters a window, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
10. Release the mouse button.

You successfully populated Quote Board using drag-and-drop from the Market Explorer.

To populate Quote Board using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid:

1. If Quote Board is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open it.
2. From an open Market Grid, click the product and hold the mouse button.
3. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the Quote Board.

   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters a window, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
4. Release the mouse button.

You successfully populated Quote Board using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To populate Quote Board using the Market Grid context menu:

1. In the Market Grid, click the **Contract** column of the product for which you want to populate Quote Board.

   Note: To select multiple contracts, press and hold the CTRL key and continue clicking contracts.

   - or -

   To select any successive contracts in a row, click and drag the cursor over the contracts to highlight them.

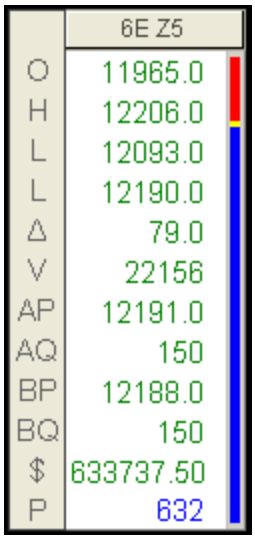
2. Right-click to access the context menu and click **Quote Board**.

   A Quote Board appears populated with the product you selected.

You successfully populated Quote Board using the Market Grid context menu.

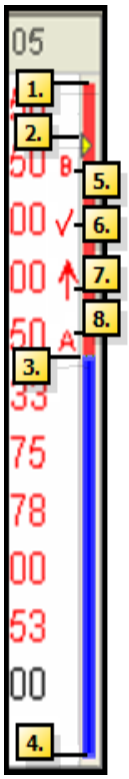
Reading the Quote Board

Each pane in Quote Board displays the following fields:



- **O**: Opening price for the day.
- **H**: High price for the day.
- **L**: Low price for the day.
- **L**: Last traded price for the day.
- **Delta (Δ)**: Net change on the day.
- **V (Hidden by default)**: Current traded volume for the day.
- **AP (Hidden by default)**: Most recent ask price.
- **AQ (Hidden by default)**: Most recent ask quantity.
- **BP (Hidden by default)**: Most recent bid price.
- **BQ (Hidden by default)**: Most recent bid quantity.
- **$**: Your P/L for that contract based on the last traded price.
- **P**: Your net position for the contract.

Quote Board uses the following indicators:



1. **Top of the bar**: Indicates the highest price of the day.
2. **Triangle**: Indicates the opening price for the day relative to low and high prices.
3. **Middle of the bar**: Indicates the last traded price.
4. **Bottom of the bar**: Indicates the lowest price of the day.
5. **B**: Indicates the current best bid is above the last traded price.
6. **Checkmark**:Indicates a new settlement price is received which belongs to this session. The settlement value is shown. The checkmark is replaced by another icon with the next trade.
7. **Arrow**: Indicates change between last two traded prices.
8. **A**: Indicates the current best ask is below the last traded price.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Managing the Quote Board Properties

Manage properties for the Quote Board on the **Quote Board** tab on the **Properties** menu.

You can:

- Hide or show fields for all default **Quote Board** windows.
- Enable or disable the display of the exchange name with the contract. Disabled by default.

To access the Quote Board tab:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Quote Board** tab.

You successfully accessed the **Quote Board** tab.

Quote Board Color Properties

Customize colors for the Quote Board in the **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu.

The color properties are:

Property	Default Colors
Background	Light Green
Barometer Bottom	Blue
Barometer LTP	Yellow
Barometer Top	Red
P/L Even	Black text
P/L Negative	Red text
P/L Positive	Dark Green text
Position Flat	Black text
Position Long	Blue text
Position Short	Red text
Price Data Negative	Red text
Price Data Positive	Dark Green text
Price Data Unchanged	Black text

Using a Floating Order Entry in Quote Board

To use a Floating Order Entry pane in the Quote Board:

1. Populate Quote Board.
2. Right-click a contract on the Quote Board and choose **Floating Order Entry**.
   The **Floating Order Entry** option is enabled and a Floating Order Entry pane appears.
3. Click any other contract on the Quote Board to populate the Floating Order Entry pane.

You successfully used the Floating Order Entry pane in the Quote Board.

Using the Quote Board Context Menu

Right-click the Quote Board to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:

- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Floating Order Entry**: Displays an **Order Entry** dialog box for any contract you click.
- **MD Trader**: Displays an **MD Trader** window for the contract you click.
- **Market Grid**: Displays a Market Grid for the contract you click.
- **Autospreader**: Displays the **Autospreader Configuration** dialog box with the contract you click as one leg.
- **Autotrader**: Displays Autotrader for the contract you click.
- **Chart**: Opens an X_STUDY chart for the selected contract.
- **Rename Contract**: Lets you rename contracts in the Quote Board pane.
- **P/L Display**: Opens a sub-menu to determine how the P/L field displays. Options include: **Currency**, **Native Currency**, **Qty x Prc**, and **Ticks**.
- **Clear**: Removes the contract from the Quote Board.
- **Formatting**: Lets you customize fonts and borders.
- **Show/Hide Rows**: Lets you select which columns to show.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

CHAPTER 11

Order Book Overview

The **Order Book** window provides information about your current open orders. Traders in the same group share the Order Book and are able to view each other's working orders.

Follow these procedures to use the Order Book:

- **Performing Order Status Inquiries** on page 332
- **Change an Order** on page 334
- **Canceling/Replacing an Order** on page 335
- **Deleting an Order** on page 340
- **Removing Stale Orders** on page 332
- **Using the Floating Order Book** on page 343

▶ **To open the Order Book window:**

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Order Book**.

- or -

From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

You successfully opened the **Order Book** window.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Filters

You can use filters in the Order Book to quickly sort and display data. For example, if you are part of a group and you want to view only your open orders, you can filter using your Trader ID.

Tip: To filter using your Trader ID, first record an open order far off the market. Filter using your Trader ID. Then, delete the order.

Refer to **Filtering Overview** on page 50 for more information.

Trader Identification

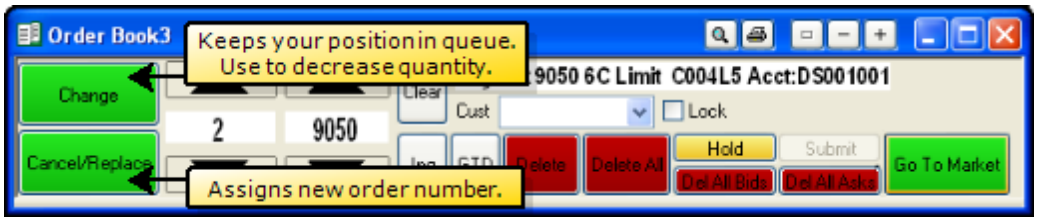
The Trader ID is a combination of the Member ID, a Group ID, and a Trader ID.

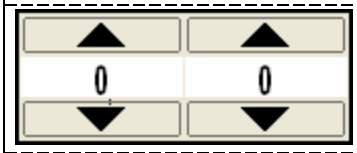
Example: *MemberIDGroupIDTraderID*

- The exchange supplies the Member ID to their trading member.
- The administrators of your trading environment assign the Group ID. All traders sharing the same Group ID share the **Order Book**, **Fill**, and **Audit Trail** windows.
- The administrators of your trading environment assign the Trader ID. It uniquely identifies a specific trader.

Top Pane Field Descriptions

Use the top pane in the **Order Book** window to make changes in existing orders that have been submitted to an exchange. This process is done in conjunction with the bottom pane.



Field or Button	Description
Change	Changes an order. This action keeps your place in the queue unless you increase the quantity or change the customer account number. The results of using the **Change** button are dependent on the exchange.
Cancel/Replace	Deletes an order and sends a new order to market. This action loses your place in the queue.
	The **Quantity** field is on the left; the **Price** field is on the right. To change, click an order and enter the price and/or quantity change with the keyboard or use the spinners (up and down arrows).
Clear	Removes data from the **Quantity**, **Price**, and **Customer** fields. It also cancels any changes not sent.
Inq (Inquire)	Sends an inquiry to the exchange for the status of an order. A message in the **Audit Trail** window confirms the order information.
TIF buttons	Displays Time In Force options when appropriate. **Example**: GTD, GTC **Note**: GTC orders on the same contract at the same price sort with the most recent orders at the bottom of the price range.
Order Information	Displays a selected order's data above the **Cust** field.
Cust	**Customer Selection** field. Displays the current customer profiles in use. The list contains all customer accounts for which the **SEL** box is selected in the **Customer Defaults** window.
Lock	Protects against inadvertent changes to working orders. When you click the **Change** or **Cancel/Replace** buttons, a prompt appears to verify your change.
Delete	Deletes selected orders. Confirmation messages appear in the Audit Trail.
Delete All Delete All Bids Delete All Asks	Deletes all visible orders, bids, or asks. Orders hidden due to filters do not delete.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Field or Button	Description
Hold	Removes an order from the market but stores it on the TT Gateway. Held orders are stored in short-term memory. If the Gateway Order Server process goes down, the held order information is lost. You can change, cancel, replace, delete, or resubmit held orders. Until you click the **Submit** button the order remains held and out of the market. The **Hold** button disables if you select a single row for a held order.
Submit	Submits held orders to the exchange. When you submit a held order, it receives a new order number. The Audit Trail indicates if a submit fails.
Go To Market	Sends selected orders to the market for an immediate fill. Market orders work differently on different exchanges. You will not always be filled immediately.

Grid Summary

The grid displays all orders entered by members of the group. Filter this information and change the orders using the controls in the top pane of the **Order Book** window.

To hide columns, refer to the Order Book context menu.

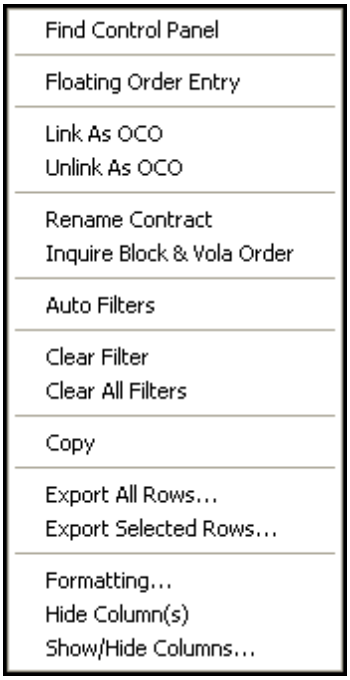
#	Exch	TTStatus	B/S	Qty	Product	Contract	Price	Stop Prc	Type	TIF	Rstr	Exe Qty
42	eCBOT	Hold	S	21	ZN	DEC05	114025		Limit	GTD		0
43	eCBOT	Hold	S	21	ZN	DEC05	114025		Limit	GTD		0
44	eCBOT	Hold	S	22	ZN	DEC05	114025		Limit	GTD		0
45	eCBOT	Working	S	2	ZN	JUN06	111215		Limit	GTD		0
46	eCBOT	Working	S	2	ZN	JUN06	100055		Limit	GTD		1
47	eCBOT	Working	S	12	ZN	JUN06	100045		Limit	GTD		8
48	eCBOT	Hold	S	9	ZN	JUN06	10055		Limit	GTD		0
49	eCBOT	Working	B	2	ZN	JUN06	111210		Limit	GTD		0
50	eCBOT	Working	B	2	ZN	JUN06	100000		Limit	GTD		1
51	eCBOT	Working	B	2	ZN	JUN06	100000		Limit	GTD		1
52	eCBOT	Working	B	2	ZN	JUN06	100000		Limit	GTD		1

For a complete list of columns available in the **Trade Book** window, **Order Book** window and **Fill** window, see **Appendix: Grid Column Descriptions** on page 437.

Order Book Context Menu

Right-click the **Order Book** window to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:



- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Floating Order Entry**: Displays an **Order Entry** dialog box for any contract you click.
- **Link As OCO**: Applies the order cancels order relationship to the selected orders.
- **Unlink AS OCO**: Removes the order cancels order relationship from the selected order and its pair.
- **Rename Contract**: Lets you change the name of the selected product.
- **Inquire Block & Vola**: Displays the **Inquire Order Block** dialog box for accepting Eurex block trades.
- **Auto Filters**: Enables Auto Filters, which filter the data by selecting a customer from the **Customer List** window.
- **Clear Filter**: Removes the filter from the selected cell.
- **Clear All Filters**: Displays all available data.
- **Copy**: Places selected data on a clipboard for pasting into another program (e.g., Excel).
- **Export All Rows**: Collects all the data in a file whose name, type, and location you configure.
- **Export Selected Rows**: Collects the data in highlighted rows into file whose name, type, and location you configure.
- **Formatting**: Lets you customize fonts and borders.
- **Hide Column(s)**: Hides the selected row(s) or column(s).
- **Show/Hide Columns**: Lets you select which columns to show.

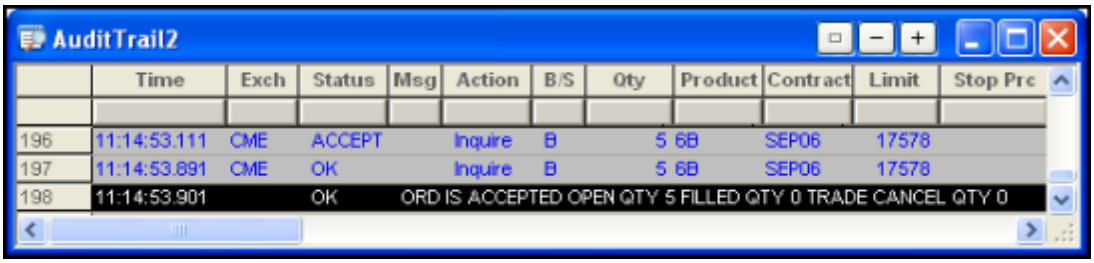
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Performing Order Status Inquiries

To inquire about the status of an order:

1. Select the order by clicking a cell in the appropriate row.
2. Click the **Inq** button.

   The **Audit Trail** window displays two messages. The first confirms the exchange received an inquiry request. The second confirms that the order status information has been provided.



You successfully inquired about the status of an order.

Removing Stale Orders

It is possible for stale (filled) orders to remain in the Order Book if:

- A confirmed fill arrives at the same time you use the **Inquire** button to request status for an order.
- You click the **Change** button to modify the order.

To remove a stale order from the Order Book:

Perform the order status inquiry procedure.

This confirms and updates the status of an order and removes stale orders.

You successfully removed a stale order from the Order Book.

Altering Orders in the Order Book

Use the following procedures to alter orders in the Order Book:

- **Change an Order** on page 334
- **Canceling/Replacing an Order** on page 335
- **Modifying an Order with the Order Bar** on page 336
- **Changing Trigger Price Orders** on page 337
- **Using the Hold Feature** on page 337
- **Using TIF Options** on page 339
- **Deleting an Order** on page 340

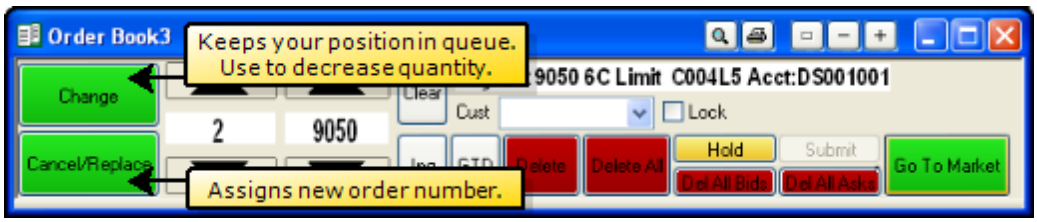
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Change an Order

In theory, the **Change** button changes a working order and keeps its exchange-generated order number, as well as your place in the queue. However, in the following instances, your order will be treated as a cancel/replace and sent to the back of the queue:

- You increase the quantity of the order.
- You change the price.
- You change the customer account number.
- Your request violates the exchange's rules.

When a change request violates an exchange's rules, it is treated as a cancel/replace order or rejected. The new order returns to the back of the queue and a new order number is usually–but not always–assigned.



Notes:

- If a change, cancel/replace, or delete request results in an *Order Deleted or Filled* message in the Audit Trail, the exchange rejected the order because it was already deleted or filled. This happens when the receipt of a confirmed fill is delayed, or a request to change or delete happens at the same time a confirmed fill is received.
- In some cases, if a partial fill goes through just before a change order, the change order seeds with the original quantity.

▶ **To change the order quantity:**

1. Click any cell in the appropriate row to select the order to be changed.
2. Click the up or down arrow at the top of the screen to change the order quantity—not the working quantity.

   Note: If you have been filled on 6 of 10 and now want a total of 8 contracts, the change request should be for a total of 8 contracts. This automatically changes the working order from 4 to 2 contracts. If you base your change request on the working quantity (requesting a change to 2 contracts), the request is rejected.

3. Click the **Change** button.

   The order's place in queue is retained and the order number does not change.

You successfully changed the order quantity.

Canceling/Replacing an Order

The **Cancel/Replace** button deletes the original order and sends a new order to market. The original order loses its place in queue and receives a new order number.

Use the **Cancel/Replace** button to:

- Delete the original order and send a new order in its place. The new order moves to the back of the queue and may—depending on the exchange—receive a new order number.
- Increase the quantity of the order, adjust the price, and/or change the customer account.

Notes:

- You can enable the **Floating Order Entry** on the context menu, and use the Floating Order Entry to cancel/replace an order.
- If the second half of a cancel/replace order fails, it is no longer in the Order Book or the market. However, if any part of that order fills before the cancel/replace happens, you are responsible for the position incurred.
- If an *Order Deleted or Filled* message appears in the Audit Trail after a delete or change request, the order was already deleted or filled by the exchange.

To cancel and replace an order:

Tip: If you are simply decreasing the order quantity, use the **Change** button. This ensures the order does not lose its place in the queue.

1. Select the order to cancel/replace by clicking any cell in the appropriate row.
2. Change the order information as necessary.
3. Click the **Cancel/Replace** button.

   The original order's **Status** temporarily displays: *Replaced*.

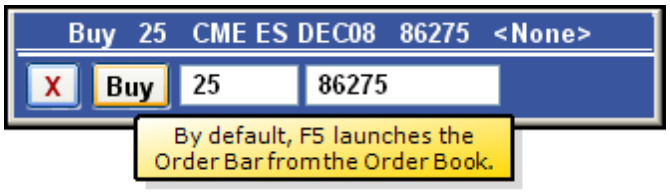
   The Audit Trail receives the first of two messages, reflecting the deleted order with a zero working quantity. The second message details the new order information and the new order number.

You successfully canceled and replaced and order.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Modifying an Order with the Order Bar

You can enable the **Floating Order Entry** on the context menu, and use the Floating Order Entry to cancel/replace an order. When the **Floating Order Entry** window is the Order Bar, you can use the keyboard to launch the Order Bar and modify your order.



To modify an order with the Order Bar:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. On the **Trading** tab, in the **Floating Order Entry** property, click to select **Order Bar**.
3. Right-click the Order Book and click to select **Floating Order Entry**.

   You can now call the **Order Bar** using the mouse or keyboard hotkeys.
4. Navigate to the order you want to modify and press `F5`.

   Note: You can alter the hotkey in the **Hotkey** tab on the **Properties** menu.
5. Change the quantity or price.
6. Click **Buy** or **Sell** to send the order.

You successfully modified an order with the Order Bar.

Changing Trigger Price Orders

You can use the **Order Book** window to change the price of trigger orders.

Trigger price orders include:

- Stop Market
- Stop Limit

To change the trigger price in the Order Book window:

1. From the **Order Book** window, click to select the trigger order from the Bottom Pane.

   The trigger price edit field appears. If touched orders display: **Trigger Prc**, stop orders display: **Stop Prc**.

2. Change the price.

Note: Once a stop order triggers, any remaining quantity enters the market as a Limit order. You can no longer change the original stop price. The trigger price field disables when the order triggers.

3. Click the **Change** button.

You successfully changed the trigger price in the **Order Book** window.

Using the Hold Feature

You can place an order on hold using the **Order Book** window. When you place an order on hold, you can change it as you would any other order. Held orders remain in the Order Book until sent to the market or manually deleted.

Notes:

- Held orders are not deleted when you use the **Del Series** button in the Market Grid.
- If an order cannot be submitted because it has an error, review the Audit Trail to identify order entry errors.

Tips:

- Change a working GTD (Good 'Til Day) order to a held order after the market closes.
- Customize the **Held Order Status** property using the **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Follow these procedures to manage held orders:

- Holding an order
- Sending a held order to market

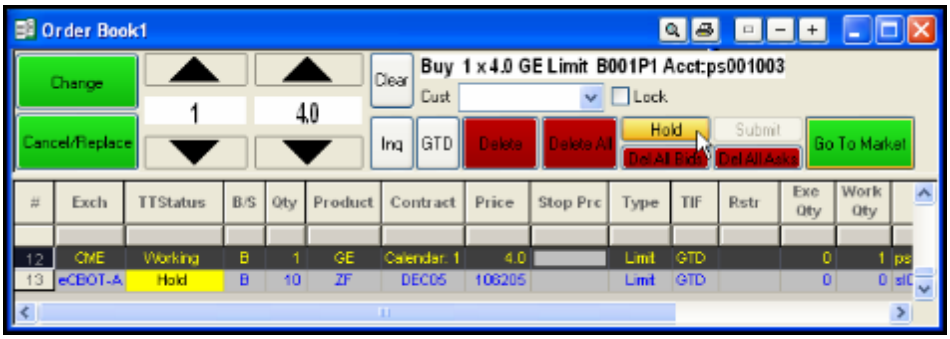
To hold an order:

1. Click to select the order you want to put on hold.

   Note: Hold the CTRL key and continue clicking orders to select more than one order to put on hold.

2. Click the **Hold** button.

   The order is removed from the market. The **TTStatus** column identifies orders placed on hold.



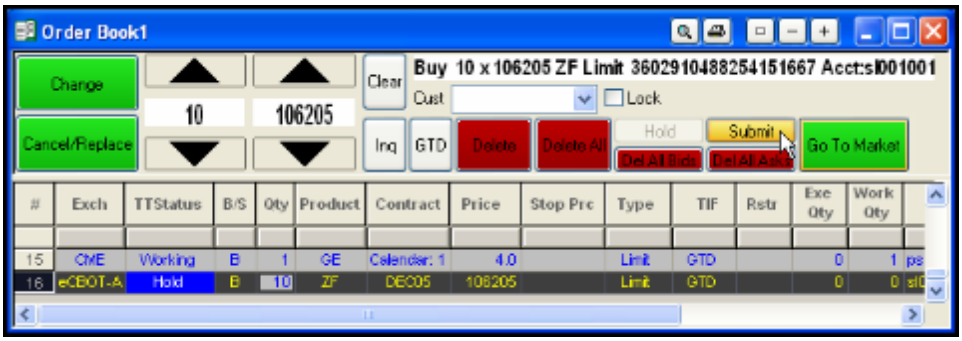
You successfully held an order.

To send a held order to market:

1. Click to select the held order you want to send to market.

   Note: Hold the CTRL key and continue clicking orders to select more than one held order to send to market.

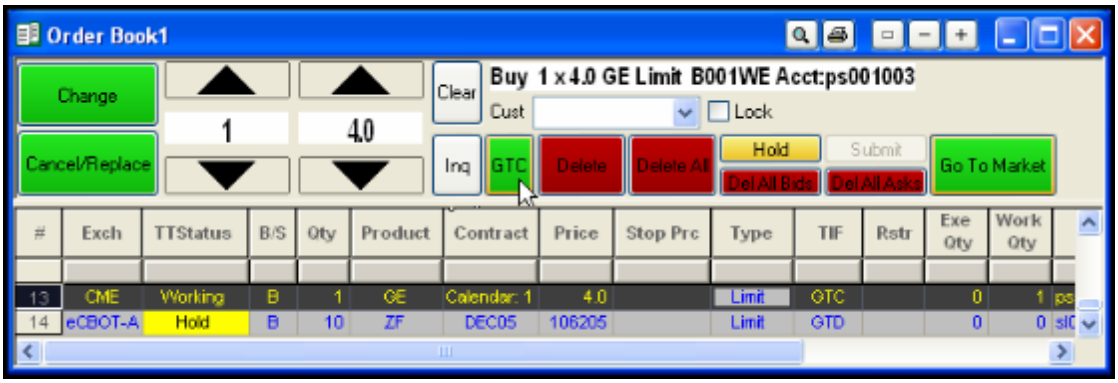
2. Click the **Submit** button.



You successfully sent a held order to market.

Using TIF Options

In the screenshot below, the button labeled **GTC** displays different Time In Force (TIF) options. The **Order Book** window allows you to change the order's time in force.



TIF determines how long your order works in the market. In all cases, your orders work until they trade, you cancel them, or the time in force is met. Click the TIF button to toggle between your choices.

- **GTD (Good 'Til Day)**: Works until the current trading session ends. Enabled by default.
- **GTC (Good 'Til Cancel)**: Works until the contract expires.
- **GIS (Good In Session)**: Works until the contract expires within the session, or the trading session ends. (Some exchanges, like Euronext, have products with different trading sessions in one day.)
- **Date**: Works until the expiration date.

Note: You can enter Iceberg orders with TIF options: GTC and GIS.

▶ To change the TIF option:

1. Click to select the order from the bottom pane in the Order Book.
2. Click the TIF button (**GTC** in the picture) until you get the option you want to use.

You successfully changed the TIF option.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Deleting an Order

You can delete any unfilled order. Because there is a short delay before you receive notice of a filled order, you might inadvertently try to delete a filled order. If this occurs, the Audit Trail sends you an error message.

Note: If an order enters an unknown state, the **TTStatus** column is appended with a question mark (?) and the colors are inverted. Refer to Recognizing Orders in an Unknown State.

Follow these procedures to delete orders in the Order Book:

- Enable and disable the Delete All button
- Delete a single order
- Delete multiple orders
- Delete all visible orders
- Delete all visible orders and orders hidden by filters

▶ To enable or disable the Delete All button:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Orders** tab.
3. In the **Button Selection** section, click to select **Delete All/Bids/Asks**.
   A checkmark indicates the feature is enabled.

You successfully enabled or disabled the **Delete All** button.

▶ To delete a single order:

1. Select the order to be deleted by clicking any cell in the appropriate row to highlight it.
2. Select the **Delete** button in the top pane.
   - or -
   Click on the **Delete** button in the appropriate row.
   The Audit Trail message specifies the action taken (Delete).

You successfully deleted an order.

To delete multiple orders:

1. Click the first order you want to delete and hold the button down while you move the mouse across the order rows.

   - or -

   Hold the CTRL button down and click each order you want to delete.
2. Select the **Delete** button in the top pane.

   The Audit Trail message specifies the action taken (Delete).

You successfully deleted multiple orders.

To delete all visible working orders:

Click the **Delete All** button to cancel all visible working orders.

Warning! Using the **Delete All** button to empty your Order Book does not delete any orders that have been hidden by filters.

You successfully deleted all visible orders.

To delete all visible orders and orders hidden by filters:

1. Right-click on any cell in the bottom pane of the **Order Book** window.
2. Click **Clear All Filters** from the menu.

Note: This is the only way to ensure that all the filters have been removed.

You successfully deleted all visible orders and orders hidden by filters.

After the Delete Request is Sent

After the delete request is sent:

- The original order's status temporarily changes to *Deleting* before the Order Book removes it.
- The Audit Trail displays two messages. The first confirms the exchange received the request. The second confirms the request is processing.

Note: If an *Order Deleted or Filled* message appears in the Audit Trail after a delete or change request, the order was already deleted or filled by the exchange.

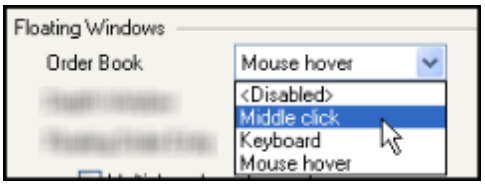
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Floating Order Book Overview

The Floating Order Book is visible in MD Trader, Market Grid and the Order Book. It displays an interactive list of your working orders when you hover over or click on a product for which you have orders.

Set the Floating Order Book property in the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.

The Floating Order Book appears under the conditions you specify:



- **Middle click**: When you click the middle mouse button.
- **Keyboard**: The **Hotkey** tab establishes launch button. (See procedure under **Keyboard Trading in the Floating Order Book** on page 345)
- **Mouse hover**: When you hover the cursor over the product.

When the Floating Order Book appears, it looks like this:

Del	Contract	Qty	Chg	Price	TIF	Acct #	Type	Time Stamp
X	6A JUN06	10		7545	GTD	asd	Limit	20:24:57.000
X	6A JUN06	5		7544	GTD	tp001001	Limit	19:54:46.000

Notes:

- You cannot choose which columns appear in the Floating Order Book. However, columns with no data hide automatically. By default, orders sort in descending order by the **Time Stamp** column.
- If more than ten orders exist, a scroll bar appears in the Floating Order Book.
- The **Time Stamp** column displays the exchange time.
- If an order enters an unknown state, the entire order color is inverted and the **Chg** column is appended with a question mark (?). Refer to Recognizing Orders in an Unknown State.

Using the Floating Order Book

Note: If you make a change in the floating order book, the order is resubmitted.

To use the floating order book, you must set the **Enable Floating Order Book** property in the **Orders** tab on the **Properties** menu. Once enabled, hover over or click on a product for which you have orders to display the Floating Order Book. Alternatively, you can display the Floating Order Book using the keyboard.

Follow these procedures to use the Floating Order Book:

- Displaying the floating order book using the keyboard
- Making a change to an order using the Floating Order Book
- Sorting orders in the Floating Order Book

To display the Floating Order Book using the keyboard:

Note: The keyboard shortcut to launch the Floating Order Book only works in the Market Grid.

1. Ensure the **Enable Floating Order Book** option is selected in the **Orders** tab on the **Properties** menu.
2. In the Market Grid, click the **BidQty** or **AskQty** for the product for which you have working orders.
3. Right-click to open the context menu.
4. Press `Esc`.
5. Press `F7`.

   Note: You can change the launch key using the **Hotkeys** tab on the **Properties** menu.

You successfully displayed the Floating Order Book using the keyboard.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To make a change to an order using the Floating Order Book:

1. Ensure the **Enable Floating Order Book** option is selected in the **Orders** tab on the **Properties** menu.
2. Depending on your property setting, hover over or click a cell with a working order.

   The Floating Order Book appears.

Del	Contract	Qty	Chg	Price	TIF	Acct #	Type	Time Stamp
X	6A JUN06	10		7545	GTD	asd	Limit	20:24:57.000
X	6A JUN06	5		7544	GTD	tp001001	Limit	19:54:46.000

3. In the **Qty** and **Price** fields, left-click to lower the value by one or right-click to raise the value by one.

   - or -

   In the **Qty** and **Price** fields, type new values.

   Note: The Floating Order Book cancels your changes and closes if you click on another window (i.e., remove focus).

4. Click **OK** to submit the changed order.

You successfully made a change to an order using the Floating Order Book.

To sort orders using the Floating Order Book:

Note: By default, the orders are sorted in descending order by the **Time Stamp** column.

1. Double-click the column heading you want to sort the orders by.

   The orders sort in ascending order based on the column you clicked.

Del	Contract	Qty	Chg	Price	TIF	Acct #	Type	Time Stamp
X	6A MAR06	10		7632	GTD	cust1	Limit	14:51:37.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7632	GTD	cust1	Limit	14:51:37.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7632	GTD	cust3	Limit	14:51:21.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7632	GTD	cust3	Limit	14:51:20.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7632	GTD	cust3	Limit	14:51:13.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7632	GTD	cust3	Limit	14:51:13.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7632	GTD	cust3	Limit	14:51:10.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7632	GTD	cust3	Limit	14:51:09.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7631	GTD	cust3	Limit	16:32:21.000
X	6A MAR06	10		7631	GTD	cust3	Limit	16:31:54.000

2. Double-click the column heading again to sort in descending order.

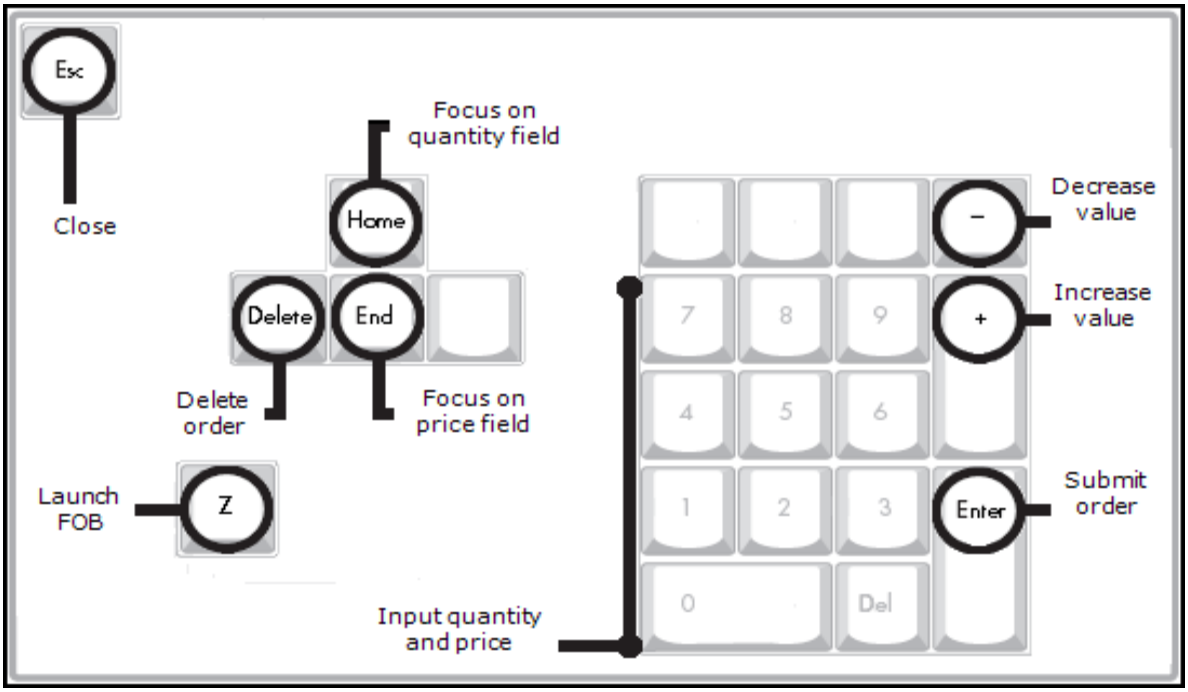
You successfully sorted using the Floating Order Book.

Keyboard Trading in the Floating Order Book

You can use the keyboard to interact easily with the Floating Order Book. Use the default hotkeys or customize them to create your own.

- TT Default map
- Description
- Assigning hotkeys to the Floating Order Book

TT Default Map



Description

Hotkey	Command	Description
Z	Launch FOB	Launch the Floating Order Book.
Home	Focus on quantity	Edit the quantity field.
End	Focus on Price	Edit the price field.
-	Decrease value	Decrease the price or quantity fields.
+	Increase value	Increase the price or quantity fields.
Enter	Submit order	Submit the order as defined and close the Floating Order Book.
Delete	Delete order	Delete the highlighted order.
Esc	Close	Close the window.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To assign hotkeys to the Floating Order Book:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Hotkeys** tab.
3. In the **Keyboard Layout** field, click to select **Custom**.
4. In the **Component** column, click **Floating Order Book**.
5. In the **Command** column, click the command for which you want to assign a hotkey.
6. Click in the **Press new shortcut key** field.
7. Press the key or keys you want to represent that command.

   Note: Some keys cannot be used as hotkeys. (E.g., `Delete`, `Backspace`, `Tab`...and others.)
8. Click the **Assign** button.

You successfully assigned hotkeys to the Floating Order Book.

CHAPTER 12

Fill Window Overview

The **Fill** window provides detailed information about the current day's trades. X_TRADER displays fill information immediately upon receipt from the exchange. However, each exchange implements the dissemination of fill information differently. Some exchanges provide the information faster than other exchanges.

▶ **To open the Fill window:**

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Fill Window**.

- or -

From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

You successfully opened the **Fill** window.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

The following panes compose the **Fill** window:

- **Fills pane**: Displays the exchange-confirmed data about a trade.
- **Position pane**: Provides net position information by product and contract. Profit/Loss (P/L) calculates using confirmed fills.
  Unless set up to do so on the gateway, Eurex fast fills do not figure into net position calculations. Ask your TT representative for information on converting fast fills into confirmed fills. Also, refer to **Eurex Fast Fills Information** on page 364.
- **Fast Fills pane**: Displays limited trade information until the exchange confirms the fill. Some exchanges provide guaranteed fill information via the back office feed. This can result in delayed fills if the trade information is not received from the exchange. The **Fast Fills** pane mitigates the delays that can occur while waiting for a guaranteed fill. The fast fill net quantity displays in the **FFNet** column of the **Position** pane.

Manual Fills

If you execute trades outside of X_TRADER, you can manage those trade using the **Add Manual Fill** dialog box. Adding trades in this manner lets X_TRADER calculate your true position and P/L (profit/loss).

Refer to **Managing Manual Fills** on page 359 for more information.

Filters

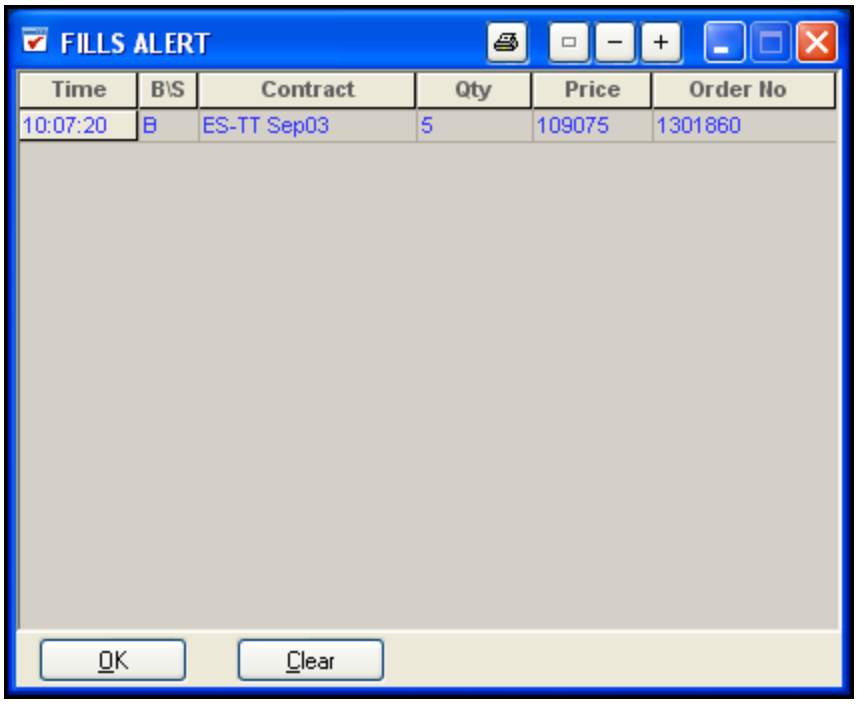
You can use filters in the **Fill** Window to quickly sort and display data. However, if you use filters, you are not able to receive Fast Fills from supporting exchanges. X_TRADER reminds you fast fills are disabled with a message in the **Fast Fills** pane.

Tip: Remove filters to return hidden fill records to the **Fill** window.

Refer to **Filtering Overview** on page 50 for more information.

Fills Alert Dialog Box

When enabled, the **Fills Alert** dialog box displays on the desktop as a fill arrives from an exchange.



To enable the Fills Alert dialog box:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Fill** tab.
3. Click to select the **Fills Alert** checkbox.
4. If you want to only be alerted on your own fills, click to select the **Only Alert on Own Fills** box.

   Note: Using this feature, you do not have to enter a Trader ID to display your fills. However,if you place an order using an account # mapped to a TTORD ID you are not logged in under, you will not receive the fill alert.
5. Click **OK**.

You successfully enabled the **Fills Alert** dialog box.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Fills Pane Overview

The **Fills** pane reflects the exchange-confirmed data about a trade. The **Fills** pane includes the **Fill Type** and **Type** columns to allow you to filter on your spread positions and view your spread legs separately from outright trades.

	Time	Exch	B/S	Qty	Price	Product	Contract	Account #	Exch Time
531	14:22:40.68	eCBOT	S	1	10633	YM	DEC05	PE	19:22:39.000
532	14:23:01.85	CME	B	3	9515.5	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:01.000
533	14:23:01.89	CME	S	3	9515.5	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:01.000
534	14:23:18.11	CME	B	3	9515.5	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:17.000
535	14:23:18.16	CME	S	3	9515.5	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:17.000
536	14:23:24.73	CME	B	3	9516.0	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:24.000
537	14:23:24.77	CME	S	3	9516.0	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:24.000
538	14:24:24.40	CME	B	3	9516.0	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:24:23.000
539	14:24:24.83	CME	S	3	9516.0	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_B	19:24:23.000

Refer to the following for more information:

- **Fills Pane Grid Summary** on page 351
- **Position Pane Grid Summary** on page 355

X_TRADER delivers fill information immediately upon receipt from the exchange. Exchanges provide the information in different ways. For example, some exchanges send fill information via their back office feed. Therefore, problems may arise due to the following:

- Trade confirmations may not be sent immediately or may not be received from the exchange.
- Guaranteed fills provided by back office feeds, which are typically delayed ten seconds, can be delayed a few minutes. The length of the delay varies due to exchange trading volume fluctuations and product state changes (e.g., the closing of a market).

Trading Technologies recommends you use regular exchange screens to complement X_TRADER windows during periods of such delay.

Fills Pane Grid Summary

The **Fills** pane displays the exchange-confirmed data about a trade. To hide columns, refer to the **Fills Pane Context Menu** on page 352.

	Time	Exch	B/S	Qty	Price	Product	Contract	Account #	Exch Time
531	14:22:40.68	eCBOT	S	1	10633	YM	DEC05	PE	19:22:39.000
532	14:23:01.85	CME	B	3	9515.5	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:01.000
533	14:23:01.89	CME	S	3	9515.5	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:01.000
534	14:23:18.11	CME	B	3	9515.5	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:17.000
535	14:23:18.16	CME	S	3	9515.5	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:17.000
536	14:23:24.73	CME	B	3	9516.0	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:24.000
537	14:23:24.77	CME	S	3	9516.0	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:23:24.000
538	14:24:24.40	CME	B	3	9516.0	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_A	19:24:23.000
539	14:24:24.83	CME	S	3	9516.0	GE	MAR10	XTAPI_B	19:24:23.000

For a complete list of columns available in the **Trade Book** window, **Order Book** window and **Fill** window, see **Appendix: Grid Column Descriptions** on page 437.

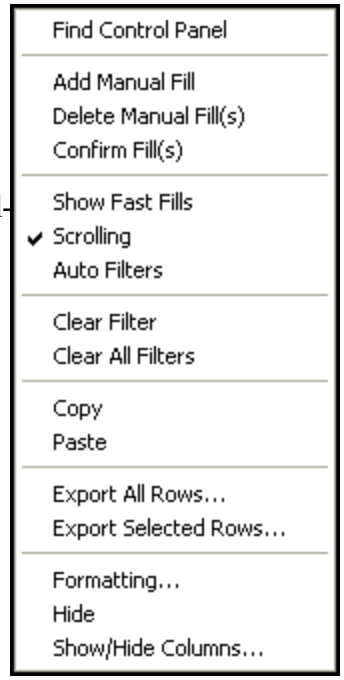
Note: If logging is enabled, LIFFE fill records write to the directory: **<root>:\tt\logFiles** on the TT™ LIFFE Gateway. The file records all fills for each LIFFE trader everyday. The file follows this format: *day.month.year.Ttfill_trader mnemonic*. X_TRADER Administrators must manually delete these files in order to manage hard disk space.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Fills Pane Context Menu

Right-click the **Fills** pane to access the context menu.

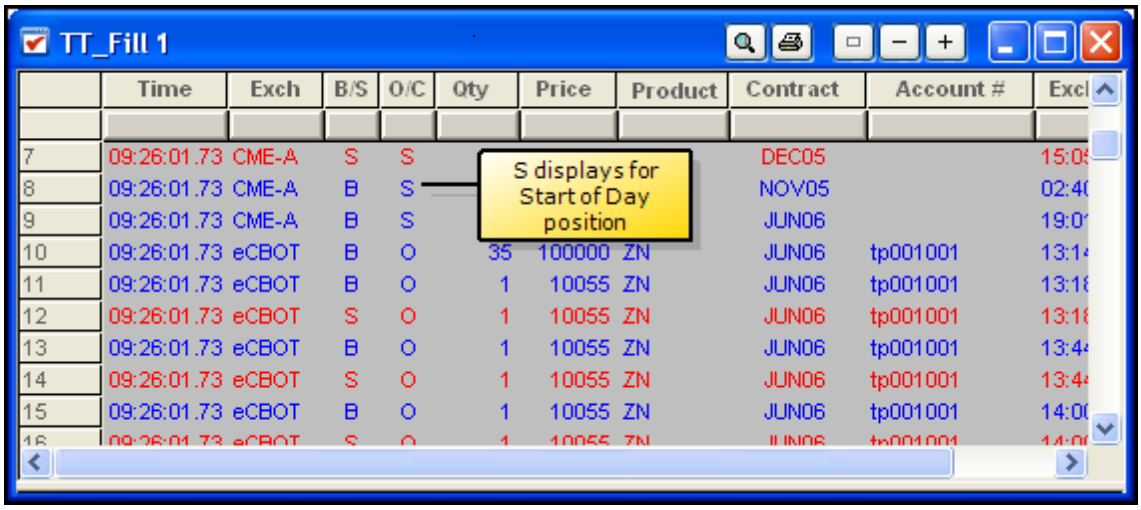
The available menu options include:



- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Add Manual Fill**: Lets you manually enter a fill. Information displays in the **Fills** pane and updates your P/L.
- **Delete Manual Fill**: Deletes fills you manually added.
- **Confirm a fill**: Confirms a fill. Click a single fill or select multiple fills and choose this option. The **C** column displays a hyphen (**-**) for trades confirmed by you, and an equal sign (=) for fills confirmed by another trader.
- **Show Fast Fills**: Displays partial information about the order. Fast Fills are enabled by default but only offered by some exchanges.
- **Scrolling**: Causes the window to jump to a new entry. Enabled by default.
- **Auto Filters**: Enables Auto Filters, which filter the data by selecting a customer from the **Customer List** window.
- **Clear Filter**: Removes the filter from the selected cell.
- **Clear All Filters**: Displays all available data.
- **Copy**: Places selected data on a clipboard for pasting into another program (e.g., Excel).
- **Paste**: Inserts copied data into a selected cell.
- **Export All Rows**: Collects all the data in a file whose name, type, and location you configure.
- **Export Selected Rows**: Collects the data in highlighted rows into file whose name, type, and location you configure.
- **Formatting**: Lets you customize fonts and borders.
- **Hide**: Hides the selected row(s) or column(s).
- **Show/Hide Columns**: Lets you select which columns to show.

Start of Day Fills

X_TRADER notifies you if you carry over a position from the previous session. This option must be enabled by your Risk Manager. If you carry over a position, the **Fill** window displays an **S** in the **Open/Close** column of the **Fills** pane.



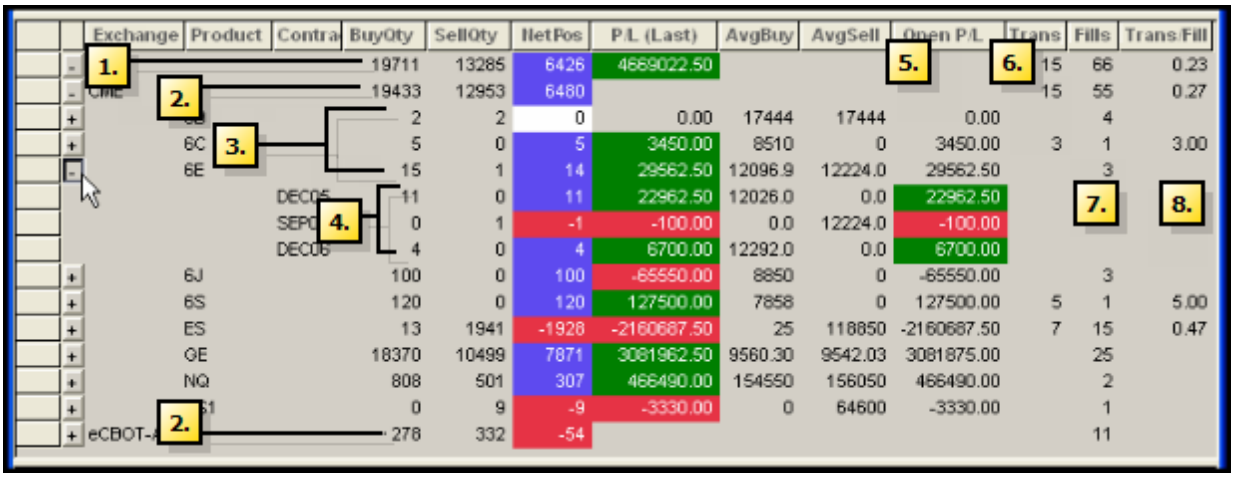
The **Fills** pane may display an **S** to identify a carry over position for each contract.

If you have any questions, contact your Risk Manager.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Position Pane Overview

The **Position** pane is the middle pane of the **Fill** window and displays all contracts for which you have a position.

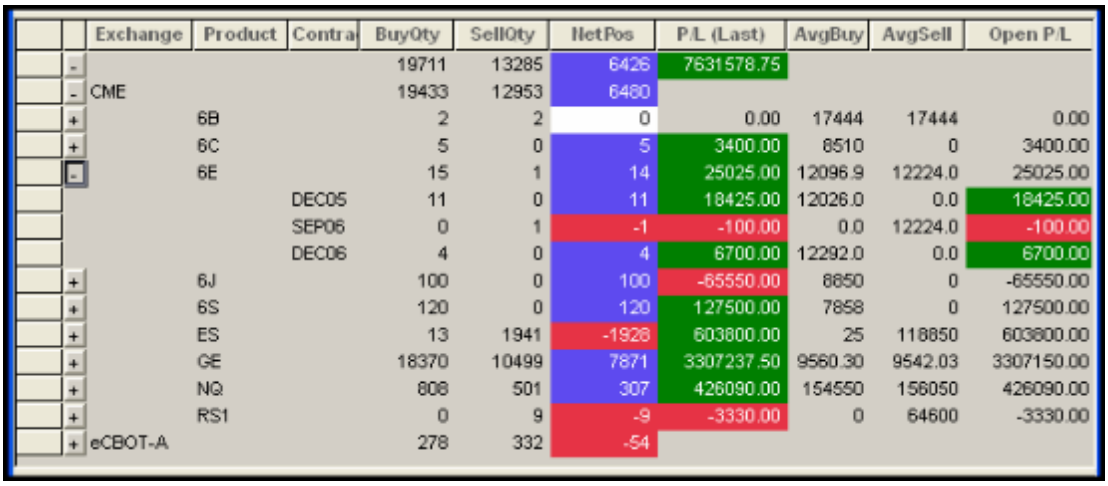


1. One summation line for all positions. Can be expanded to view...
2. ...a summation line for all positions per exchange. Can be expanded to view...
3. ...a summation line for each product. Can be expanded to view...
4. ...a detailed line for each contract.
5. Displays your open Profit and Loss. Refer to **Calculating Profit and Loss** on page 357.
6. Displays total transactions on a series/product basis.
7. Displays number of fill lines on a contract and product basis.
8. Displays ratio of transactions to fills on per contract and product basis

Note: The **Position** pane may contain the letter **o** in the **Contract** column when the position represents an option. This distinguishes between futures and options positions for the same products that have identical expiration dates. This can occur on the LIFFE exchange. For example, a futures and options position for product B Jun09 expiration on LIFFE displays Jun09 (futures position) and oJun09 (options position).

Position Pane Grid Summary

The **Position** pane provides net position information by product and contract. Profit/Loss (P/L) calculates using confirmed fills. To hide columns, refer to the **Position Pane Context Menu** on page 356.



	Exchange	Product	Contra	BuyQty	SellQty	NetPos	P/L (Last)	AvgBuy	AvgSell	Open P/L
-				19711	13285	6426	7631578.75			
-	CME			19433	12953	6480				
+		6B		2	2	0	0.00	17444	17444	0.00
+		6C		5	0	5	3400.00	8510	0	3400.00
-		6E		15	1	14	25025.00	12096.9	12224.0	25025.00
			DEC05	11	0	11	18425.00	12026.0	0.0	18425.00
			SEP06	0	1	-1	-100.00	0.0	12224.0	-100.00
			DEC06	4	0	4	6700.00	12292.0	0.0	6700.00
+		6J		100	0	100	-65550.00	8850	0	-65550.00
+		6S		120	0	120	127500.00	7858	0	127500.00
+		ES		13	1941	-1928	603800.00	25	118850	603800.00
+		GE		18370	10499	7871	3307237.50	9560.30	9542.03	3307150.00
+		NQ		808	501	307	426090.00	154550	156050	426090.00
+		RS1		0	9	-9	-3330.00	0	64600	-3330.00
+	eCBOT-A			278	332	-54				

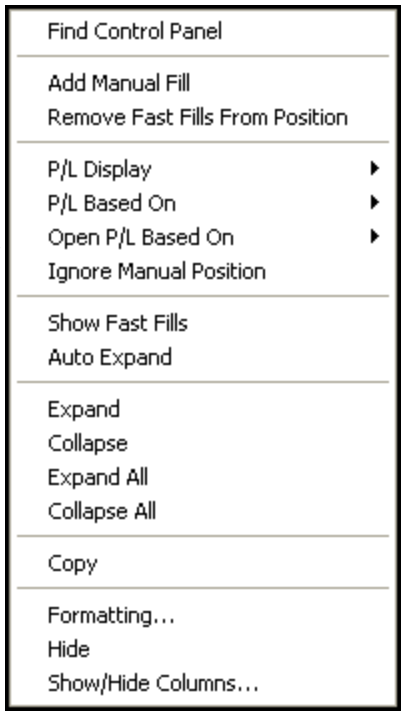
For a complete list of columns available in the **Trade Book** window, **Order Book** window and **Fill** window, see **Appendix: Grid Column Descriptions** on page 437.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Position Pane Context Menu

Right-click the **Position** pane to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:



- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Add Manual Fill**: Lets you manually enter a fill. Information displays in the **Fill** pane and updates your P/L.
- **Remove Fast Fills From Position**: Removes fast fills from the position and recalculates your P/L.
- **P/L Display**: Displays position using the native currency, or the quantity multiplied by the price (default). The primary currency is annotated next to the **Currency** option (for example, Currency – USD).
- **P/L Based On**: Recalculates your Profit and Loss based on your selection.
- **Open P/L Based On**: Recalculates your open Profit and Loss based on your selection.
- **Ignore Manual Position**: Removes manual fills and recalculates your P/L.
- **Show Fast Fills**: Displays partial information about the order. Fast Fills are enabled by default but only offered by some exchanges.
- **Auto Expand**: Automatically opens the position tree.
- **Expand**: Expands the current branch.
- **Collapse**: Contracts only the selected product.
- **Expand All**: Expands the position tree to view all branches.
- **Collapse All**: Contracts the position tree.
- **Copy**: Places selected data on a clipboard for pasting into another program (e.g., Excel).
- **Formatting**: Lets you customize fonts and borders.
- **Hide**: Hides the selected row(s) or column(s).
- **Show/Hide Columns**: Lets you select which columns to show.

Calculating Profit and Loss

You can calculate Profit and Loss (P/L) for open positions based on any of the following:

- Risk
- Last price
- Bid/ask price
- Opening price
- Closing price
- High price
- Low price
- Settlement price

Open P/L Based On Formula

Open P/L can be based on the same prices as P/L. You can also calculate open P/L using one of two formulas:

- **Average Price**: Open Position multiplied by (The price your open P/L is based on – Average Buy or Sell Price).
- **Match Price**: Open Position multiplied by (The price your open P/L is based on – Average Buy or Sell Price of the trades comprising your Open Position).

Note: The average price used (Buy or Sell) depends on whether you are long or short.

Example:

You buy:

- 2 @ 100
- 3 @ 125
- 20 @ 150

You sell:

- 10 @ 120

Your open P/L is based on the last traded price (LTP).

LTP = 160 Your current Open Position = 15

Average Price = 15 * (160 - 143) = 255

Match Price = 15 * (160 - average price of the last 15 trades) = 15 * (160 - 150) = 150

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

P/L Column Display

X_TRADER lets you select the **P/L** (Profit/Loss) column display type. The position's **P/L** column displays in one of the following:

- Selected primary currency (The Primary Currency designation in the Guardian Currency Table determines the default currency. The default primary currency is USD. To change the primary currency via Guardian, speak to your X_TRADER System Administrator.)
- Product's native currency
- Quantity multiplied by the price
- Ticks

To select the P/L method:

1. Right-click any cell in the **Position** pane to access the context menu.
2. Click **P/L based on** and select a calculating method.
3. Click **Open P/L based on** and choose **Average Price** or **Match Price**.
4. Click **Display** and choose a display type.

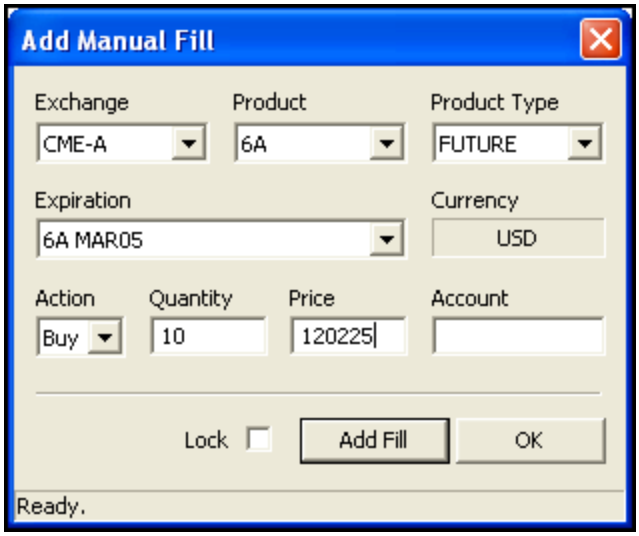
Note: You can only obtain a total position P/L if you have selected **Currency – USD**.

You successfully selected the P/L method.

Managing Manual Fills

If you execute trades outside of X_TRADER, you can manage those trade using the **Add Manual Fill** dialog box. Adding trades in this manner lets X_TRADER calculate your true position and P/L (profit/loss).

Note: Manual fills affect only the position and P/L data. X_TRADER does not provide manual fill information to the middle or back office.



Follow these procedures to manage manual fills:

- Adding a Manual Fill
- Deleting a Manual Fill
- Saving a Manual Fill

To access the Add Manual Fill dialog box:

Right-click the **Fills** window and click **Add Manual Fill**.

You successfully accessed the **Add Manual Fill** dialog box.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Add Manual Fills Dialog Box Field Descriptions

The fields in the **Market Explorer** window include:

Field	Description
Exchange	The exchange on which the order was filled. **Note**: You must be logged onto the exchange before you can select an exchange here.
Product	The traded product's exchange symbol. **Example**: FGBL, ODAX
Product Type	The type of product in the order. **Example**: Future, Future Spread, Option
Expiration	The instruments of the selected product type and product supported by the exchange.
Currency	The currency used in the trade. **Example**: USD = United States Dollar
Action	Buy or Sell in reference to an order.
Quantity	The quantity filled in the order.
Price	The price at which the quantity fills.
Account	The back office account number or name as indicated in the Customer Default profile.
Add Fill	Sends the manual trade to the **Fills** pane. **Note**: This button enables after you complete all mandatory fields.
Confirm	Lets you ensure the fill is correct before adding it to the **Fills** pane.
OK	Closes the **Add Manual Fill** dialog box.
Status Bar	Shows the state of the dialog box, including when the manual fill is added to the **Fills** pane.

Adding a Manual Fill

To add a manual fill to the Fills pane:

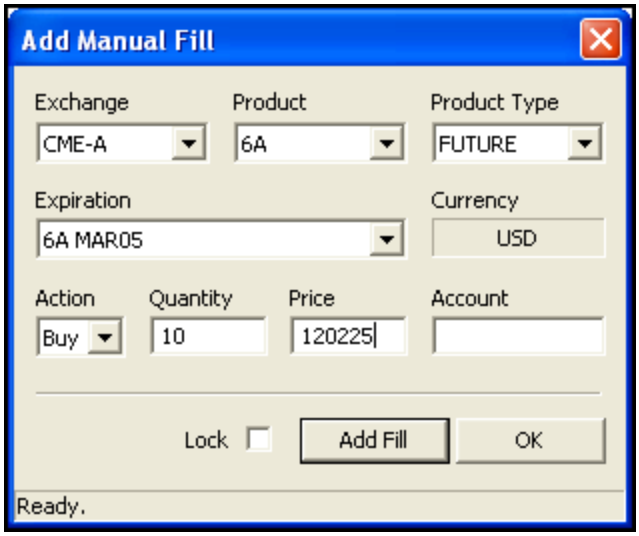
Note: In order to save a manual fill, you must enable the **Save Manual Fills** option on the **Fill** tab in the **Properties** menu.

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Fill Window**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. In the **Fills** pane, right-click an open area and choose **Add Manual Fill**.

The **Add Manual Fill** dialog box appears.



Notes:

- Place your cursor on a specific fill in the **Fills** pane to pre-populate the **Add Manual Fill** dialog box with information.
- Open the **Add Manual Fill** dialog box via the **Position** pane to have all fields appear blank.

3. From the **Exchange** field, click the exchange.
4. From the **Product** field, click the product.
5. From the **Product Type** field, click the product type.
6. From the **Expiration** field, click the contract expiration.
7. In the **Action** field, click **Buy** or **Sell**.
8. In the **Quantity** field, type the appropriate value.
9. In the **Price** field, type the appropriate value.

   After you complete all mandatory fields, **Add Fill** enables.
10. In the **Account** field, type any applicable account information. (optional)
11. If you want to see the formatted fill before you add it, click the **Confirm** checkbox.
12. Click the **Add Fill** button.

    The manual fill is added to the **Fill** window. If you clicked the **Confirm** checkbox, you must confirm the manual fill.
13. Click **OK** to exit.

You successfully added a manual fill to the **Fills** pane.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Deleting a Manual Fill

The only way to remove a manual fill is to delete it. They persist even in case of an emergency or automatic shutdown when you lose connectivity to X_TRADER.

To delete a manual fill from the Fills pane:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Fill Window**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. From the **Fills** pane, click to select the manual fill trade you want to delete.

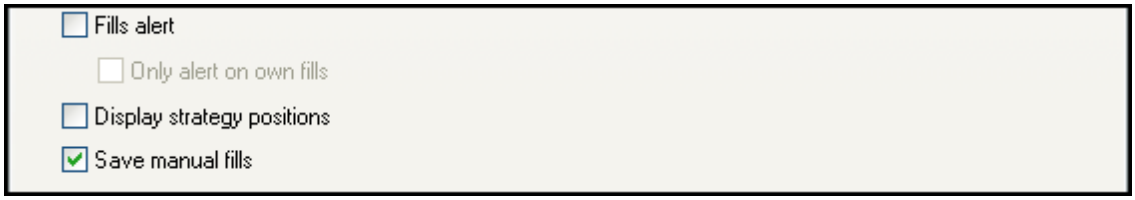
   Note: Manual fills are identified by the **m** in the **Open/Closed** (**O/C**)column.
3. In the **Fills** pane, right-click an open area and choose **Delete Manual Fill**.

   The **Fills** and **Position** panes update to reflect the fill deletion.

You successfully deleted manual fill from the **Fills** pane.

Saving a Manual Fill

In order to save a manual fill, you must enable the **Save Manual Fills** option on the **Fill** tab in the **Properties** menu.



If you have manual fills on multiple exchanges and you close X_TRADER, when you reopen it, you are prompted to log into all exchanges where you have manual fills.

Notes:

- You can add manual fills for future spreads and options strategies as well as outright futures and options.
- If you have an **Add Manual Fill** dialog box open and try to open a second, you are asked whether you want to override the current settings with the new specified fill. If you click **OK**, the **Add Manual Fill** dialog box populates with data from the new fill.

Fast Fills Pane Overview

Fast fills are orders in which only partial information about the order is supplied. Only some exchanges offer fast fills.

Note: The **Fast Fills** pane is turned off by default.

X_TRADER provides fast fill information to mitigate the potentially significant delays that may occur while waiting for a guaranteed fill. For example, fast fills for Eurex are composed of two items:

- Immediate executed quantities resulting from an order entered via X_TRADER.
- Eurex trade confirmations sent to X_TRADER for resting orders (which are typically sent immediately after a match occurs).

To access the Fast Fills Pane:

1. Right-click either the **Fills** pane or the **Position** pane to access the context menu.
2. Click **Show Fast Fills**.

   The **Fast Fills** pane opens on the bottom of the **Fill** window.

You successfully accessed the **Fast Fills** pane.

To remove Fast Fills from a position:

1. Right-click a cell in the **Position** pane to access the context menu.
2. Click **Remove Fast Fills from Position**.

You successfully removed Fast Fills from a position.

Fast Fill Notes

Inherent issues exist with the use of Fast Fills:

- Exchanges do not typically guarantee Fast Fills.
- Fast Fills transmit to all traders with the same Group ID.

  Example: With a Trader ID = *MemberIDGroupIDTraderID*
- Fast Fills move from the **Fast Fills** pane to the **Fills** pane upon receipt of the guaranteed fill from the exchange.
- Fast Fills do NOT reflect in the position calculations.
- Fast Fills do NOT update the Order Book because a given order cannot be tied to the limited information they contain.

When all filters clear, the **Fast Fills** pane and **FFNet** column enable. All fast fills that arrived while the filters were in use now display, and the **FFNet** column automatically updates.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Eurex Fast Fills Information

P/L calculates using only confirmed fills. Eurex Fast Fills are not included anymore in net position calculations. However, we can configure the TT™ Eurex Gateway to automatically convert Fast Fills into confirmed fills.

Using the following two columns, a Eurex trader can monitor position updates:

- **FFNet** (Fast Fills Net Quantity) column: Displays the fast fill net quantity. As fast fills are received, the FFNet column updates and reflects the new fast fill position.
- **NetQty** (Net Quantity) column: Reflects the position based only on confirmed fills. The **NetQty** column updates and reflects the new confirmed position.

When the **Fill** window opens, the **FFNet** column synchronizes with **NetQty**. Under normal trading situations, the **FFNet** column updates slightly ahead of the **NetQty** column because Fast Fills appear before confirmed fills.

FFNet and NetQty Synchronization

When you trade Eurex, you can easily identify when **NetQty** and **FFNet** are out of synchronization (do not match) for an extended period. The following can result:

- Errant or erroneous Fast Fills.
- Changing a working order that gets filled immediately.
- If a Fast Fill has been received, clearing all filters results in reinitializing the **NetQty** and **FFNet** fields, so they are the same. Receipt of the confirmed fill causes an out-of-synch occurrence.

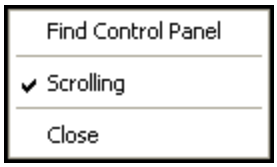
If you think that the fast fill position reflects errant or erroneous fast fills, use the **Remove Fast Fills From Position** option on the Position pane context menu to resynchronize the fast fill position with the confirm fill position.

Fast Fills Pane Context Menu

Right-click the **Fast Fill** pane to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:

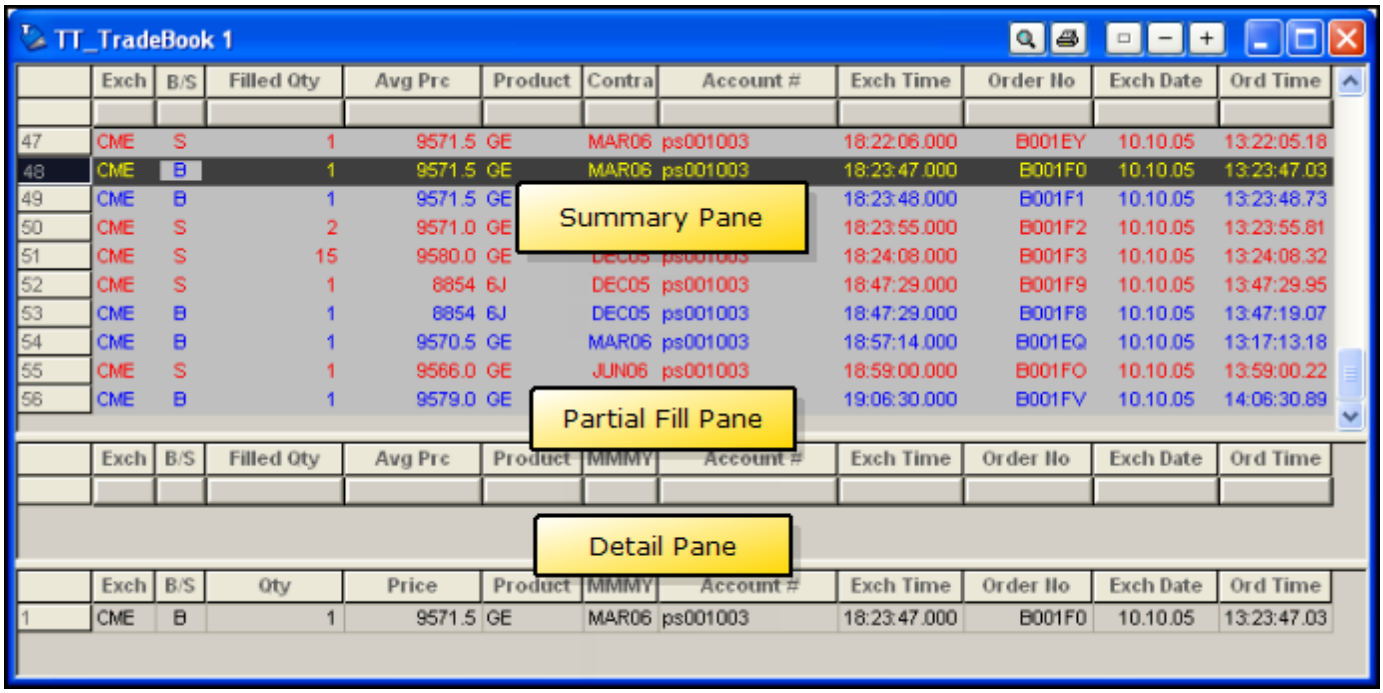
- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Scrolling**: Causes the window to jump to a new entry. Enabled by default.
- **Close**: Closes the **Fast Fill** pane.



CHAPTER 13

Trade Book Overview

The **Trade Book** window presents summary and detailed aggregate fill information for your orders.



The following panes compose the **Trade Book** window:

- The **Summary** pane is the top part of the window.
- The **Partial Fill** pane, when displayed, is the middle part of the window.
- The **Detail** pane is the bottom part of the window.

Follow these procedures to use the **Trade Book** window:

- **Displaying Fill Details In the Trade Book Window** on page 368
- **Showing or Hiding Partial Fills** on page 368
- **Sorting Trade Book Data** on page 369
- **Filtering Overview** on page 50

▶ **To open the Trade Book window:**

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Trade Book**.

- or -

From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

You successfully opened the **Trade Book** window.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Trade Book Grid Summary

The following panes compose the **Trade Book** window:

- The **Summary** pane is the top part of the window. It displays a single line of information for each filled order in the top half of the window. It is possible, when multiple fills are received for a spread, they appear as separate legs.
- The **Partial Fill** pane, when displayed, is the middle part of the window. It displays partially filled orders. Once an order is filled completely or deleted, the summary information moves to the **Summary** pane.
- The **Detail** pane is the bottom part of the window. It displays the history and detailed information for any item selected in either the **Summary** or **Partial Fill** pane.

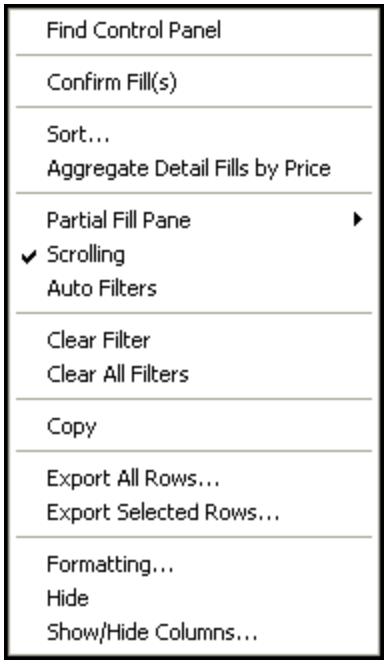
The available columns in the Trade Book are nearly identical for each pane.

For a complete list of columns available in the **Trade Book** window, **Order Book** window and **Fill** window, see **Appendix: Grid Column Descriptions** on page 437.

Trade Book Context Menu

Right-click the **Trade Book** window to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:



- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Confirm Fill(s)**: Confirms a fill. Click a single fill or select multiple fills and choose this option. The **C** column displays a hyphen (-) for trades confirmed by you, and an equal sign (=) for fills confirmed by another trader.
- **Sort**: Defines the sort order by column and up to three levels. By default, the **Trade Book** window sorts by last fill time with the most recent fill at the bottom of the pane.

  Save sort order as part of a workspace. Refer to **Saving a Workspace** on page 70.
- **Aggregate Detail Fills by Price**: Displays all fills that occur at a single price level on one aggregated line. When disabled, every partial detail fill displays on its own line.
- **Partial Fill Pane**: Shows three options: **Top Pane**, **Middle Pane**, **None**.
- **Scrolling**: Causes the window to jump to a new entry. Enabled by default.
- **Auto Filters**: Enables Auto Filters, which filter the data by selecting a customer from the **Customer List** window.
- **Clear Filter**: Removes the filter from the selected cell.
- **Clear All Filters**: Displays all available data.
- **Copy**: Places selected data on a clipboard for pasting into another program (e.g., Excel).
- **Export All Rows**: Collects all the data in a file whose name, type and location you configure.
- **Export Selected Rows**: Collects the data in highlighted rows into a file whose name, type and location you configure.
- **Formatting**: Lets you customize fonts and borders.
- **Hide**: Hides the selected row(s) or column(s).
- **Show/Hide Columns**: Lets you select which columns to show.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Showing or Hiding Partial Fills

An option on the context menu lets you decide how you view partial fills in the Trade Book.

To show or hide partial fills:

1. Right-click the **Trade Book** window to display the context menu.
2. Highlight **Partial Fills**.
3. Click one of the following:
   - **Top Pane**: Puts partial fills in the top pane. The **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu has a new **Partial Fill Highlight** property that distinguishes partial fills from full fills. The default is yellow.
   - **Middle Pane**: Adds the middle **Partial Fills** pane.
   - **None**: Hides partial fills.

You successfully shown or hidden partial fills.

Displaying Fill Details In the Trade Book Window

To display detailed fill information about an order:

Click on a row in the top, or **Summary** pane, of the **Trade Book** window.

The detailed information will be displayed in the bottom or **Detail** pane.

You successfully displayed detailed fill information about an order.

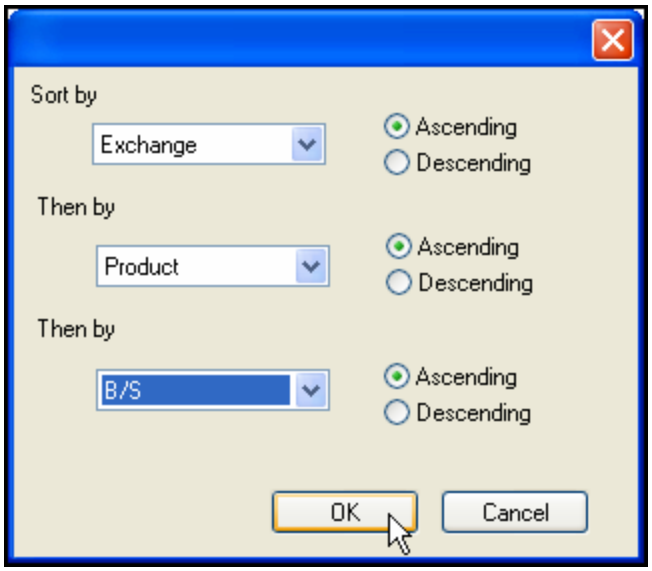
Sorting Trade Book Data

By default, the **Trade Book** window sorts by last fill time with the most recent fill at the bottom of the pane. Define the sort order by column and up to three levels in ascending or descending order.

To define the sorting parameters of your Trade Book:

1. Right-click inside the **Trade Book** window to display the context menu.
2. Click **Sort**.

   The **Sort** dialog box displays.



3. In the **Sort by** field, click the first field to sort by.
4. Click whether to sort this field in **Ascending** or **Descending** order.
5. If you want to use another field to further sort the **Trade Book** window, in the **Then by** field, click the second field to sort by.

   - or -

   Skip to step 9.
6. Click whether to sort this field in **Ascending** or **Descending** order.
7. If you want to use another field to further sort the **Trade Book** window, in the **Then by** field, click the third field to sort by.
8. Click whether to sort this field in **Ascending** or **Descending**order.
9. Click **OK**.

You successfully defined the sorting parameters of your Trade Book.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

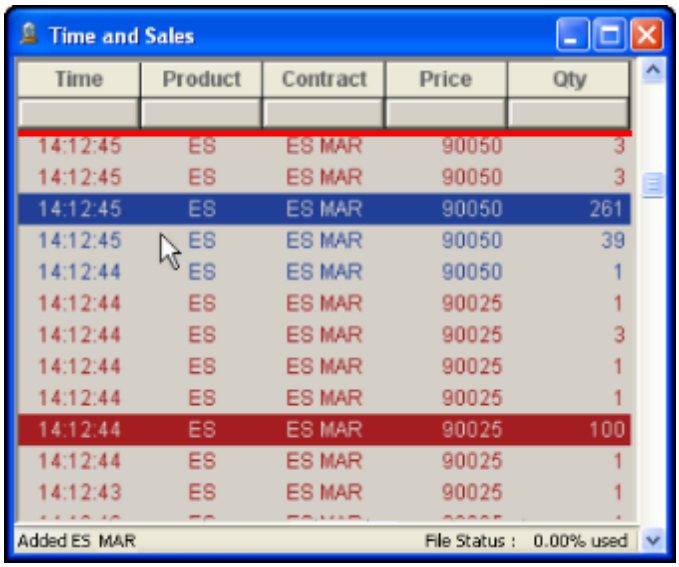
[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

CHAPTER 14

Time and Sales Overview

The **Time and Sales** window provides you with the ability to track, record, and save time and sales information for products traded through X_TRADER. You populate a **Time and Sales** window with one or more products using the drag-and-drop method from the Market Grid.



Follow these procedures to use the **Time and Sales** window:

- **Populating the Time and Sales Window**: Use the drag-and-drop method to display market activity.
- **Saving Time and Sales Information**: Save data to a file you can open and customize in Microsoft Excel.

Notes:

- Time and Sales does not track the inside market.
- Time and Sales uses the price feed to show and record sales information. Because some markets do not include every trade in their real time price feeds, this information can be incomplete. For additional information, please refer to exchange specific documentation.
- You can drag-and drop a spread product into the **Time and Sales** window to display and time stamp their market activity. However, only the generic spread names based on the products and expirations appear. Customized names of spreads do not appear.

▶ To open Time and Sales:

From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Time and Sales**.

- or -

From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.

You successfully logged into Time and Sales.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Column Descriptions

The **Time and Sales** window has the following column names:

Column Heading	Description
Time	Time the event took place (drawn from the workstation, not the exchange).
Exchange	Name of the exchange where the event occurred.
Product	Name of the product as drawn from the Market Grid.
Contract	Name of the contract as drawn from the Market Grid.
Price	Buy/Sell price of the product.
Qty	Quantity of the product that was bought/sold.

Filters

Use filters in the **Time and Sales** window to quickly sort and display data. You can select an **OTC** filter from the **Type**, **Price**, and **Qty** columns in the window. Refer to **Filtering Overview** on page 50.

Populating the Time and Sales Window

After you open a **Time and Sales** window on the desktop, you must populate it.

Follow the procedures below:

- Populating the Time and Sales window from Market Explorer
- Populating the Time and Sales window using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer
- Populating the Time and Sales window using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid

To populate the Time and Sales window from Market Explorer:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
3. In the **Products** section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
4. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Instruments** field updates as you type.
5. From the **Instrument Type** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
6. Press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.

   - or -

   To open all products in the **Instruments** field, click the >> button and skip to step 7.
7. Click the > button to transfer the products from the **Instruments** box to the **Selected Instruments** box.
8. Click the **Function** box in the upper right corner of the Market Explorer and choose **Time and Sales**.
9. Click **Start**.

   The name of the product appears, displaying its associated information (**Exchange**, **Price**, **Quantity**, and **Time**). In addition, the lower left corner of the **Time and Sales** window describes the status of the drag-and-drop: **Added** (contract information).

You successfully populated the **Time and Sales** window from Market Explorer.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To populate a window using drag-and-drop from Market Explorer:

1. If the **Time and Sales** window is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open it.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Market Explorer**.

   - or -

   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
3. If you are logged into more than one exchange, in the **Exchanges** box, click the exchange whose product you want to find.
4. In the **Products** section, click the **down arrow** and choose your search filter.
5. Type your search criteria in the available space.

   The **Instruments** field updates as you type.
6. From the **Instrument Type** box, click to toggle between the displayed types.
7. From the **Instruments** box, press and hold the CTRL key and click the products you want to open.
8. With the cursor over one of the selected products in the **Instruments** box, click and hold the mouse button.
9. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the open **Time and Sales** window.

   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters a window, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
10. Release the mouse button.

    The name of the product appears, displaying its associated information (**Exchange**, **Price**, **Quantity**, and **Time**). In addition, the lower left corner of the **Time and Sales** window describes the status of the drag-and-drop: **Added** (contract information).

You successfully populated the **Time and Sales** window using drag-and-drop from the Market Explorer.

To populate the Time and Sales window using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid:

1. If the **Time and Sales** window is not open, use the **Control Panel** to open it.
2. From an open Market Grid, click the selected product and hold the mouse button.
3. Continue holding the mouse button and drag the cursor to the open **Time and Sales** window.

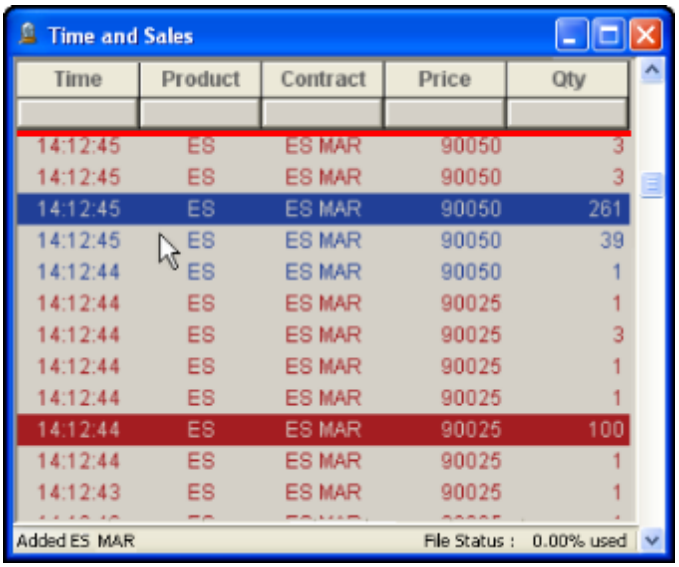
   When the cursor leaves the window, it changes to a circle with a diagonal line through it. When the cursor enters a window, it changes to include a plus [+] sign.
4. Release the mouse button.

   The name of the product appears, displaying its associated information (**Exchange**, **Price**, **Quantity**, and **Time**). In addition, the lower left corner of the **Time and Sales** window describes the status of the drag-and-drop: **Added** (contract information).

You successfully populated the **Time and Sales** window using drag-and-drop from the Market Grid.

Reading the Time and Sales Window

The **Time and Sales** window keeps a running record of sales for each product added in the chronological order it is received. Use the scroll bar to view all received information.

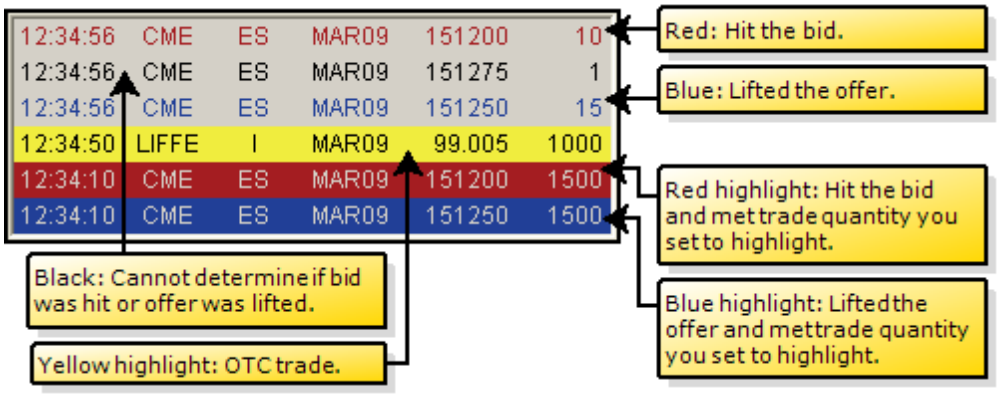


- Each new entry is added to the top of the list, causing the window to auto-scroll downward.
- If you manually scroll through the list to review older data, auto-scroll turns off.
- A red line at the top of the window indicates you can scroll up to view additional information.
- To return to auto-scrolling, scroll to the top of the window.

Note: Each row is subject to filters applied to the **Time and Sales** window. All information is stored in a file called *TAS_Data_YYYYMMDD_000001.csv* in the directory: **<root drive>:tt\datfiles\tsdata**

Recognizing Color Codes

Each row in the **Time and Sales** window displays information about a single trade for a contract. The row information is color-coded so you can easily identify the trade activity. These colors can be changed in the **Color** tab on the **Properties** menu.



Set the trade quantity you want to highlight on the **Time and Sales** tab on the **Properties** menu.

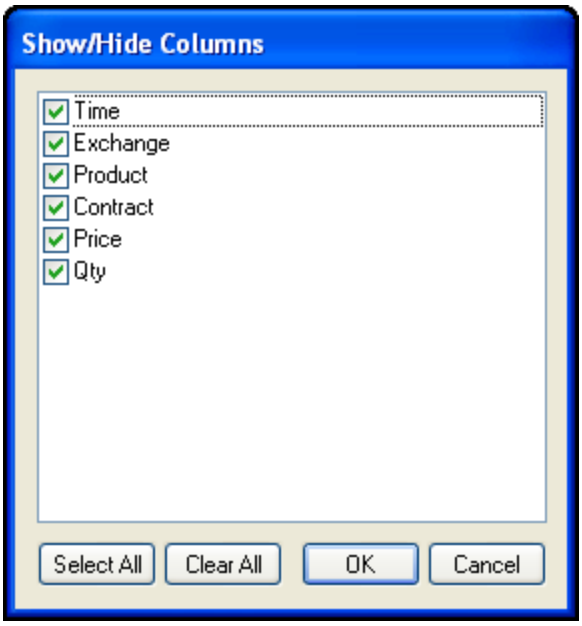
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Hiding Time and Sales Columns

Using the context menu, you can choose which columns you show in the **Time and Sales** window.

To choose which columns you show:

1. Right-click the **Time and Sales** window.
2. From the context menu, click **Show/Hide Columns**.
   The **Show/Hide Columns** dialog box appears.



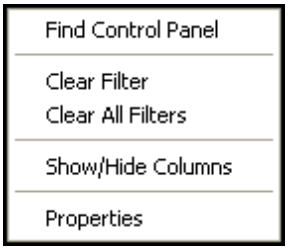
3. In the **Show/Hide Columns** dialog, click to select the columns you want to see.
4. Click **OK**.

You successfully chose which columns you show.

Time and Sales Context Menu

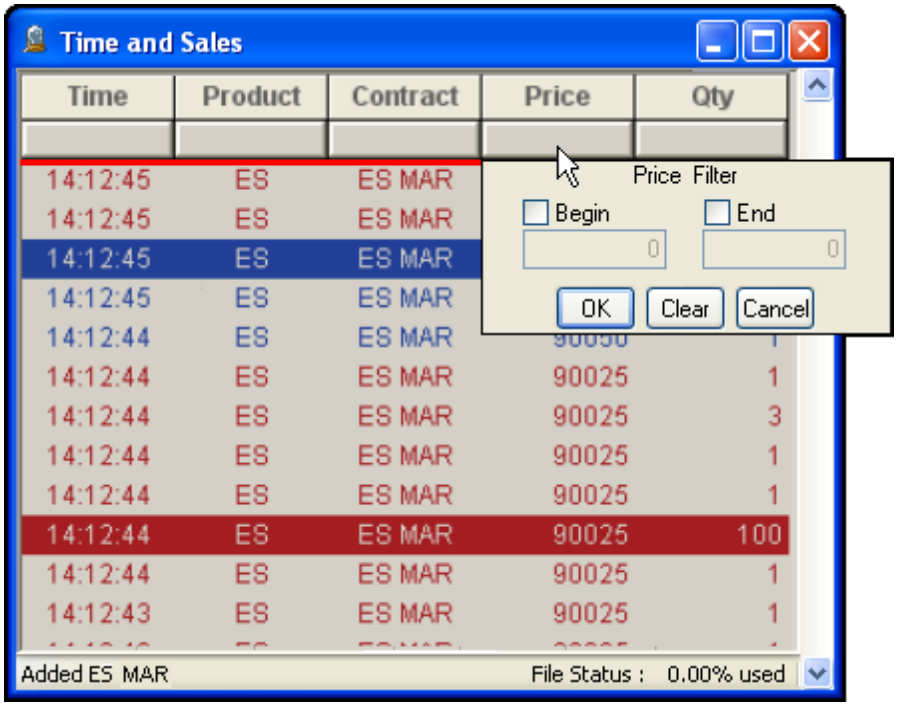
Right-click the **Time and Sales** window to access the context menu.

The available menu options include:



- **Find Control Panel**: Displays the **Control Panel**.
- **Clear Filter**: Removes the filter from the selected cell.
- **Clear All Filters**: Displays all available data.
- **Show/Hide Columns**: Lets you select which columns to show.
- **Properties**: Opens the local **Properties** menu.

Time and Sales Filters Overview



All the columns in the **Time and Sales** window can be filtered using a selection of criteria from a drop-down list. The presence of an applied filter is indicated by a red color code in the cell immediately below the column heading.

Use these filtering procedures in the **Time and Sales** window:

- Refer to **Setting a Column Filter** on page 50
- Refer to **Clearing a Column Filter** on page 51

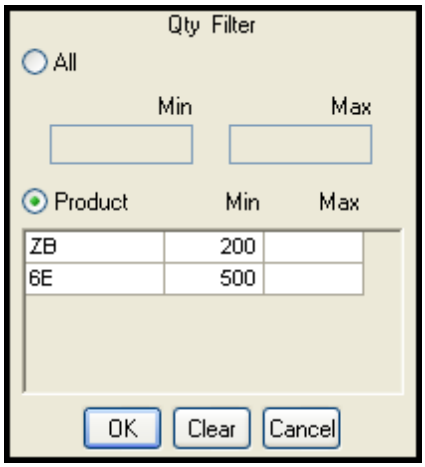
Each row is subject to filters applied to the **Time and Sales** window. If filters are applied, only product information that fits the filter criteria appears. Information that does not meet the filtering constraints is not shown.

All information is stored in a file called *TAS_Data_YYYYMMDD_000001.csv* in the directory: **<root drive>:tt\datfiles\tsdata**

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Filtering on Quantity for Specific Contracts

You can filter your **Time and Sales** window based on quantities recorded for specific contracts.



To filter on quantity for specific contracts:

1. In the **Time and Sales** window, click the **Qty** column.
2. Click the **Product** option.
3. Type a number in the **Min** column next to the product for which you want to set a quantity.
4. Click **OK**.

You successfully filtered on quantity for specific contracts.

Saving Time and Sales Information

The **Time and Sales** window automatically saves trading data for all products populated in its window while it is open. (e.g., if the application is open for only four hours, only four hours of data will be automatically saved.)

Tip: All information stores in a file called *TAS_Data_YYYYMMDD_000001.csv* in the directory: **<root drive>:tt\datfiles\tsdata**. Where *000001* stands for the Time and Sales session opened on *YYYYMMDD* the Year, Month and Day.

Use the **Time and Sales** tab in the **Properties** menu to customize the maximum file size and number of days to save Time and Sales files.

- The maximum size of the saved data file is 250 MB.
- The maximum number of days to save files is 5 days.

Time and Sales Properties Tab

The **Time and Sales** tab in the **Properties** menu is used to set the following file saving characteristics:

- **Maximum File Size**: If the amount of data exceeds the configured limit during any time period, the **Time and Sales** window continues to update, but the data will not be saved to the file. The maximum size for the data file is 250 MB.
- **Number of days to save file**: Historical data files are saved once per day. The maximum number of days to save files is 5 days.

Note: Time and Sales files older than the configured/default limit are deleted at startup. If you want to archive these files, save them to another directory before they are deleted.

Use the **Time and Sales** tab on the **Properties** menu to perform these procedures:

- Setting how Time and Sales data files are saved
- Archiving the .csv file before it is deleted

To set how Time and Sales data files are saved:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Time and Sales** tab.
3. Enter a value in the **Maximum File Size** box (maximum is 250 MB).
4. Enter the number of days to automatically save the files (maximum is 5 days).
5. Click on **OK** to close the **Properties** menu and activate the settings.

You successfully configured saved Time and Sales data files.

To archive the .csv file before it is deleted:

1. From your desktop, right-click the **Start Menu** and choose **Explore**.
2. Under your **C:** drive, double click the **tt** folder.
3. Double-click the **datfiles** folder.
4. Double-click the **tsdata** folder.
5. Right click the *TAS_Data_YYYYMMDD_000001.csv* file and click **Copy**.

   Note: Where *000001* stands for the session opened on *YYYYMMDD* the Year, Month and Day.
6. Navigate to the folder you want to save the file in.
7. Right-click an open space in the new folder and click **Paste**.

You successfully archived the .csv file.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

CHAPTER 15

Wholesale Trading Overview

The LIFFE Wholesale system is a reporting mechanism for transactions negotiated outside the wholesale trade markets.

They must also decide which firm executes the order. The executing member submits the order on both the buy and sell side. Because the counter member does not submit an order, no counter member information exists in the order. The counter member does not receive order acknowledgment or fills. Once a wholesale order has been submitted, it cannot be canceled, revised, or handed off to a different trader.

Note: Wholesale orders appear in the **Audit Trail** window, and the **Total Traded Quantity** column in the **Market** and **Fill** windows. Wholesale orders do not appear in the **Order Book** window.

To open a Wholesale Trade window:

1. Log onto one of the exchanges that support wholesale trades.
2. Open the Market Explorer and select a product.
3. Open a **Market** window for the selected product.
4. In the **Market** window, click the row containing the product.
5. To access the Market Grid context menu, right-click in the specified product row.
6. Highlight **Wholesale** and click the type of wholesale window you want to open.

   The wholesale window displays.

You successfully opened a **Wholesale Trade** window.

Wholesale Trading Audit Trail Messages

The two firms negotiate the terms of the transaction outside the market. They must decide which firm executes the order. The executing member submits the order. Because the counter member does not submit an order, no counter member information exists in the order. The counter member does not receive order acknowledgement or fills. Once a wholesale order is submitted, it cannot be canceled, revised, or handed to a different trader.

Note: TTORD Traders are permitted to send Block trades

The following wholesale trading events cause a message to appear in the Audit Trail:

Event	Message Indicates
Order Submission	Wholesale order has been submitted to the exchange
Order Receipt	Wholesale order has been received by the exchange
Fill Message	One fill message is sent for the buy side of the order
Fill Message	One fill message is sent for the sell side of the order
Order Reject	Order is rejected by the exchange

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Wholesale Trading Types

Wholesale trades are defined as follows:

- **Block Trades**: High volume trades in any outright or strategy product.
- **Basis Trades**: Strategies for long-term bond markets that incorporate a futures leg and an underlying (or cash) leg.

  Only the future leg is traded at the LIFFE exchange. The cash leg is traded on a separate exchange, which can be executed through X_TRADER or another method.
- **Against Actuals Trades**: Strategies for commodities markets that incorporate a futures leg and an underlying commodity leg.

  Only the future leg is traded at the LIFFE exchange. The cash leg is traded on a separate exchange, which can be executed through X_TRADER or another method.

  Against Actual trades are only valid for commodities contracts.
- **Exchange for Swap Trades**: A strategy whereby a position in the underlying is traded for a futures position in two separate transactions.
- **Flex Options Trades**: FTSE 100 options, except that any expiration day and exercise price can be specified.

  Flex Option trades are only valid for the ESX contract at LIFFE.

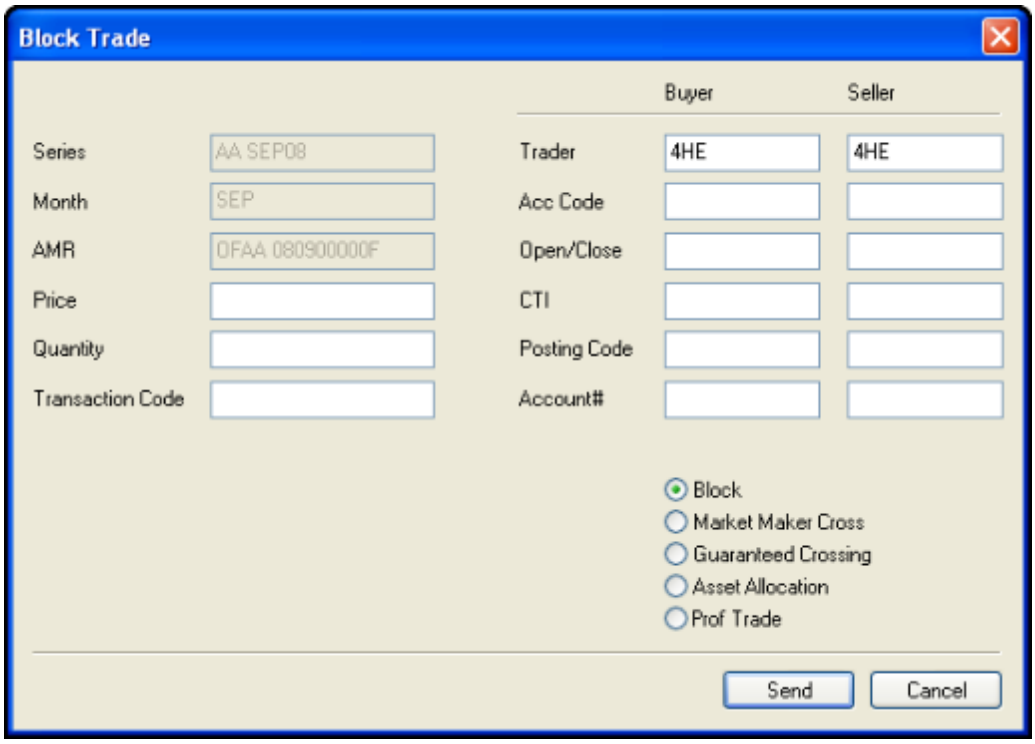
Wholesale Trading Types and Supporting Exchanges

The following table shows the order types each exchange supports, as well as other requirements.

Exchange	Wholesale Trades Supported						Account Codes Required	CTI Codes Required	Posting Codes Required
	Against Actuals	Basis	Block	Flex Options	Guaranteed Cross	Market Maker Cross			
LIFFE	X	X	X	X			X		
Euronext (Paris)	X	X	X	X	X		X		X
Euronext (Brussels)	X	X	X	X	X		X		X

Block Trade Overview

Block trades are high volume trades in any outright or strategy product. Use the **Block Trade** window to submit a block trade.



Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Block Trade Window

The fields in a **Block Trade** window vary depending on the type of product or strategy you trade. If the product is a strategy, the associated legs for that strategy are listed in a set of fields in the lower half of the **Block Trade** window. The **Quantity** and **Price** fields must be filled for each leg of the strategy in order for the trade to be accepted.

General Fields	Descriptions
Series	Name and identification of the contract series. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
Month	Maturity month of the contract. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
AMR	Auto Market Reference—unique exchange-specific product identifier. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
Price	Price of the product.
Quantity	Quantity of the product to be traded.
Transaction Code	A code uniquely identifying the trade.

Buyer / Seller Fields	Descriptions
Trader	An exchange mnemonic uniquely identifying the trader.
Acc Code	Account code for this trade. Can be one of the following: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated)
Open/Close	Indicates whether this trade opens or closes a position.
CTI	Clearing code. Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation
Posting Code	Account posting code.
Account #	Optional field used for account numbers up to eight digits.
Leg	Name of the strategy leg (optional with Strategies).
Quantity	Quantity of the strategy leg to be traded (optional with Strategies).
Price	Price of the strategy leg to be traded (optional with Strategies).

Optional Buttons	Descriptions
Block	Designates a block trade.
Market Maker Cross	Designates a cross order.
Guaranteed Crossing	Designates a guaranteed cross order. Refer to **Euronext and Guaranteed Crossing** on page 401.
Asset Allocation	Designates an asset allocation. Refer to **Asset Allocation Methods** on page 402.
Prof Trade	Designates a Prof Trade. Refer to **Entering Prof Trades** on page 397.

Submitting a Block Trade

Block trades are high volume trades in any outright or strategy product. Block trading is not subject to normal X_TRADER credit risk limitations. The trader submitting the order will be notified by the exchange if it is approved.

Note: Wholesale orders appear in the **Audit Trail** window, and the **Total Traded Quantity** column in the **Market** and **Fill** windows. Wholesale orders do not appear in the **Order Book** window.

To submit a block trade:

1. Log into the appropriate exchange.
2. Open the Market Explorer and select a product.
3. Open a **Market** window for the selected product.
4. In the **Market** window, click in the row containing the product.
5. Right-click in the row to access the context menu.
6. Highlight **Wholesale** and click **Block**.

   The **Block Trade** window displays. The **Series**, **Month**, and **AMR** fields display data from the Market Grid.
7. In the **Price** and **Quantity** fields, type the appropriate values.
8. Complete steps 9-13 in both the **Buyer** and **Seller** sections.
9. In both **Acc Code** fields, type the account code for this trade.

   Note: Valid entries include: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated).
10. In both **Open/Close** fields, type **O** or **C** to indicate whether this trade opens or closes a position.
11. In both **CTI** fields, type the appropriate clearing code.

    Note: Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation.
12. In both **Posting Code** fields, only enter a value if the trade is for the Euronext exchange.
13. In both **Account#** fields, type the account numbers if applicable.
14. If you are sending this as a cross order, click to select **Market Maker Cross** or **Guaranteed Crossing**. If not, click to select **Block**.
15. Click **Send** to submit the order.

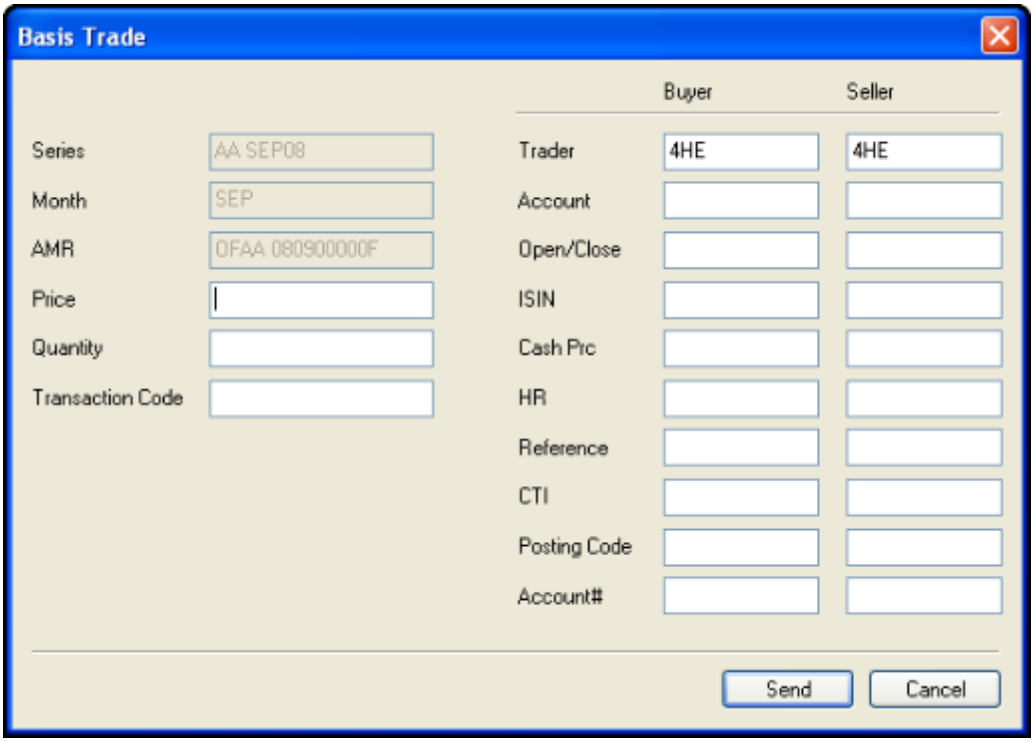
You successfully submitted a block trade.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Basis Trade Overview

Basis trades are strategies that incorporate a futures leg and underlying (or cash) leg. Use the **Basis Trade** window to submit a basis trade

For basis trades, only the future leg is traded at the exchange. The cash leg is traded on a separate exchange, which may trade through X_TRADER or another method. Therefore, the exchange sends trade/fill information for both the buy and sell side of the futures leg. A fill is not sent for the cash leg.



Basis Trade Window

The fields in a **Basis Trade** window vary depending on the type of product or strategy you trade. If the product is a strategy, the associated legs for that strategy are listed in a set of fields in the lower half of the **Basis Trade** window. The **Quantity** and **Price** fields must be filled for each leg of the strategy in order for the trade to be accepted.

General Fields	Descriptions
Series	Name and identification of the contract series. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
Month	Maturity month of the contract. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
AMR	Auto Market Reference—unique exchange-specific product identifier. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
Price	Price of the product.
Quantity	Quantity of the product to be traded.
Transaction Code	A code uniquely identifying the trade.

Buyer / Seller Fields	Descriptions
Trader	An exchange mnemonic uniquely identifying the trader.
Account	Account code for this trade. Can be one of the following: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated)
Open/Close	Indicates whether this trade opens or closes a position.
ISIN	International Security Identification Number. Uniquely identifies a product.
Cash Prc	Price for the underlying that is agreed to by buyer and seller.
HR	Hedge Ratio. One character that identifies the methodology used to determine the price for the underlying component. Hedge Ratio Codes include: • **P**: Price factor or duration method • **M**: (Modified) Duration method • **S**: Sensitivity spread ratio • **D**: Delta neutral ratio
Reference	Identifies the underlying product (order number, selling/buying code, etc., from the other exchange).
CTI	Clearing code. Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation
Posting Code	Account posting code.
Account #	Optional field used for account numbers up to eight digits.
Leg	Name of the strategy leg (optional with Strategies).
Quantity	Quantity of the strategy leg to be traded (optional with Strategies).
Price	Price of the strategy leg to be traded (optional with Strategies).

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Submitting a Basis Trade

Basis trades are strategies that incorporate a futures leg and an underlying (cash) leg. Basis trading is not subject to normal X_TRADER credit risk limitations. The trader submitting the order will be notified by the exchange if it is approved.

Note: Wholesale orders appear in the **Audit Trail** window, and the **Total Traded Quantity** column in the **Market** and **Fill** windows. Wholesale orders do not appear in the **Order Book** window.

To submit a basis trade:

1. Log into the appropriate exchange.
2. Open the Market Explorer and select a product.
3. Open a **Market** window for the selected product.
4. In the **Market** window, click in the row containing the product.
5. Right-click in the row to access the context menu.
6. Highlight **Wholesale** and click **Basis**.

   The **Basis Trade** window displays. The **Series**, **Month**, and **AMR** fields display data from the Market Grid.
7. In the **Price** and **Quantity** fields, type the appropriate values.
8. Complete steps 9-17 in both the **Buyer** and **Seller** sections.
9. In both **Acc Code** fields, type the account code for this trade.

   Note: Valid entries include: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated).
10. In both **Open/Close** fields, type **O** or **C** to indicate whether this trade opens or closes a position.
11. In both **ISIN** fields, type the International Security Identification Number.
12. In both **Cash Prc** fields, type the price for the underlying agreed to by buyer and seller.
13. In both **HR** fields, identify the methodology used to determine the price for the underlying component.

    Note: Valid entries include: **P** (Price factor or duration method), **M** (Modified duration method), **S** (Sensitivity spread ratio) and **D** (Delta neutral ratio).
14. In both **Reference** fields, identify the underlying product.
15. In both **CTI** fields, type the appropriate clearing code.

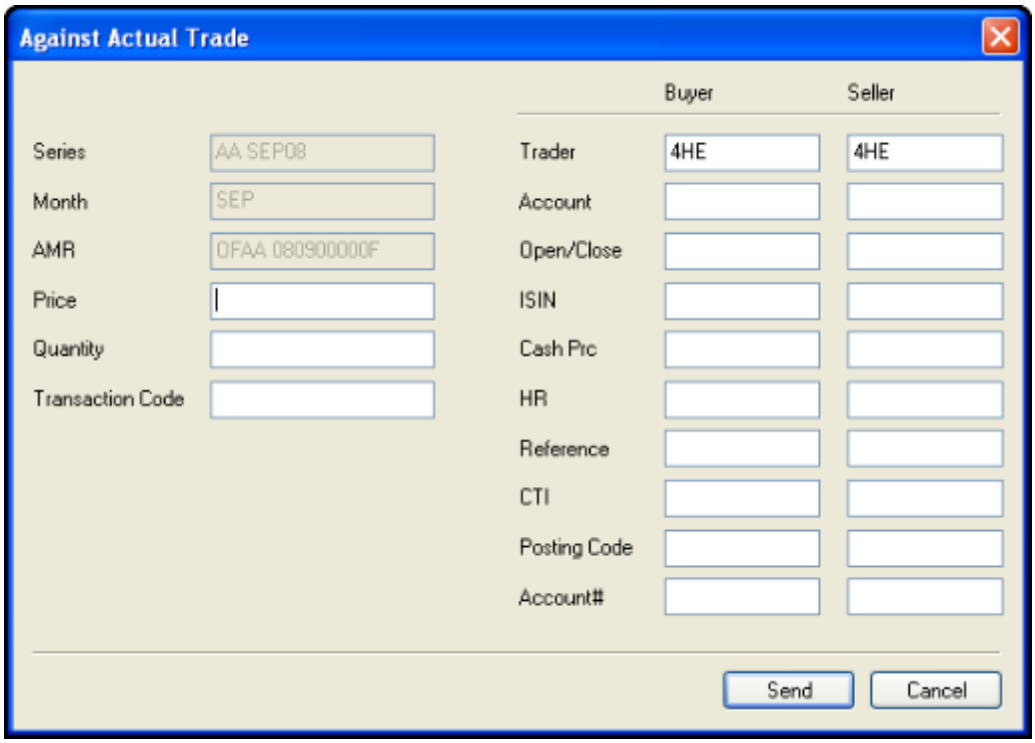
    Note: Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation.
16. In both **Posting Code** fields, only enter a value if the trade is for the Euronext exchange.
17. In both **Account#** fields, type the account numbers if applicable.
18. Click **Send** to submit the order.

You successfully submitted a basis trade.

Against Actuals Trade Overview

Against Actual strategies are for commodities markets that incorporate a futures leg and an underlying commodity leg. Use the **Against Actuals** window to submit an against actuals trade.

For Against Actual trades, only the future leg is traded at the exchange. The cash leg is traded on a separate exchange, which may be executed through X_TRADER or another method. Therefore, the exchange sends trade/fill information for both the buy and sell side of the futures leg. A fill is not sent for the cash leg. The details of the actual buyer and seller are resolved between the exchange and the executing member via a phone call.



Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Against Actuals Trade Window

The fields in an **Against Actuals Trade** window vary depending on the type of product or strategy you trade. If the product is a strategy, the associated legs for that strategy are listed in a set of fields in the lower half of the **Against Actuals Trade** window. The **Quantity** and **Price** fields must be filled for each leg of the strategy in order for the trade to be accepted.

General Fields	Descriptions
Series	Name and identification of the contract series. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
Month	Maturity month of the contract. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
AMR	Auto Market Reference—unique exchange-specific product identifier. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
Price	Price of the product.
Quantity	Quantity of the product to be traded.
Transaction Code	A code uniquely identifying the trade.

Buyer / Seller Fields	Descriptions
Trader	An exchange mnemonic uniquely identifying the trader.
Account	Account code for this trade. Can be one of the following: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated)
Open/Close	Indicates whether this trade opens or closes a position.
ISIN	International Security Identification Number. Uniquely identifies a given product.
Cash Prc	Price for the underlying that is agreed to by buyer and seller.
HR	Hedge Ratio. One character that identifies the methodology used to determine the price for the underlying component. Hedge Ratio Codes include: • **P**: Price factor or duration method • **M**: (Modified) Duration method • **S**: Sensitivity spread ratio • **D**: Delta neutral ratio
Reference	Identifies the underlying product (order number, selling/buying code, etc., from the other exchange).
CTI	Clearing code. Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation
Posting Code	Account posting code.
Account #	Optional field used for account numbers up to eight digits.
Leg	Name of the strategy leg (optional with Strategies).
Quantity	Quantity of the strategy leg to be traded (optional with Strategies).
Price	Price of the strategy leg to be traded (optional with Strategies).

Submitting an Against Actuals Trade

Against Actuals are strategies for commodities markets that incorporate a futures leg and an underlying commodity leg. For Against Actual trades, only the future leg is traded at the exchange. The cash leg is traded on a separate exchange, which may be executed through X_TRADER or another method.

Against Actual trading is not subject to normal X_TRADER credit risk limitations. The trader submitting the order will be notified by the exchange if it is approved.

Note: Wholesale orders appear in the **Audit Trail** window, and the **Total Traded Quantity** column in the **Market** and **Fill** windows. Wholesale orders do not appear in the **Order Book** window.

To submit an Against Actual trade:

1. Log into the appropriate exchange.
2. Open the Market Explorer and select a product.
3. Open a **Market** window for the selected product.
4. In the **Market** window, click in the row containing the product.
5. Right-click in the row to access the context menu.
6. Highlight **Wholesale** and click **Against Actual**.

   The **Against Actual** window displays. The **Series**, **Month**, and **AMR** fields display data from the Market Grid.
7. In the **Price** and **Quantity** fields, type the appropriate values.
8. Complete steps 9-17 in both the **Buyer** and **Seller** sections.
9. In both **Acc Code** fields, type the account code for this trade.

   Note: Valid entries include: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated).
10. In both **Open/Close** fields, type **O** or **C** to indicate whether this trade opens or closes a position.
11. In both **ISIN** fields, type the International Security Identification Number.
12. In both **Cash Prc** fields, type the price for the underlying agreed to by buyer and seller.
13. In both **HR** fields, identify the methodology used to determine the price for the underlying component.

    Note: Valid entries include: **P** (Price factor or duration method), **M** (Modified duration method), **S** (Sensitivity spread ratio) and **D** (Delta neutral ratio).
14. In both **Reference** fields, identify the underlying product.
15. In both **CTI** fields, type the appropriate clearing code.

    Note: Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation.
16. In both **Posting Code** fields, only enter a value if the trade is for the Euronext exchange.
17. In both **Account#** fields, type the account numbers if applicable.
18. Click **Send** to submit the order.

You successfully submitted an against actual trade.

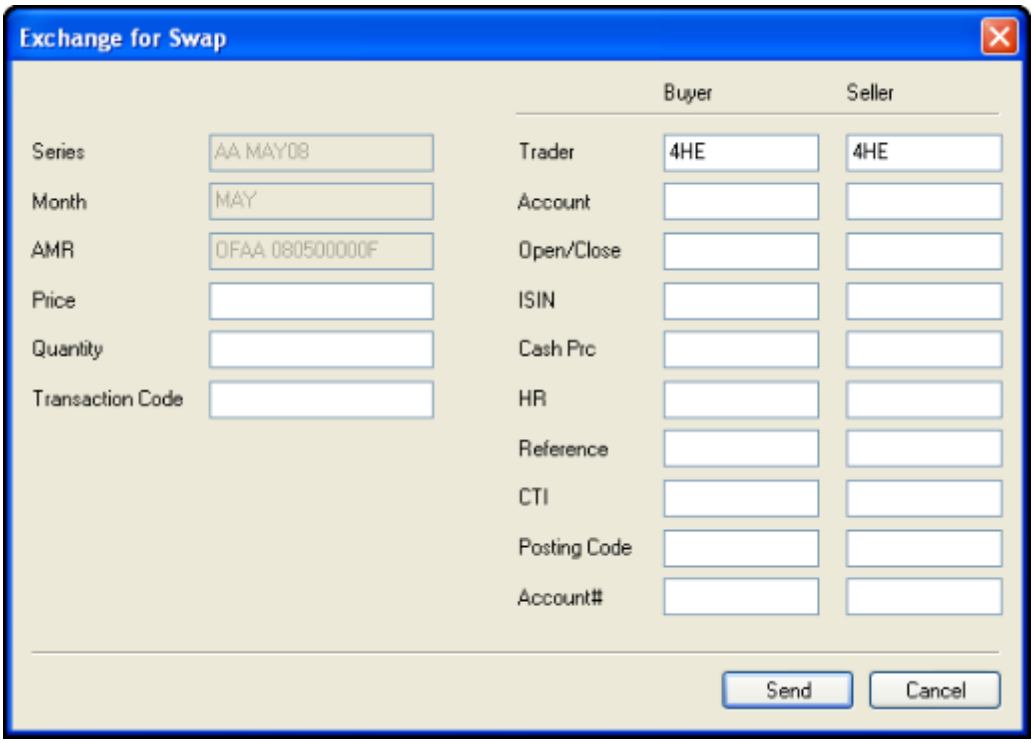
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Exchange For Swap Overview

Exchange for Swap is a strategy whereby a position in the underlying is traded for a futures position. For example a trader with a long OTC swap position and a short Future position might wish to swap out against another trader with a short OTC swap position and a long Future position.

The trade records as two separate transactions provided the swap leg of the transaction has to do with a cleared swap. If it is a bilateral uncleared OTC trade, X_TRADER records only one transaction.

Use the **Exchange For Swap** window to submit an exchange for swap trade.



Exchange For Swap Window

The fields in an **Exchange For Swap** window vary depending on the type of product or strategy you trade. If the product is a strategy, the associated legs for that strategy are listed in a set of fields in the lower half of the **Exchange For Swap** window. The **Quantity** and **Price** fields must be filled for each leg of the strategy in order for the trade to be accepted.

General Fields	Descriptions
Series	Name and identification of the contract series. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
Month	Maturity month of the contract. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window
AMR	Auto Market Reference—unique exchange-specific product identifier. This fills with the product information in the **Market** window.
Price	Price of the product.
Quantity	Quantity of the product to be traded.
Transaction Code	A code uniquely identifying the trade.

Buyer / Seller Fields	Descriptions
Trader	An exchange mnemonic uniquely identifying the trader.
Account	Account code for this trade. Can be one of the following: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated)
Open/Close	Indicates whether this trade opens or closes a position.
ISIN	International Security Identification Number. Uniquely identifies a given product.
Cash Prc	Price for the underlying that is agreed to by buyer and seller.
HR	Hedge Ratio. One character that identifies the methodology used to determine the price for the underlying component. Hedge Ratio Codes include: • **P**: Price factor or duration method • **M**: (Modified) Duration method • **S**: Sensitivity spread ratio • **D**: Delta neutral ratio
Reference	Identifies the underlying product (order number, selling/buying code, etc., from the other exchange).
CTI	Clearing code. Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation
Posting Code	Account posting code.
Account #	Optional field used for account numbers up to eight digits.
Leg	Name of the strategy leg (optional with Strategies).
Quantity	Quantity of the strategy leg to be traded (optional with Strategies).
Price	Price of the strategy leg to be traded (optional with Strategies).

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Submitting an Exchange For Swap Trade

Exchange for Swap is a strategy whereby a position in the underlying is traded for a futures position.

Exchange For Swap trading is not subject to normal X_TRADER credit risk limitations. The trader submitting the order will be notified by the exchange if it is approved.

Note: Wholesale orders appear in the **Audit Trail** window, and the **Total Traded Quantity** column in the **Market** and **Fill** windows. Wholesale orders do not appear in the **Order Book** window.

To submit an Exchange for Swap trade:

1. Log into the appropriate exchange.
2. Open the Market Explorer and select a product.
3. Open a **Market** window for the selected product.
4. In the **Market** window, click in the row containing the product.
5. Right-click in the row to access the context menu.
6. Highlight **Wholesale** and click **Exchange for Swap**.

   The **Exchange for Swap** window displays. The **Series**, **Month**, and **AMR** fields display data from the Market Grid.
7. In the **Price** and **Quantity** fields, type the appropriate values.
8. Complete steps 9-17 in both the **Buyer** and **Seller** sections.
9. In both **Acc Code** fields, type the account code for this trade.

   Note: Valid entries include: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated).
10. In both **Open/Close** fields, type **O** or **C** to indicate whether this trade opens or closes a position.
11. In both **ISIN** fields, type the International Security Identification Number.
12. In both **Cash Prc** fields, type the price for the underlying agreed to by buyer and seller.
13. In both **HR** fields, identify the methodology used to determine the price for the underlying component.

    Note: Valid entries include: **P** (Price factor or duration method), **M** (Modified duration method), **S** (Sensitivity spread ratio) and **D** (Delta neutral ratio).
14. In both **Reference** fields, identify the underlying product.
15. In both **CTI** fields, type the appropriate clearing code.

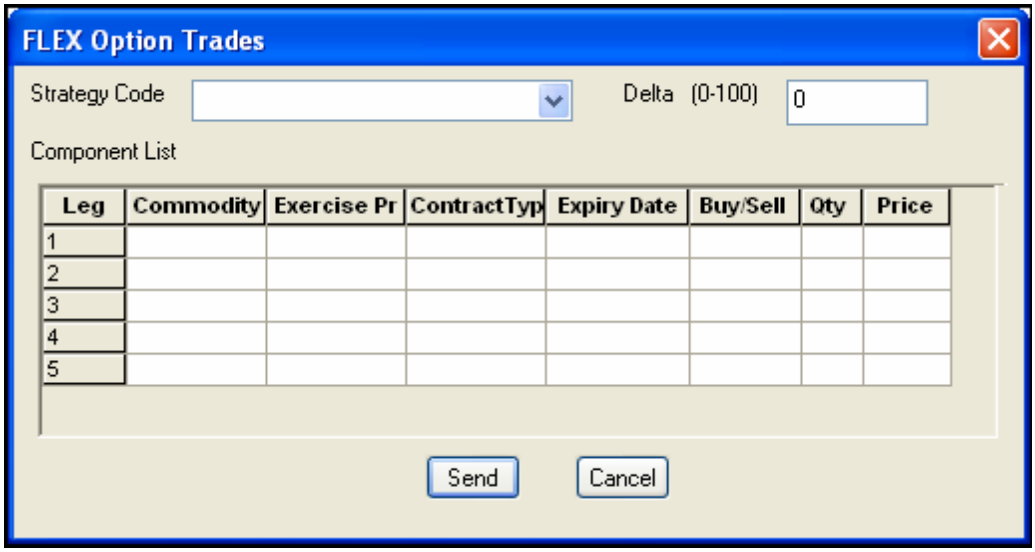
    Note: Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation.
16. In both **Posting Code** fields, only enter a value if the trade is for the Euronext exchange.
17. In both **Account#** fields, type the account numbers if applicable.
18. Click **Send** to submit the order.

You successfully submitted an Exchange for Swap trade.

Flex Options Overview

FLEX® orders are essentially FTSE 100 options, except that any expiration day and exercise price can be specified. The trade submission and authorization process is only semi-automated. Therefore, completing a flex options trade requires manual intervention by an exchange official.

Use the **Flex Options** window to submit a flex options trade.



Flex Options Window

General Fields	Descriptions
Strategy Code	Any LIFFE recognized strategy code.
Delta	Delta of the option. If the trade contains the underlying component LFZ (FLX), its value should be 1-100. If not, its value should be zero.
Legs	Up to 5 components can be defined in a FLEX trade. For each, the following parameters exist: • **Commodity**: The commodity code. Z for FTSE 100; FLX for the underlying. • **Exercise Price**: The price the contract can be exercised. • **Contract Type**: Call, Put or Future. • **Expiration Date**: Date of expiration for the particular leg. • **Buy/Sell**: Whether it is being bought or sold. • **Qty**: Quantity traded. • **Price**: Price of the component.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

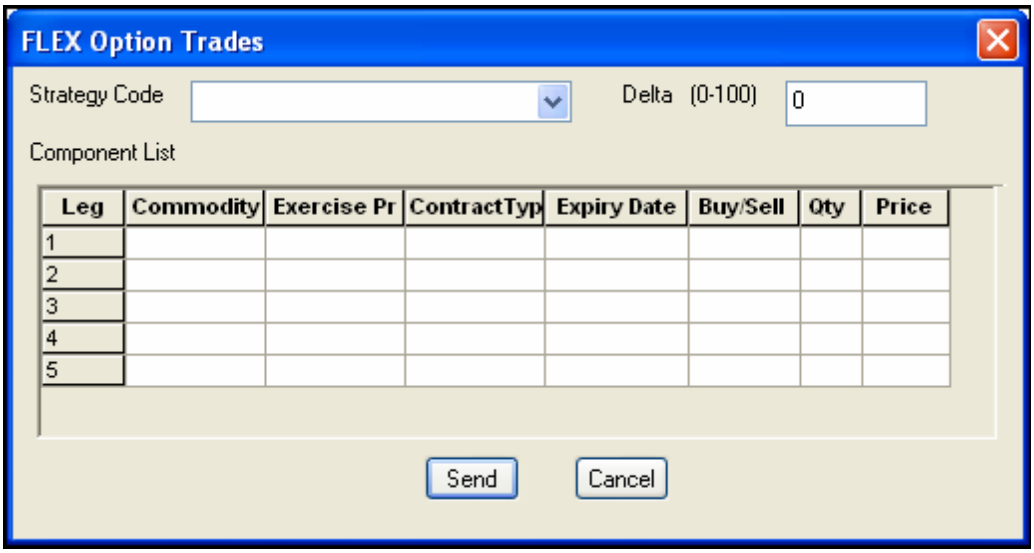
Submitting a Flex Options Trade

Note: Wholesale orders appear in the **Audit Trail** window, and the **Total Traded Quantity** column in the **Market** and **Fill** windows. Wholesale orders do not appear in the **Order Book** window.

To submit a FLEX Options trade:

1. Log into the appropriate exchange.
2. Open the Market Explorer and select a product.
3. Open a **Market** window for the selected product.
4. In the **Market** window, click in the row containing the product.
5. Right-click in the row to access the context menu.
6. Highlight **Wholesale** and click **Flex Options**.

   The **Flex Options** window displays.



7. In the **Strategy Code** list, select the strategy you want to use.
8. In the **Delta** field, type the appropriate value.

   Note: If the trade contains the underlying component LFZ (FLX), its value should be 1-100. If not, its value should be zero.
9. For the first leg, in the **Commodity** list, select **FLX** or **Z**.
10. In the **Exercise Prc** field, type the exercise price.
11. In the **Contract Type** field, click the **down arrow** and select **C** (call), **P** (put), or **F** (future).
12. In the **Expiry Date** field, type the expiration date for the contract.
13. In the **Buy/Sell** field, click the **down arrow** and select **B** or **S**.
14. In the **Qty** field, type the quantity of the trade.
15. In the **Price** field, type the price of the contract.

You successfully submitted a FLEX options trade.

Entering Prof Trades

Prof Trades are pre-negotiated trades between two parties that take place outside the central order book. The Prof Trade is only a valid ex-pit trade on the Amsterdam Market. As of August 2008, no other exchange TT supports permits Prof Trades.

A single Prof Trade consists of two intentions:

- Initiator intention
- Reactor intention

Each party in the Prof Trade enters their intention separately. The Prof Trade occurs when both counterparties enter matching intentions using the same password.

- Prof Trade Fields
- Tradable Instruments

Prof Trade Fields

Type	Instruments
Package ID	The unique number that identifies your Prof Trade.
Initiator or Reactor	Identifies you as an initiator or a reactor in this trade. Prof trade intentions submitted by Initiators can match with intentions submitted by Reactors or Initiators. Prof trade intentions submitted by Reactors can only match with intentions submitted by Initiators.
Buy or Sell	Identifies this half trade as a Buy or Sell.
Password	Identifies a match with the other half trade that is submitted separately.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Tradable Instruments

Type	Instruments
Financials	Euro/Dollar Currency Future & Options
Financials	Dollar/Euro Currency Future & Options
Index and Equities	AEX® Futures
Index and Equities	Individual Equity Options

Notes:

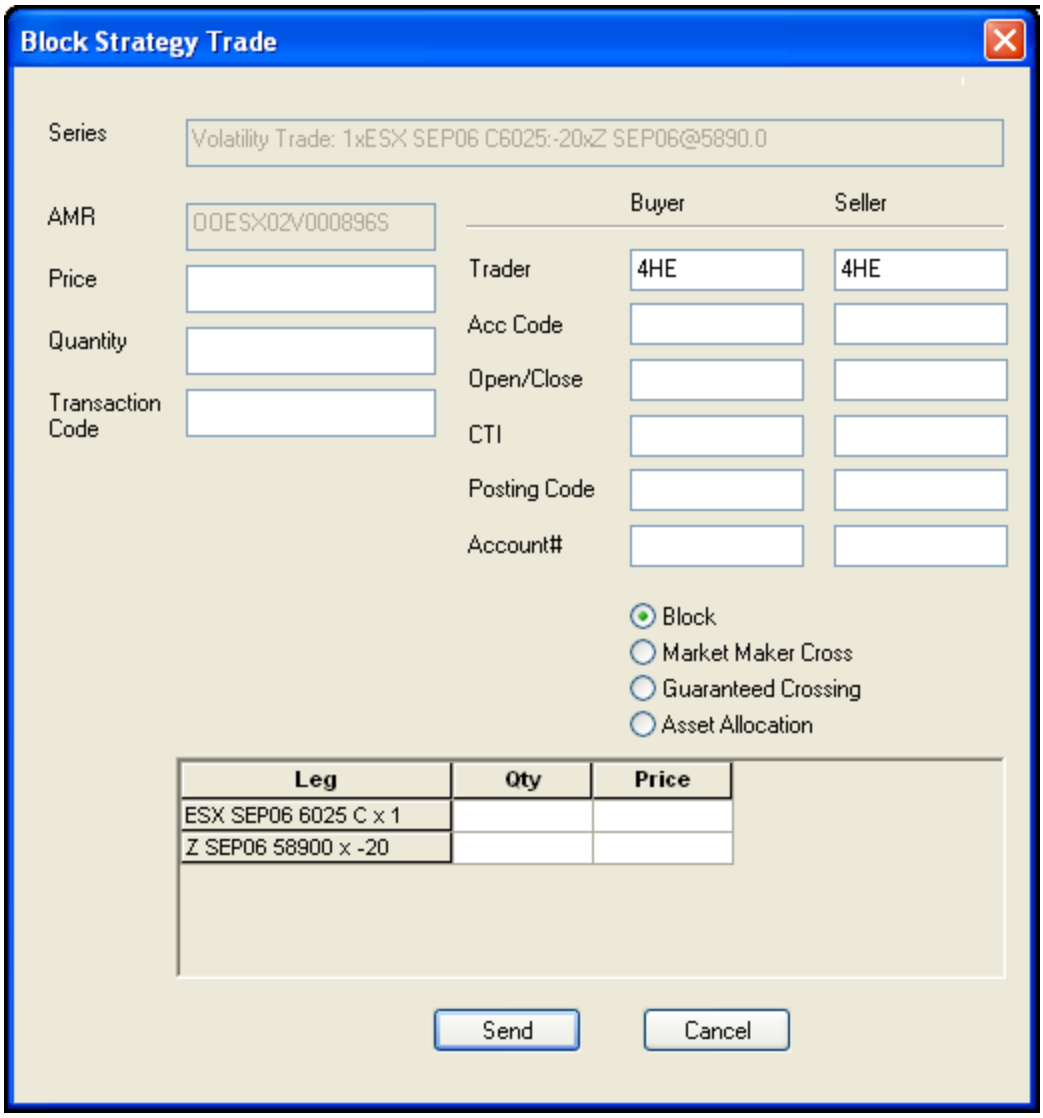
Prof Trades...

- When confirmed, receive a fill only for the side of the trade that was entered via that Order Server.
- Must represent a size of at least 250 contracts, all legs added together.
- With a single counterparty at a single price must be submitted separately but can be bundled together using a Package Identifier.
- Cannot be entered in Strategy markets, but can be created by linking trades in several outright markets together using a Package Identifier.

Tip Using the same Package Identifier lets brokers submit multiple Prof Trades, but be assessed a clearing fee for a single Prof Trade.

Strategy Wholesale Trades

You can trade strategies using the Wholesale Trading windows.



The following exchanges support wholesale trades for strategies:

- LIFFE exchange
- Euronext (Paris) exchange
- Euronext (Brussels) exchange

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

To trade using the Strategy window:

1. Log into the appropriate exchange.
2. Open the Market Explorer and select a product.
3. Create or drag and drop a strategy into the Market Grid.
4. Open a **Market** window for the selected product.
5. In the **Market** window, click the row containing the product.
6. Right-click in the row to access the context menu.
7. Highlight **Wholesale** and click the type of wholesale window you want to open.

   The **Strategy Trade** window displays. The **Series**, **Month**, and **AMR** fields display data from the Market Grid. The legs of the strategy display in the grid on the bottom of the screen.
8. Complete steps 9-13 in both the **Buyer** and **Seller** sections.
9. In both **Acc Code** fields, type the account code for this trade.

   Note: Valid entries include: **H** (House), **L** (Local), **S** (Segregated), or **N** (Non-segregated).
10. In both **Open/Close** fields, type **O** or **C** to indicate whether this trade opens or closes a position.
11. In both **CTI** fields, type the appropriate clearing code.

    Note: Valid entries include: **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **U** for unassigned and **A** for allocation.
12. In both **Posting Code** fields, only enter a value if the trade is for the Euronext exchange.
13. In both **Account#** fields, type the account numbers.
14. If you are sending this as a cross order, click to select **Market Maker Cross** or **Guaranteed Crossing**. If not, click to select **Block**.
15. In the **Qty** and **Price** columns, enter the appropriate value for each strategy leg.
16. Click **Send** to submit the order.

You successfully traded using the **Strategy** window.

Euronext and Guaranteed Crossing

Note: Refer to **Wholesale Trading Types** on page 382 for more information on the exchanges that support wholesale trades.

Euronext products execute on the Paris and Brussels exchanges. If you trade products on the Euronext (Paris) exchange, the Guaranteed Crossing feature is available.

When you use this feature, the order is sent as a cross order. When the exchange accepts the order, the two sides are guaranteed to match with one another and not a different order in the market. Guaranteed Cross orders validate automatically.

To submitted a Guaranteed Crossing trade:

1. Log into the Euronext exchange.
2. Open the Market Explorer and select a product.
3. Open a **Market** window for the selected product.
4. In the **Market** window, click the row containing the product.
5. Right-click in the row to access the context menu.
6. Highlight **Wholesale Orders** and click the appropriate wholesale trading type.

   Note: The following example applies to the **Block Trade** dialog box.

   The **Block Trade** window displays. The **Series**, **Month**, and **AMR** fields display data from the Market Grid.
7. In the **Price** and **Quantity** fields, type the appropriate values.
8. Complete steps 9-13 in both the **Buyer** and **Seller** sections.
9. In both **Acc Code** fields, type the account code for this trade.

   Warning! Each exchange maintains a different set of Account codes. Valid account codes for Euronext include:
   - C = Customer
   - H = House
   - M = Market Maker
10. In both **Open/Close** fields, type **O** or **C** to indicate whether this trade opens or closes a position.
11. Leave the **CTI** fields blank.
12. In both **Posting Code** fields, type a value.

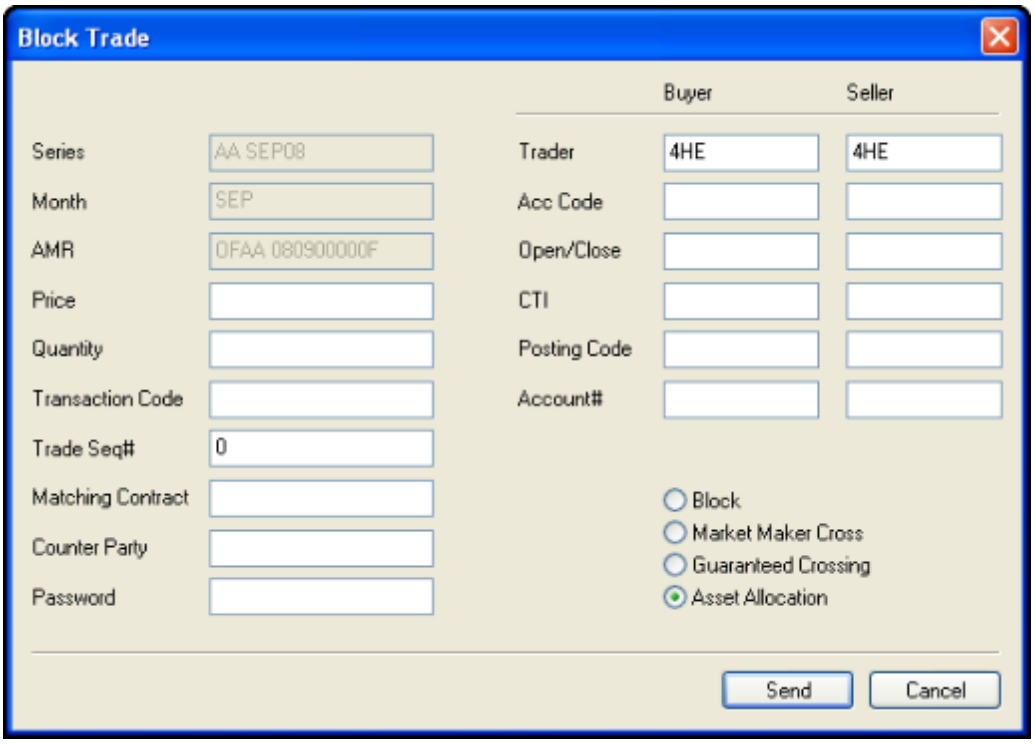
    Note: Valid values include **M** = Manual Posting, **A** = Automatic Posting,**G** = Give-up Posting.
13. In both **Account#** fields, type the account numbers if applicable.
14. Click to select the **Guaranteed Crossing** checkbox.
15. Click **Send** to submit the order.

You successfully submitted a Guaranteed Crossing trade.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Asset Allocation Methods

The **Asset Allocation** option is available in the **Block Trade** window. When enabled, it allows you to enter one side (buy or sell) of a wholesale order. Alternatively, one trader can enter the entire Asset Allocation.



When you enable the **Asset Allocation** option, the following fields appear:

Field	Description
Trade Seq#	The sequence numbers of component legs that make up the Asset Allocation.
Matching Contract	The commodity code of the contract. This does not include the month or the year.
Counter Party	ITM of the trader for the matching half trade.
Password	Identifies a match with the other half trade that is submitted separately.

For more information, see the examples starting on the next page.

Entering Asset Allocation Orders

Two to three traders can enter four half trades that make up the Asset Allocation. Alternatively, one Trader can enter two orders to complete the Asset Allocations.

Half Trades Example:

Trader 1 enters a half trade to Buy Product A.

- Trader 1 fills in the **Buyer** section.
- The **Seller** section is left blank.
- The **Matching Contract** is <Product A> (No month or year)
- The **Trade Seq #** is 1
- The **Counter Party** is Trader 2's ITM.
- The **Password** is numeric.

Trader 1 enters a half trade to Buy Product B.

- Trader 1 fills in the **Buyer** section.
- The **Seller** section is left blank.
- The **Matching Contract** is <Product B> (No month or year)
- The **Trade Seq #** is 2
- The **Counter Party** is Trader 3's ITM.
- The **Password** is the same as above.

Trader 2 enters a half trade to Sell Product A.

- Trader 2 fills in the **Seller** section.
- The **Buyer** section is left blank.
- The **Matching Contract** is <Product A> (No month or year)
- The **Trade Seq #** is 3
- The **Counter Party** is Trader 1's ITM.
- The **Password** is the same as above.

Trader 3 enters a half trade to Sell Product B.

- Trader 3 fills in the **Seller** section.
- The **Buyer** section is left blank.
- The **Matching Contract** is <Product B> (No month or year)
- The **Trade Seq #** is 4
- The **Counter Party** is Trader 1's ITM.
- The **Password** is the same as above.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

One Trader Example:

Trader 1 enters a half trade to Buy Product A.

- The **Seller** section is completed along with the **Buyer** section.
- The **Matching Contract** is <Product A> (No month or year)
- The **Trade Seq #** is 1
- The **Counter Party** is Trader 2's ITM.
- The **Password** is numeric.

Trader 1 enters a half trade to Buy Product B.

- The **Seller** section is completed along with the **Buyer** section.
- The **Matching Contract** is <Product A> (No month or year)
- The **Trade Seq #** is 2
- The **Counter Party** is Trader 3's ITM.
- The **Password** is the same as above.

CHAPTER 16

Trading Specialty Exchanges

X_TRADER lets you connect to and trade on many different exchanges. Depending on which exchanges you trade, certain screens in X_TRADER may appear differently and offer unique options.

This section covers the unique options available when trading the following exchanges:

- Brokertec
- EBS
- Intercontinental Exchange (ICE)
- Sydney Futures Exchange (SFE)
- TOCOM

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Trading BrokerTec

Because of the unique nature of the BrokerTec market, X_TRADER changes when it interacts with BrokerTec products.

These changes affect the following:

- Tradable Products
- Order Types
- Pricing Notations
- Pricing Format
- Market Grid
- MD Trader
- Excel Links
- Autotrader
- Autospreader
- Click Trading

In addition, the BrokerTec exchange adds functionality to X_TRADER that does not exist for other exchanges. Refer to **Unique Functionality in BrokerTec** on page 409.

Tradable Products

BrokerTec supports the following products:

- 2 year Actives (On-the-runs) and When Issued
- 3 year Actives (On-the-runs) and When Issued
- 5 year Actives (On-the-runs) and When Issued
- 10 year Actives (On-the-runs) and When Issued
- 30 year Actives (On-the-runs) and When Issued

Order Types

The following order types are available when trading BrokerTec. Orders sent with any other order type are rejected:

Brokertec Order Type	Associated TT Order Type	Description
FAS (Fill and Save)	Limit Order	Fills as much as possible. The remaining order quantity becomes Passive.
FOK (Fill or Kill)	FOK	Fills order completely, or cancels the order immediately. Partial fill is not accepted.
FAK (Fill and Kill)	IOC	Fills as much as possible. The remaining quantity is canceled immediately.
Order with hidden size	Iceberg	The remaining order quantity becomes Passive.

Pricing Notations

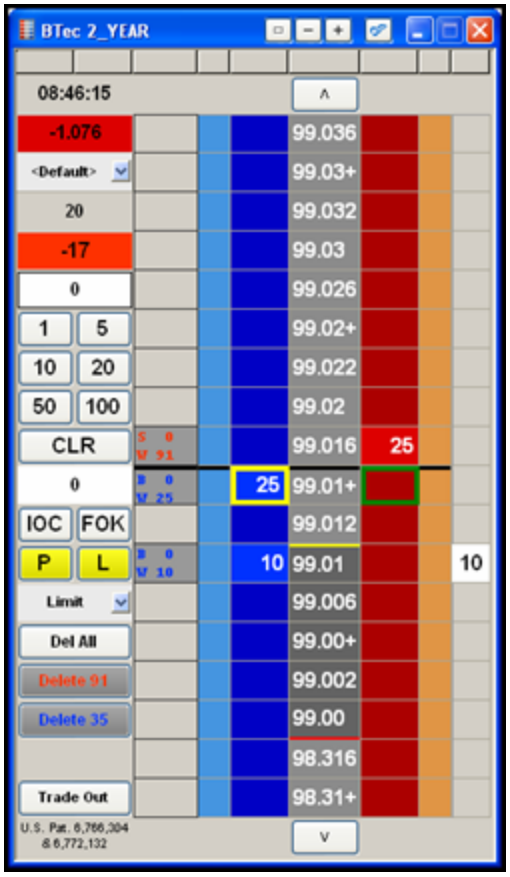
BrokerTec uses the following notation:

- 0 => 0/8 = 0
- 2 => 2/8 = 0.25
- + => 4/8 = 0.5
- 6 => 6/8 = 0.75

CBOT uses the following notation for futures:

- 0 => 0.00
- 2 => 0.25
- 5 => 0.5
- 7 => 0.75

The two notations are equivalent.



Pricing Format

Prices for BrokerTec products display in the following manner:

- 2, 3, and 5 year Actives trade at a quarter of 1/32.

  Example: 100.02, 100.022, 100.02+, 100.026, 100.03...etc.

- 10 and 30 year Actives trade at half of 1/32.

  Example: 101.00, 101.00+, 101.01, 101.01+...etc.

- 2, 3, 5, 10 and 30 year When Issued contracts trade in yield.

  Note: No trailing zeroes display for Actives pricing formats.

Market Grid

When you display depth in the Market Grid, When Issued products sort with the prices in ascending order (i.e., lower numbers at the top and the higher numbers on the bottom). When Issued products sort this way because they trade in yield which is inversely related to price.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

MD Trader

BrokerTec affects MD Trader in the following ways:

- **Passive** and **Leave** checkboxes are added to the **Enable Order Types** section on the **MD Trading** tab.

  You can assign buttons to these order types and make them sticky.

  Note: The **Leave** order type overrides the **Allow only one order per side of market** option on the **MD Trading** tab.

- When Issued products display with the prices in ascending order in MD Trader (i.e., lower numbers at the top and the higher numbers on the bottom). When Issued products sort this way because they trade in yield which is inversely related to price.
- In regards to workup, the gateway handles LTQ in one of two ways:
  - Accumulates LTQ from workup to workup at the same price level.

    Example: If LTQ at 100.01+ is 5 at the end of workup, it begins at 5 during the next workup at 100.01+.

  - Resets LTQ to zero at the beginning of workup at the same price level.

    Example: If LTQ at 100.01+ is 5 at the end of workup, it resets to 0 during the next workup at 100.01+.

Note: Refer to **Working-Up Orders** on page 412 for more information.

Excel Links

You can add links to the **Market Grid**, **Autotrader**, **MD Trader**, and the **Fill** windows.

- For prices imported from Excel to a BrokerTec product, X_TRADER interprets the final digit "4" as a "+".
- For prices exported to Excel from a BrokerTec product, X_TRADER converts the "+" for the final digit to a "4".

Warning! Be careful when using BrokerTec prices in Excel calculations. Excel does not interpret the digits "4" and "6" as 1/2 and 3/4 respectively.

Autotrader and Autospreader

All orders sent to the market from either Autotrader or Autospreader are:

- Aggressive orders (i.e., will Hit or Take Passive orders)
- Leave orders (i.e., will not cancel previously sent orders on same side of market)

Note: Refer to **Working-Up Orders** on page 412 to see how Autotrader and Autospreader are affected during this unique time. Also, refer to **Autotrader Tick Formula** on page 414.

Click Trading

When you click up in the **Click Offset**, **+/-**, or **Dime** fields, the values for all products (including When Issued) increment. When you click down in the same fields, the values for all products (including When Issued) decrement.

Unique Functionality in BrokerTec

BrokerTec adds functionality to X_TRADER that does not exist for other exchanges. This includes:

- Placing Passive and Aggressive Orders
- Working-Up Orders
- **Send Quote Order** Property
- **Leave** checkbox
- Hold In Timer
- Autotrader Tick Formula

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Placing Passive and Aggressive Orders

There are two ways to send orders to the BrokerTec market: Passive and Aggressive. Passive orders rest in the market waiting for an Aggressive order to Hit or Take them. Aggressive orders Hit or Take Passive orders resting in the market.

In...	To send a Passive Order...	To send an Aggressive Order...
Market Window	Click the **Bid** or **Offer** buttons	Click the **Hit** or **Take** buttons
MD Trader	Click the **Passive** order type from the **MD Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu	All orders are sent Aggressive by default
Autotrader	Not Applicable	All orders are sent Aggressive
Autospreader	Not Applicable	All orders are sent Aggressive

Since two Passive orders on opposite sides of the market can not fill each other, those two orders lock the market until an order is placed to either hit the bid or take the offer. The BrokerTec market, therefore, will display crossed markets when Passive bids and offers are resting at the same price.

When trading BrokerTec, the **P/A** column in the **Fill** Window, Trade Book and Audit Trail indicates whether the order was filled as A (Aggressive) or P (Passive). If a Passive order has the **Auto Aggressive** property enabled and fills by becoming Aggressive, the **P/A** column displays: PA

The Auto Aggressive Property

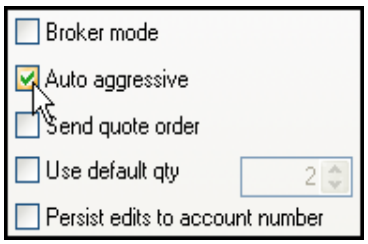
To counteract your Passive order getting locked up by a competing Passive order, you can set the **Auto aggressive** property. When enabled, a Passive order automatically becomes Aggressive whenever a Passive order competes at the same price on the opposite side of the market.

Follow these procedures to set Passive orders to Auto Aggress:

- Setting Passive orders to Auto Aggress
- Verifying fills

To set Passive orders to Auto Aggress:

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
2. Click the **Order Entry** tab.
3. Click to select the **Auto Aggressive** property.



4. Click **OK**.

You successfully set Passive orders to Auto Aggress.

To verify your fills:

In the **Fill**, **Trade Book** or **Audit Trail** windows, verify the **P/A** column is visible.

When your order is filled, the **P/A** column indicates how it was filled:

P/A column displays...	Order was filled...
P	Passive
A	Aggressive
PA	Passive order that Auto-Aggressed and filled

You successfully verified your fills.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Working-Up Orders

BrokerTec uses a matching algorithm known as "workup." In a workup market, you (or another trader) initiate a trade at a set price. The X_TRADER screen flashes and only that price can be traded. Once all available size at that price is traded, the screen stops flashing, indicating the market is idle. You (or another trader) can then initiate another trade at a set price.

Note: The amount of time a workup price flashes is controlled by Brokertec and based on their current workup parameters.

Flashing Quantity and Price during Workup

During workup, the **Price** and **Quantity** fields change color and flash in MD Trader, the Market Grid, Quote Board, and Autotrader.

Flashing characteristics change depending on which functional window you are in:

MD Trader	Description
Price column	**H** appears to the left of the price for a sell workup
Price column	**T** appears to the left of the price for a buy workup
MD Trader Border	Highlights and flashes green for a buy workup
Entire MD Trader Border	Highlights and flashes red for a sell workup

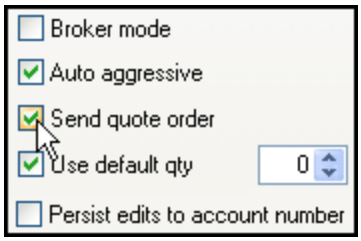
Market Grid Column	Description
Bid Price	Flashes red when a sell initiates the workup. The letters **TAK** replace the price when being bought.
Ask Price	Flashes green when a buy initiates the workup. The letters **HIT** replace the price when being sold.
WrkBuys	Flashes purple when you are the workup owner and take the offer using the **WrkBuys** quantity.
WrkSells	Flashes purple when you are the workup owner and hit the offer using the **WrkSells** quantity.
Title Bar	Labels **[Owner]** to the right of the product name when you are the workup owner.

Quote Board Field	Description
BQ and BP	Shades and flashes red during a sell.
AQ and AP	Shades and flashes green during a buy.

Autotrader Field	Description
mBidPrc	Flashes red when a sell initiates the workup.
mAskPrc	Flashes green when a buy initiates the workup.

Send Quote Order Property

In the **Order Entry** tab on the **Properties** menu, a property called **Send Quote Order** exists.



When enabled, a new order sent to the market replaces the previous order for that contract on the same side of the market.

If you do not enable this property, the default order type is **Leave**, and previous orders will not be canceled.

Leave Checkbox

The **Leave** checkbox appears near the **Hit** and **Take** buttons on the **Order Entry** pane. When selected, new orders for that contract on the same side do not cancel previous orders. Use this checkbox to override the global **Send Quote Order** property

Notes:

- If the global **Send Quote Order** property is not enabled, you do not need to check the **Leave** box, as all orders are sent as Leave by default.
- You can also add a **Leave** button to MD Trader using the **MD Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu.
- All orders sent by Autotrader and Autospreader are Leave orders regardless of the **Send Quote Order** property setting

Hold In Timer

Warning! When your bid or offer is the best in the market, it is locked into the market for two seconds.

The Hold In Timer is a BrokerTec restriction that holds your order in the market when it is the best in the market. You do not see the Hold In Timer in X_TRADER, but during this period:

- Cancel and price change requests are rejected and logged in the Audit Trail.
- You can decrease the quantity to 1.
- Orders joining your best bid or offer are not subject to the Hold In Timer.
- For orders automatically sent via Autotrader and Autospreader, when the reject message is received, the order is deleted or requoted automatically.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Autotrader Tick Formula

Because BrokerTec uses the + to designate half ticks, a new function was developed to allow you to continue using offsets in Autotrader.

Formula: =TICK(<row>,<price>,<n>)

Example: =TICK(3, mBidPrc, 2)

Where:

- **<row>**= The row # (from the top of the grid including headers, 1 based) - meaning 3 is the first Autotrader row, 4 is the second...etc.
- **<price>**= The base price: a string, number, or column name (ex: 110.01, "110.01+", mBidPrice). If this parameter contains a literal price with a plus in it, the parameter must be wrapped in quotes.
- **<n>**= The number and direction of ticks to move the base price contained in the second parameter. Positive numbers indicate ticking up; negative values, ticking down.

Trading EBS

EBS is an electronic marketplace specializing in the trading of precious metals and spot foreign exchange currency pairs, including Non-Deliverable Forwards (NDFs). X_TRADER supports the trading of all these products.

EBS groups foreign exchange currency into two product types:

- Forex
- NDFs

Forex

Forex contracts include precious metals and commonly traded currency pairs, like Euro to U.S. Dollar (EUR/USD) and U.S. Dollar to Japanese Yen (USD/JPY). EBS offers depth of book on the most popular currency pairs:

Currency Pairs	Contract		Currency Pairs	Contract
Australian Dollar/U.S. Dollar	AUD/USD		Pound Sterling/U.S. Dollar	GBP/USD
Euro/Swiss Franc	EUR/CHF		U.S. Dollar/Canadian Dollar	USD/CAD
Euro/Pound Sterling	EUR/GBP		U.S. Dollar/Swiss Franc	USD/CHF
Euro/ Japanese Yen	EUR/JPY		U.S. Dollar/Japanese Yen	USD/JPY
Euro/U.S. Dollar	EUR/USD			

EBS Depth of Book Currency Pairs

For a list of currency pairs available with no viewable depth, see the *EBS Gatway SAM*.

NDFs

NDFs contracts allow trading of currencies with restricted convertiblity. Normally established as short term contracts (typically up to two years), NDFs represent the difference between an agreed upon exchange rate and the prevailing market exchange rate at the settlement date.

NDFs normally quote and settle in United States Dollars (USD).

EBS offers the following currencies as Non-Deliverable Forwards (NDFs):

Currency	Contract		Currency	Contract
Argentine Peso	ARS		South Korean Won	KRW
Chilean Peso	CLP		Malaysian Ringgit	MYR
Renminbi (China)	CNY		Nuevo Sol (Peru)	PEN
Colombian Peso	COP		Philippine Peso	PHP
Rupiah (Indonesia)	IDR		Russian Ruble	RUB
Indian Rupee	INR		New Taiwan Dollar	TWD

EBS Non-Deliverable Forwards

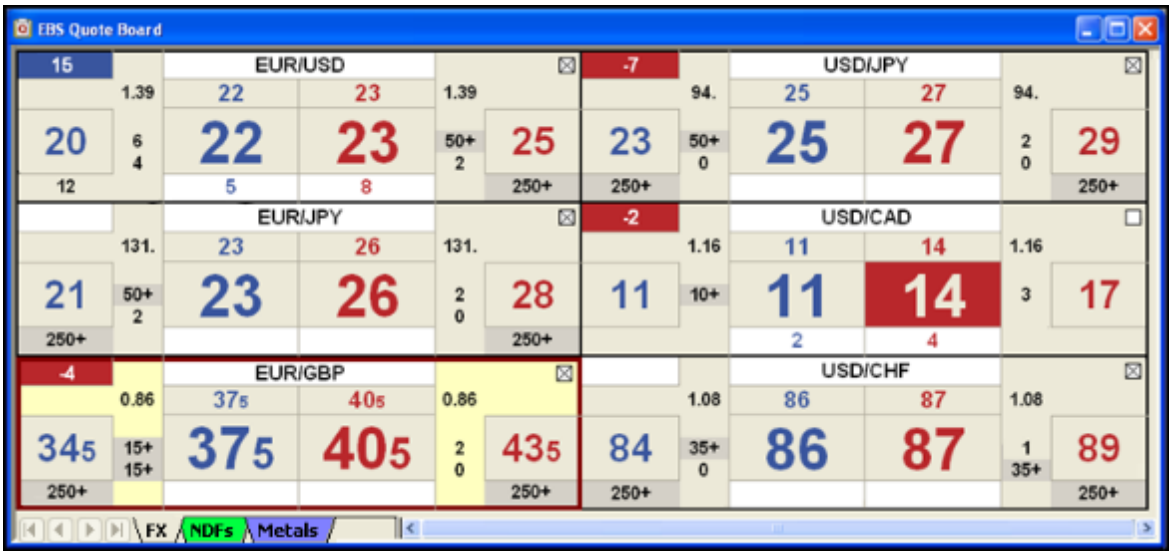
Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Trading Contracts in the EBS Quote Board

The **EBS Quote Board** window lets you quickly trade EBS contracts using the mouse, keyboard, or an EBS keypad.

By default, the **Floating Order Entry** option on the **EBS Quote Board** window is enabled. This lets you trade using the Order Bar, Order Pane, or MD Trader depending on the setting in **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu. We recommend you use the Order Bar.

In addition to opening up to ten **EBS Quote Board** windows, you can create multiple tabs on one window. (Refer to **Using Tabbed Windows** on page 193.)



The EBS Quote Board

▶ To trade with the mouse:

1. Follow the table below...

To...	Mouse click...
Join the Bid or Offer	Right-click a price or quantity.
Take the Bid or Offer	Left-click a price or quantity.

2. Complete your order using the floating order entry window you have set.

You successfully traded with the mouse.

▶ To configure X_TRADER to trade using an EBS keypad:

Note: EBS keypads and instructions are only available through ICAP.

1. Install the EBS keypad per its instructions.
2. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Settings** menu and choose **Properties**.
3. Click the **Hotkeys** tab.

4. Under **Keyboard Layout**, click **EBS Default (Read Only)**.
5. Click to select the **Enable EBS Keypad** checkbox.
6. Click **OK**.

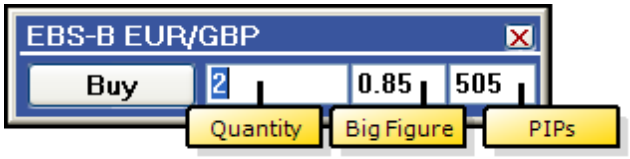
You successfully configured X_TRADER to trade using an EBS keypad.

To trade using the keyboard:

1. In the **Trading** tab on the **Properties** menu, ensure your **Floating Order Entry** window is set to the Order Bar.
2. In the **EBS Quote Board** window, use the arrow keys to navigate to the contract you want to trade.

   Note: Alternatively, You can type a row and column combination, like 32 to jump to the 3rd row and 2nd column.
3. Press `Ctrl+F2` to Buy, or `Ctrl+F11` to Sell.

   The Order Bar appears.



4. Press `Tab` to change quantity, big figure, or PIPs.

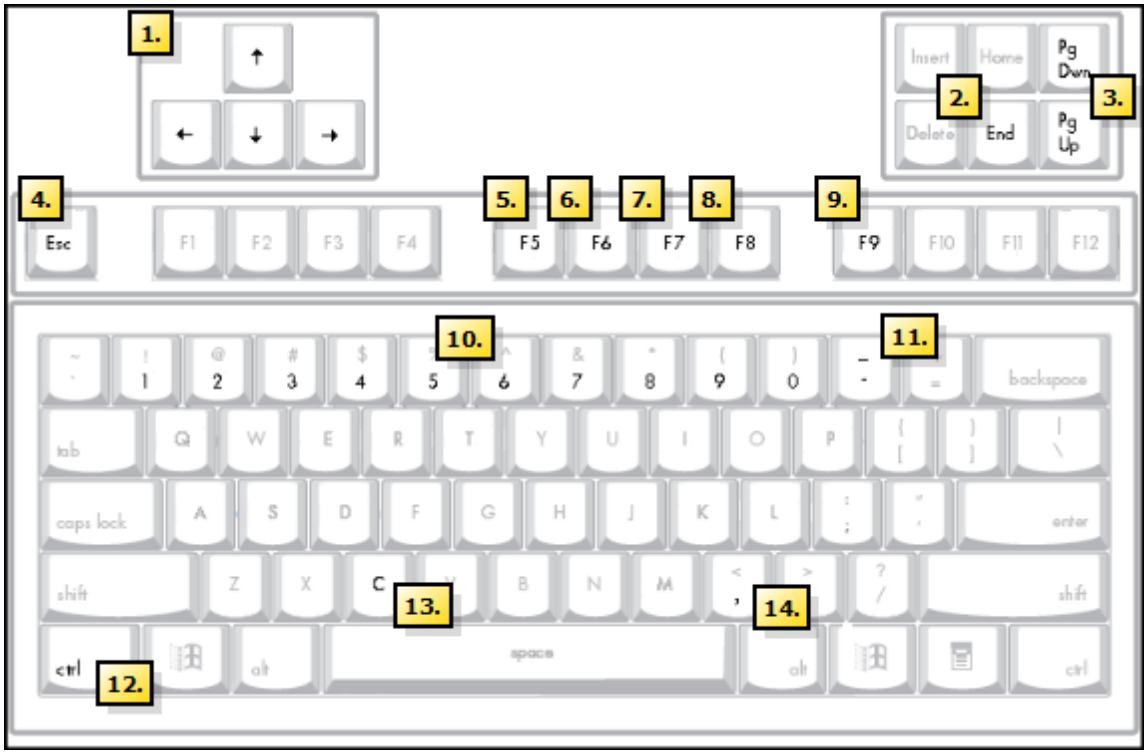
   Note: Use the up and down arrows to change the quantity and PIPs one number at a time.
5. Press `Enter` to submit the trade.

You successfully traded with the keyboard.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Keyboard Configuration

To use the following keyboard configuration, navigate to the **Hotkeys** tab on the **Properties** menu and set your **Keyboard Layout** to **EBS Default (Read Only)**.



#	Key	Function
1	Arrows	Move to the next EBS contract pane. Normal keyboard behavior in the Order Bar.
2	End	Set Focus on Price in the Order Bar.
3	Page Up, Page Down	Page Up: Move to top of current column. Page Down: Move to bottom of current column.
4	Esc	Close Order Bar.
5	F5	Launch to Hit Bid, seed with Best Dealable Bid.
6	F6	Launch to Join Bid, seed with Best Dealable Bid.
7	F7	Launch to Join Ask, seed with Best Dealable Offer.
8	F8	Launch to Take Offer, seed with Best Dealable Offer.
9	F9	Submit order (same as click Buy/Sell on the Order Bar).
10	Numeric	Jump to set EBS contract pane. (Refer to **Quote Board Tab** on page 142) Otherwise normal numeric key behavior.
11	- (Minus), Delete, Backspace	Normal keyboard behavior.
12	Ctrl	Ctrl+F5: Launch to Sell Regular. Ctrl+F8: Launch to Buy Regular.
13	C	Set focus on Contract.
14	, (Comma)	Set focus on Big Figure in Order Bar.

Reading the EBS Quote Board

EBS Quote Board breakdown

The **EBS Quote Board** window field descriptions include:

1. Net Position	Description
15	Your net position for that contract. Blue background is a long position. Red background is short position. You can hide the net position in the **Quote Board** tab on the **Properties** menu or by right-clicking the net position field.

2. Currency Pair	Description
EUR/USD	The abbreviation for the traded currency pairs.

3. Depth check-box	Description
☒	Checked means you are viewing depth. • Field 5 is the Outside Price in PIPs. • Field 6 is the Outside amount. Unchecked means you are viewing the basics. • Field 5 is Dealable Regular Price in PIPs. • Field 6 and the Dealable Best +/-1 in Field 7 do not appear. **Note**: If the checkbox does not appear the contract does not display depth.

4. Big Figure	Description
1.39	Big figure. EBS product prices display as PIPs with a Big Figure. **Example**: A EUR/USD price of 1.4502 has a Big Figure of 1.45 and PIP of 02.

5. Outside/Dealable Regular	Description
20	The **Depth** checkbox in the upper right corner determines what appears in field 5. • If the Depth checkbox is checked, you are viewing depth and field 5 contains the Outside Price in PIPs. • If the Depth checkbox is not checked, you are viewing the basics and field 5 is the Dealable Regular Price in PIPs.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

6. Outside Amount	Description
12	The **Depth** checkbox in the upper right corner determines what appears in field 6. • If the Depth checkbox is checked, you are viewing depth and field 6 is the Outside amount. • If the Depth checkbox is not checked, you are viewing the basics and field 6 does not appear.

7. Best Dealable Quantities	Description
6 4	Dealable Best amount is the top number. Dealable Best +/-1 is the bottom number. **Note**: If the Depth checkbox is not checked, you are viewing the basics and the Dealable Best +/-1 does not appear.

8. EBS Best		Description
22	23	EBS Best Bid and Best Offer in PIPs.

9. Dealable Best		Description
22	23	Dealable Best in PIPs.

10. Working Orders		Description
5	8	The total quantity of your working bids and offers.

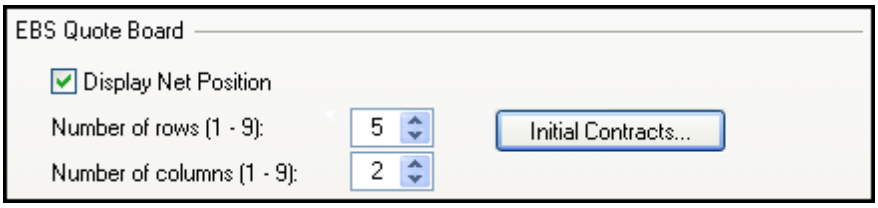
Customizing the EBS Quote Board

Properties for customizing the EBS Quote Board can be found in the following tabs on the Properties menu:

- Quote Board tab
- Hotkeys tab
- MD Trading tab
- Color tab

Quote Board tab

The **Quote Board** tab lets you customize the number of rows and columns in the **EBS Quote Board** window. You can also disable the net position field which, when enabled, appears in the upper left corner on the EBS trading pane. Alternatively, you can right-click the net postion field in the **EBS Quote Board** window to hide and show it.

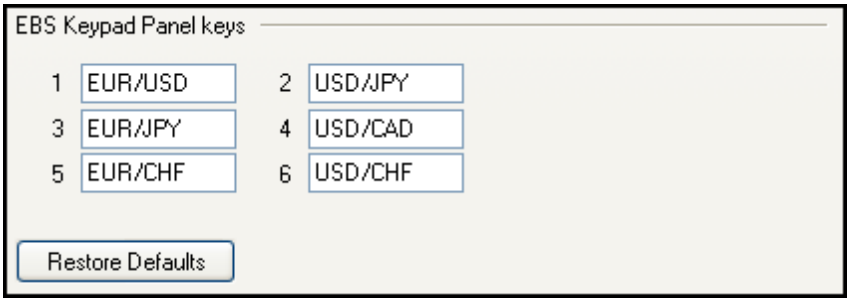


*EBS Quote Board section on the **Quote Board** tab*

The **Initial Contracts** button displays the **Defaults Contracts** window where you decide the spatial position of each contract.

Default Contracts set to 4 rows and 3 columns

The EBS Keypad Panel keys section sets a number on the EBS Keypad to bringsfocus to a contract in the **EBS Quote Board** window.



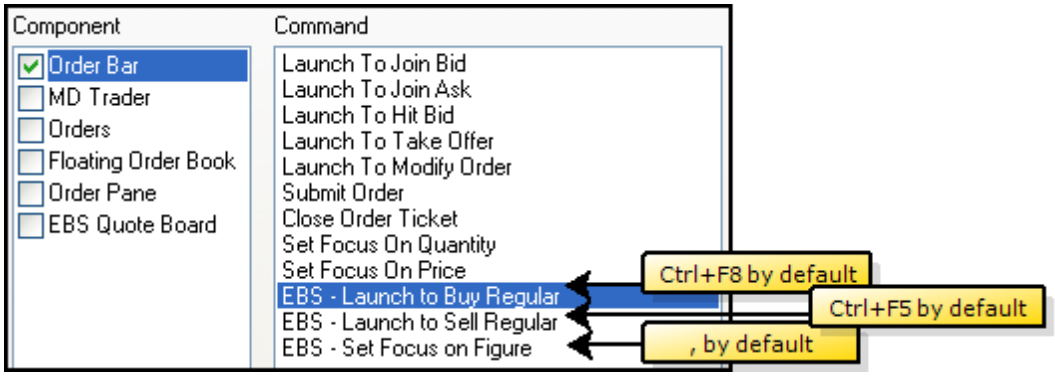
*EBS Keypad Panel keys on the **Quote Board** tab*

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Hotkeys tab

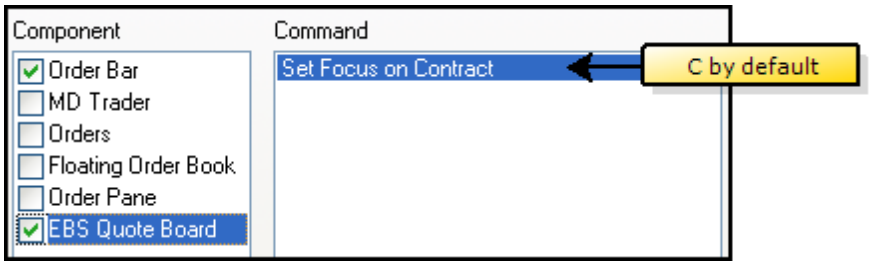
The **Hotkeys** tab lets you customize the keyboard shortcuts used for trading on the **EBS Quote Board** window.

Under the Order Bar component, set the keys used to launch Buy and Sell windows.



EBS commands in the Order Bar component

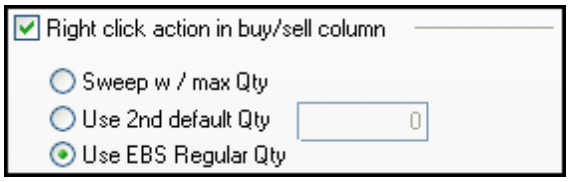
Under the EBS Quote Board component, set the key used to change the contract.



EBS Quote Board component on the Hotkeys tab

MD Trading tab

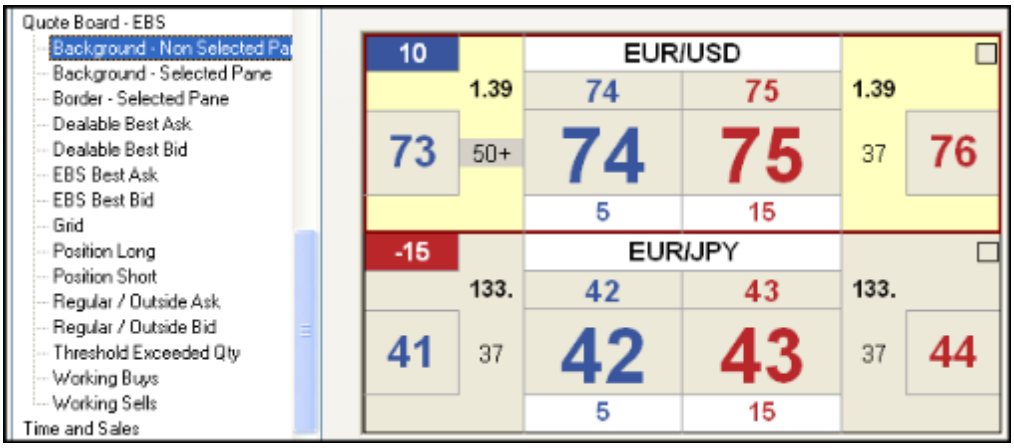
The **MD Trading** tab lets you set your mouse to seed the regularly traded quantity as designated by the EBS exchange when you right-click a price.



Use EBS Regular quantity field on the MD Trading tab

Color tab

The **Color** tab lets you customize all the colors on the EBS Quote Board window.

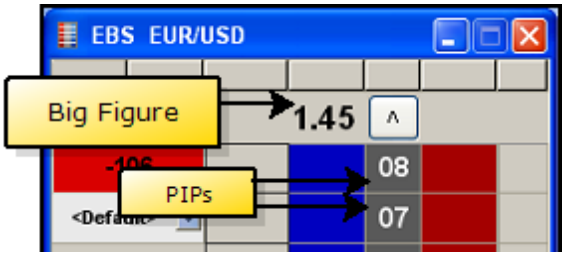


The Quote Board-EBS section on the Color tab

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

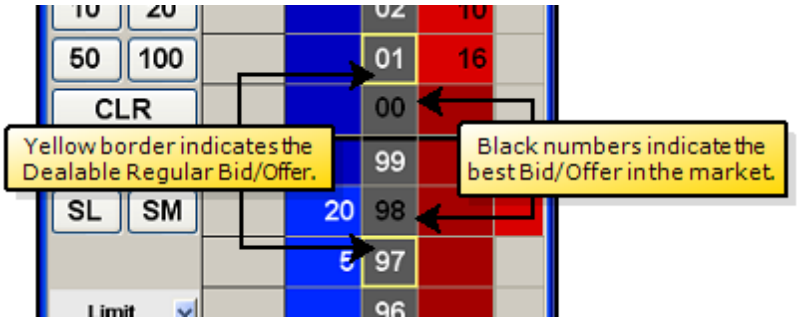
Trading EBS Contracts in MD Trader

You trade EBS products using X_TRADER in the same manner you trade other futures. However, only the most commonly traded EBS products show depth.



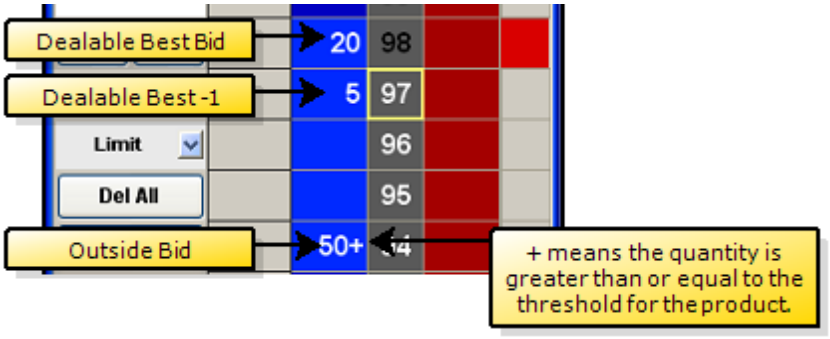
- Prices for EBS product prices display in MD Trader as PIPs within a Big Figure.
- The Big Figure appears at the top and bottom of the ladder.

Example: A EUR/USD price of 1.4502 has a Big Figure of 1.45 and PIP of 02.

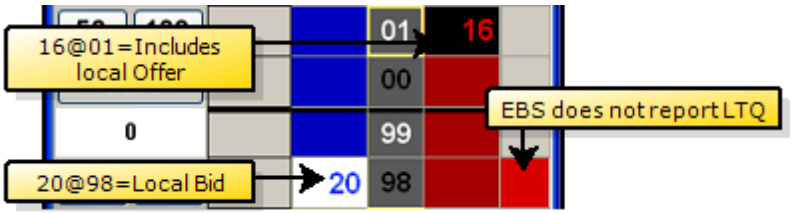


- The best Bid and Offer in the market has a black PIP. Whether you can see and trade the best Bid/Offer is restricted by EBS based on your available credit.
- The Dealable Regular Bid and Offer indicates the worst price you will fill at if you trade the normal quantity. The normal quantity is decided per contract by EBS.

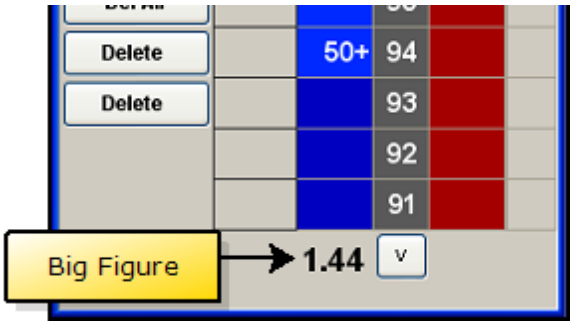
Example: In the screenshot above, if the EBS defined quantity was 25, you would need to trade at 97.



- The Dealable Best is the best price at which you can trade. The next tick away from the market (plus 1 for Sells, minus 1 for Buys) can show a zero (0). For some products EBS reports this quantity, even if it is zero.
- The outside Bid and Offer is the net or aggregate of the preceding Bids and Offers.
  - The **EBS** property on the **Trading** tab determines whether the outside quantity includes the viewable quantities at the first two tradable prices (**Aggregate** includes, **Net** does not include).
  - The plus (+) means the quantity is greater than or equal to the threshold for the product. The threshold is determined by EBS.



- When local orders placed by other members of your trading firm are included in a working quantity, the quantity is identified with swapped text and background colors.



Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

EBS Contract Notes

The following notes are specific to EBS:

- Spot FX settles two days in the future. Precious Metals are physically settled.
- EBS contracts persist from day-to-day as the same contract. However, in reality, each day is a new contract.

  Example: If you go long 1 USD/EUR on Monday and, on Tuesday, go short 1 USD/EUR--you are not considered flat. On Wednesday you settle your long position. On Thursday you settle the short position. Similarly the USD/CNY M1 settles one Month in the future.
- Markets may cross on the EBS platform. In FX terms, EBS is a 'choice' market as you may 'choose' to buy or sell at that same price. Choice markets occur when participants who do not have bilateral clearing arrangements have bids and offers at the same price.
- Depth is only supported for the nine most liquid pairs and displays three levels on those contracts.
- The minimum order size for currencies is the equivalent of 1,000,000 U.S. dollars of the base currency.

  EUR/USD : EUR = Base Currency, USD = Counter Currency

  Example: Buy 1 USD/CHF @ 1.4655 – buy 1,000,000 USD at a cost of 1,465,500 CHF. Sell 1 EUR/USD @ .9878 – sell 1,000,000 EUR for 987,800 USD.

The following notes are specific to trading EBS on X_TRADER:

- EBS orders are only live while you are connected to the exchange. Your orders are deleted from the exchange on logout or disconnect but they are held by the Gateway. All unsolicited deletes result in the order being put on hold.
- EBS only accepts GTC and IOC orders. We suggest you:
  - Set the Time In Force (TIF) for the EBS market to GTC in **Customer Defaults** window.

    - or -
  - Add a **Sticky GTC** button to MD Trader on the **MD Trading** tab in the **Properties** menu.
- If you are trading EBS through Autospreader and Autotrader, you can set your TIF for customers in the **Customer Defaults** window. All other order restrictions are ignored for Autospreader and Autotrader.
- EBS does not publish traded volume and price reporting is timesliced. In the **Time and Sales** window, EBS trades are provided without quantity and not all trades will display.
- The Estimated Position in Queue (EPIQ) column is disabled for EBS contracts.

Trading ICE

The Intercontinental Exchange (ICE) is an internet-based marketplace for the trading of OTC energy, metals, and other commodity products. ICE Futures (formerly known as IPE-the International Petroleum Exchange) electronically lists energy futures and options contracts as well.

X_TRADER supports the trading of the following products:

- ICE Futures
- ICE Cleared OTC products

Note: Contact TT Support for questions regarding the specific list of supported products.

This release does not support ICE or ICE Futures Exchange Options or ICE Bilateral Deals. Bids and offers entered into WebICE as ICE bilateral orders do not display in X_TRADER.

Clearing

The ICE Futures exchange is a standard futures exchange, which clears their own contracts.

The following options for clearing exist on the ICE exchange:

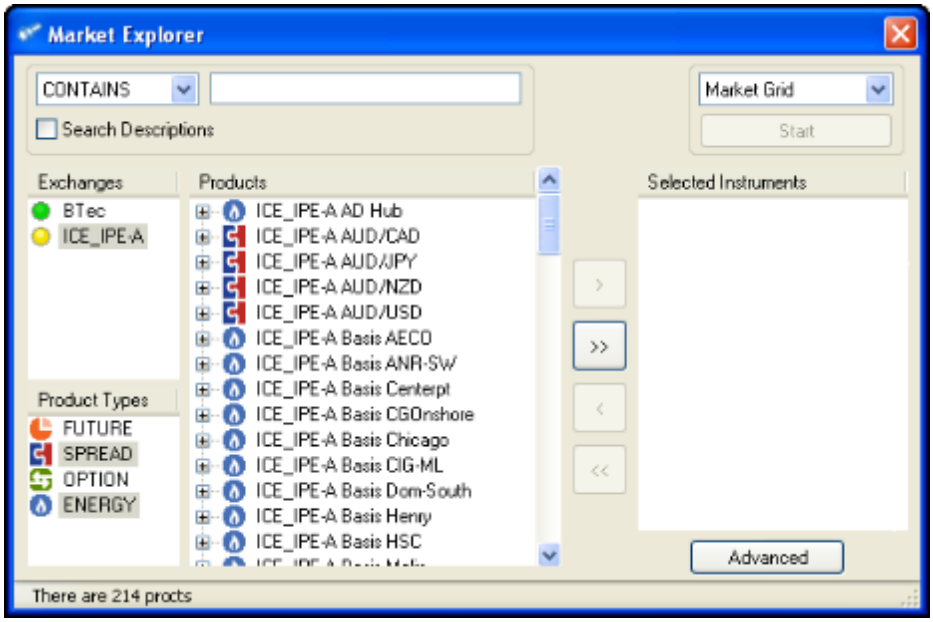
- **Cleared**: Standard clearing through a clearing firm.
- **Clearable**: Either cleared or bilateral, depending on the counter-party.
- **Bilateral**: Clearing negotiated directly between two counter-parties.

All orders entered via X_TRADER will be entered as cleared orders. The software does not support bilateral orders or bilateral fills.

All cleared contracts clear through the London Clearing House (LCH).

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Market Explorer



The ICE exchanges use a four-tier structure to define a market. They are defined by the following parameters:

- **Market Type**: Defines the product grouping (e.g., ICE Financial Gas, Brent Futures).
- **Product Name**: Equivalent to "instrument."
- **Hub**: Defines delivery location.
- **Strip**: Defines delivery period.

Because X_TRADER uses a three-tier structure in Market Explorer, it combines the ICE exchange Product Name and Hub to form the X_TRADER Product Name.

Listing

Exchange	Instrument Type	Time-strip Contract Types
ICE Futures	Future	• Monthly (Sep10, Nov10…) • Quarterly Strips (Q2-10, Q1-10…) • Seasonal Strips (Winter10, Summer10…) • Yearly Strips (Cal09, Cal10…)
ICE	Energy	• Monthly (Sep10, Nov10, etc…) • Monthly Strips (Sep10-Oct10, Jan11-Feb11, etc…) • Quarterly Strips (Q2-10, Q1-10, etc…) • Seasonal Strips (Nov10-Mar11, Winter11, etc…) • Yearly Strips (Cal08, Cal09, etc…)
ICE Spreads	Spread	• Time (Mar08/Apr08, Cal08/Cal09, etc…) • Location (WTI/Brent, Zone A/PJM, etc…) • Basis (Cash versus Futures) • Crack (Crude Oil versus Processed Products)

Implied Pricing

TT supports limited implied pricing for executing trades on ICE.

Trading

Trade products on ICE using X_TRADER in the same manner you trade other futures.

Using X_TRADER, you can view and manipulate all cleared and clearable orders that you submit via WebICE. You can likewise utilize WebICE to view and manipulate orders you submit through X_TRADER.

X_TRADER does not display orders entered in WebIce as **Bilateral**. If you submit an order on WebICE as **Bilateral** or as **Clearable**, and it executes bilaterally, X_TRADER does not process the fill.

For multi-period delivery products, you can choose to display quantities in **Contracts** or **Flow**, using the **Trading tab** on the **Properties** menu. When this property changes, all filters clear in the **Order Book**, **Trade Book**, **Time and Sales** and **Fill** windows.

Notes:

- The **Show Quantity as** property has no impact on displayed quantities for products with one delivery period.
- **Maximum Order Qty** and **Use Default Qty** options always refer to contracts. For example, if you want your default quantity for Henry Hub Natural Gas to be 7500 MMBtus, you set your **Use Default Qty** to 3.
- If you enter an invalid energy quantity in most windows, the order is not sent and you receive an invalid order quantity message in the Audit Trail. If you enter an invalid energy quantity in MD Trader, the order quantity is truncated to a valid order quantity and the order is sent to the exchange.

Switching Between Contracts and Flow

You can use Autotrader to trade energy products on the ICE exchange. If you use Autotrader or Excel links, switching between **Flow** and **Contracts** may cause equations to be incorrect. If you try to switch between **Flow** and **Contracts** while Autotrader is active, a dialog box displays that states:

Warning! *Changing this property may impact Excel & Autotrader formulas! Are you sure you want to continue?*

If you click **Yes**, X_TRADER deactivates Autotrader and pulls its orders from the market. However, Excel links remain active.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Contracts vs. Flow Examples

The following screens display products with multiple delivery periods first as Contracts, and then as Flow.

Quantities as Contracts

Quantities as Flow

Note: When quantities display in Flow for products with multiple delivery periods, the letter "K" displays in the Quantity buttons to represent 1000.

Order Type and Restrictions

You can submit orders to the ICE exchange using the following order types:

- Market (ICE Futures only)
- Limit (both ICE and ICE Futures)
- Iceberg
- Fill or Kill (FOK)
- Immediate or Cancel (IOC)

You can also set the Good til Day (GTD) Time in Force restriction.

Trading States

Trading states for ICE Futures products include:

- Pre-open
- Open
- Pre-close
- Close

Trading states for ICE products include:

- Open
- Close

All changes in trading states are reflected in X_TRADER.

Fill Window and P&L

To accurately express your position and P&L for all products that have multiple delivery periods, a new column called **Lots** is available in the Position Pane of the **Fill** window. The column is hidden by default and can be shown using the Position Pane context menu.

Notes:

- Contract size and number of lots may affect your P&L in ticks versus your P&L in currency. Your P&L in ticks may display positively or negatively when your P&L in currency may actually be flat.
- For all ICE Futures products that have only one delivery period, P&L is displayed in the same manner as all other futures.
- For contracts with different delivery units, X_TRADER does not sum positions above the contract level.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Understanding Delivery and Flow

Like standard futures, some energy contracts specify delivery of a given amount on a given day. For example, the delivery of crude oil against IPE Brent Crude futures is done in one lump sum on a single day (i.e., one delivery period). However, some energy contracts specify delivery of a given amount of energy over a specified period of time (i.e., multiple delivery periods). This is referred to as delivering flow.

Example: Power contracts specify delivery of a particular amount of electricity to be delivered onto a power grid for a given period of time. Some natural gas contracts specify delivery of a particular amount (and quality) of natural gas to be delivered into a nationwide pipeline for a given period of time.

The actual deliverable quantity of products that specify delivery in flow can vary from contract to contract. This is due to the variation in the number of days in a given month.

Example: A power product that specifies the delivery of a given amount of electricity per day for the entire delivery month will have different deliverable quantities for Sep08 (30 days) and Dec08 (31 days).

In general, the conversion between contracts, lots, and flow can be expressed as follows:

- **Contracts**: Represents entire delivery amount.
- **Lots**: Represents number of delivery periods in a contract.
- **Flow**: Represents the amount to be delivered in each delivery period.

Further Examples

All monthly IPE Brent futures contracts specify 1 delivery period consisting of 1000 barrels of crude oil. So:

- 1 contract = 1 lot = 1000 barrels per month
- 5 contracts = 5 lots = 5000 barrels per month

Example: The ICE US Henry Hub Natural Gas Jan05 contract specifies 31 delivery periods of 2500MMbtu per day. So:

- 1 contract = 31 lots = 2500MMbtu per day = 77,500 MMBtu/Contract
- 3 contracts = 93 lots = 7500MMbtu per day = 232,500 MMBtu/Contract

Example: The ICE US PJM Power Jan08 contract specifies 21 delivery periods (weekdays only) of 800MWh per day (50MW hours for 16 hours). So:

- 1 contract = 21 lots = 800 MWh per day = 16,800 MWh/Contract
- 2 contracts = 42 lots = 100MW for 16 hours per day = 1600 MWh per day = 33, 600 MWh

Trading SFE

The Sydney Futures Exchange Limited (SFE) is one of the second largest financial futures and options exchange in the Asia Pacific region. SFE provides futures and options on: interest rates, equities, currencies and commodities, with a number of its flagship products ranked in the world's top ten most actively traded products in their market sector.

The following changes were made to support trading on the SFE:

Implied Asterisk

If the first best bid or ask order is based on an implied price, an asterisk appears next to the price in the **BidPrc** or **AskPrc** columns.

Also, when viewing market depth, asterisks appear next to implied prices. The asterisk appears on both the **Market Grid**, **Floating Depth**, and **Spread Matrix** windows.

Custom Market Strategy

When trading SFE, a new strategy called Custom Market appears on the **Create Strategy** window. As you add SFE contracts to the legs in your strategy, a price column appears. You must add prices to each leg in the strategy prior to creating the strategy.

Post-Fill Account Numbers

SFE lets you add account numbers for a finite amount of time after your order is filled.

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Adding an Account Number

SFE lets you add account numbers for a finite amount of time after your order is filled. This information goes back to the SFE exchange provided you add the account number in the amount of time allotted by SFE.

You can add account numbers to filled orders on the **Fill** window.

▶ **To add an account number:**

1. From the **Control Panel**, click the **Window** menu and choose **Fill Window**.

   - or -

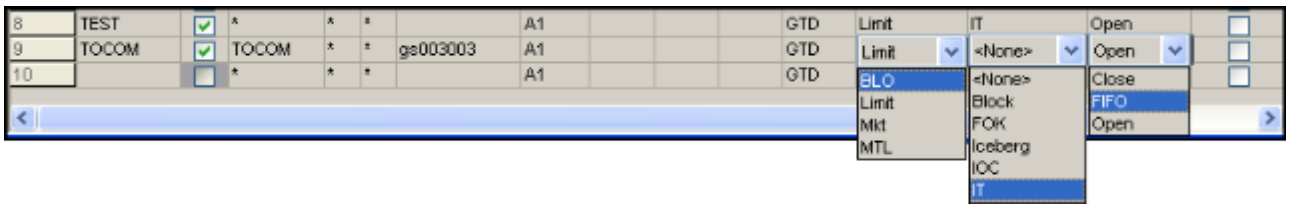
   From the **Control Panel**, click the icon.
2. Click in the **Account#** column next to the fill whose account number you want to change.
3. Type the account number.
4. Press `Enter`.

You successfully added an account number.

Trading TOCOM

The Tokyo Commodity Exchange was established in 1984 by a merger of the Tokyo Textile, Rubber and Gold Exchanges. It is Japan's largest commodity futures exchange, specializing in precious metals, oil, rubber and aluminum.

To support trading on TOCOM, X_TRADER introduces several new order types and restrictions as well as the First In First Out (FIFO) order tag. All of these settings can be set for specific customers on the **Customer Defaults** window.



See the order types below for explanations on their proper use on TOCOM:

- **Best Limit** on page 293
- **If Touched** on page 296
- **Market** on page 297
- **Market to Limit** on page 299

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Appendix: Grid Column Descriptions

This appendix contains the grid column descriptions for many windows in X_TRADER, including the **Order Book** window, the **Trade Book** window, and the **Fill** window.

You can set the default columns that appear for each window using the **Properties** menu.

Window	Property tab that sets default columns
Order Book	**Orders** tab
Fills Pane (Fill Window)	**Fill** tab
Position Pane (Fill Window)	**Fill** tab
Trade Book	**Fill** tab

Column	Description	Window
Account #	The back office account number or name as indicated in the Customer Default profile.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Acct	The account type. **Example**: Agent, Market Maker, Principal, Give-up, Unallocated.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Action	Possible actions include Add (**A**), Change (**C**), Delete (**D**), Delete all your orders (**E**), Hold (**H**), Inquire (**I**), Update (**U**), Replace/Cancel button (**R**), Resubmit to remove from hold (**S**).	Order Book
Ask	The ask price.	Position Pane
AvgBuy	The average Buy price.	Position Pane
AvgPrice	The average price of the fill.	Trade Book
AvgSell	The average Sell price.	Position Pane
B/S	Buy or Sell in reference to an order.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Bid	The bid price.	Position Pane
Buy	The Buy totals.	Position Pane
BuyQty	The total Buy quantity.	Position Pane
C	Indicates confirmation of a fill by an operator.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
C/P	Call or Put in reference to the order. This designates your right to buy (call) or sell (put) a contract at a specified price and up to a specified date.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Close	The closing price.	Position Pane
Clr Mbr	Clearing member. Designates a member firm of a clearing house through which trades settle.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Cntr Party	Your counter party on the trade.	Trade Book, Fills Pane

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Column	Description	Window
Conf GroupID	The confirmed group ID.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Conf IP	The confirmed IP address.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Conf MbrID	The confirmed member ID.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Conf Time	The time at which you confirmed your order filled, as recorded by the Fill server, using the **Confirm Fill(s)** option on the context menu.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Conf TraderID	The confirmed trader ID.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Contract	The month and year of expiration for the contract or spread. In the **Fill** Window Position pane, the spread positions are for display purposes and do NOT affect risk calculations. Risk calculates using the spread's legs.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Cur	The currency used in the trade. **Example**: USD = United States Dollar	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Delete	Deletes a single line order.	Order Book
Exch / Exchange	The exchange on which the order was placed or filled.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fill Window
Exch Date	The date the trading host received/sent the message.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fill Window
Exch Grp	Risk manager direct user's trader ID. **Example**: Broker's Group ID = PROD	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Exch Mbr	Exchange member ID.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Exch Time	The time at which a fill is received by the exchange host or exchange gateway depending on the practice of the exchange. The time may be shown in the time zone where the exchange is located.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Exch Trd	Risk manager direct user's trader ID. **Example**: Broker's Trade ID = 001	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Exec Qty	The executed quantity of the order.	Order Book
Exp Date	The expiration month and year formatted as DDMMMYY. **Example**: 31Dec09	Order Book
Fee	Associated fee.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
FFNet	The fast fills net quantity (FF Buys-FF Sells). Refer to the **Fast Fills Pane Overview** on page 363 for details.	Position Pane
FFT2 & FFT3	Free Form Text Field 2 and 3. Values for annotation purposes by you or back office (sub-account).	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane

Column	Description	Window
Fill Type	The type of trade made, either from an outright fill or a spread order. Use this column to filter on your spread positions and view spread legs separately from the outright trades. If the outright fill is coming from a spread fill, the cell displays **Spread Fill Leg**. If not, the cell corresponds to the **Type** column.	Fills Pane
Fill/Trans	The ratio of fills to transactions on a per contract and product basis.	Position Pane
Filled Qty	The quantity filled in the order.	Trade Book
Fills	The number of fill lines on a contract and product basis.	Position Pane
GU	The member for whom a separate party completes a transaction. Used for give-up trade accounts.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
High	The high price for the day.	Position Pane
IP Address	The IP Address of the workstation the order was placed on.	Order Book
Last	The last traded price.	Position Pane
Link ID	A unique number indicating two orders are linked.	Order Book
Link Type	The kind of link identifying the relationship between orders. **Example**: OCO	Order Book
Lots	The total number of Lots for the given position. Used for Energy products (traded on the ICE exchange).	Position Pane
Low	The low price for the day.	Position Pane
NetPos	Indicates the position at the start of the day plus the difference between what you bought and sold.	Position Pane
O/C	Open or Close in reference to your position. In the **Fill** window: • **S** = A Start of Day fill. (Refer to **Start of Day Fills** on page 353) • **M** = Manual Fill from your workstation. • **A** = Manual Fill from X_RISK.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Open	The opening price.	Position Pane
Open P/L	Your open profit and loss. (Refer to **Calculating Profit and Loss** on page 357)	Position Pane
Ord Date	The date the order was placed at your workstation.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Ord Time	The time the order was processed according to your workstation.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Order No	The order number assigned by the exchange.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
P/A	Designates whether the order was filled passively or aggressively. This notation allows for a correct P/L calculation.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
P/L	Your Profit and Loss. (Refer to **Calculating Profit and Loss** on page 357)	Position Pane
PF	The order partially filled. **Example**: 5 contracts from a 10-lot order filled. Not all exchanges provide partial fill indicators. **Example**: Xetra does not provide partial fill indicators.	Trade Book, Fills Pane

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Column	Description	Window
Price	The Limit price in the Order Book. The price at which the quantity fills in the **Fill** Window. For spreads, displays the fill prices on the corresponding legs of the spread, followed by the actual fill for the spread. Spread positions and leg positions display in the **Position** pane in the **Fill** Window. The spread positions appear for information purposes only and do not affect risk calculations. (Risk is calculated using legs.) You can enable or disable spread fills in the **Fill** tab on the **Properties** menu. The property is disabled by default.	Order Book, Fills Pane
Product	The traded product's exchange symbol. **Example**: FGBL, ODAX	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Product Type	The type of product in the order. **Example**: Future, Future Spread, Option	Order Book, Fills Pane
Qty	The order quantity in the Order Book. The quantity filled in the **Fill** Window.	Order Book, Fills Pane
Row Numbers	Far left column displays row numbers.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fill Window
Rstr	The strategic restriction put on the order. **Example**: <None>, FOK, IOC	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
RstrQty	The quantity of a restricted order which behaves differently depending on the restriction. **Example**: For Minimum Volume orders, it is the quantity that needs to be in the market for the order to go to market.	Order Book
Sell	The Sell totals.	Position Pane
SellQty	The total Sell quantity.	Position Pane
Source	Where the order comes from. **Examples**: 0: Normal OS, 1: Autospreader, 2: Autotrader, 3: API (XTAPI), 4: Ext Source (Exchange), 8: TT_TRADER.	Order Book
Stlmnt	The settlement price.	Position Pane
Stop Prc	The Stop trigger price.	Order Book
Strike	The exercise price of an option.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fill Window
Submit Date	The date the order was submitted from your workstation.	Order Book
Submit Time	The time the order was submitted from your workstation. These fields may be blank after re-establishing connectivity to LIFFE CONNECT. The trading host or TT Gateway does not retain this information.	Order Book
Synth	Identifies the order as synthetic.	Order Book
TIF	The Time In Force for the order.	Order Book
Time	The time your workstation receives the fill.	Fills Pane
Time Procsd	The time the action processed by the TT Gateway.	Order Book

Column	Description	Window
Time Recvd	The time the TT Gateway received the order. These fields may be blank after re-establishing connectivity to LIFFE CONNECT. The trading host or TT Gateway does not retain this information.	Order Book
Time Sent	The time the action was sent from the workstation to the Gateway.	Order Book
Trader ID	Appears when you are running in a Multi-Broker environment and shows you P&L by each broker's MGT. The **Trader ID** column displays the MGT as a single string.	Position Pane
Trans	The total transactions on a series and product basis.	Position Pane
Trans ID	The transaction ID for fills. Used to identify the order.	Trade Book, Fills Pane
Trans/Fill	The ratio of transactions to fills on a per contract and product basis.	Position Pane
Trd Grp	Trader's or risk manager's proxy group ID. **Example**: Broker's client = SIM	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Trd ID	Trader's or risk manager's proxy trader ID. **Example**: Broker's client = 123	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Trd Mbr	Trader's or risk manager's proxy member ID. **Example**: Broker's client = TTORD	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
TT Order Key	A TT generated unique number used to track orders.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
TTStatus	The status of the order (e.g., Working, Change, Deleting, Inquiry). **Note**: If the order is in an unknown state, it is appended with a question mark (?) and the colors are inverted.	Order Book
Type	A Limit or Market type in reference to the order.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Version	Version number.	Order Book, Trade Book, Fills Pane
Work Qty	The working quantity of the order.	Order Book

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

[This page intentionally left blank]

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Index

A

About this manual 25
Accepting a Eurex Block or Volatility Order 220
Accessing
  a functional window 64
  a functional window from market explorer 168
  context sensitve help 43
  fast fills pane 363
  fill window 347
  keyboard entry window 222
  md trader 245
  order book 327
  order change dialog box 224
  quote audit trail 234
  screen minimizer 48
  time and sales 371
  trade book 365
  wholesale orders 197
  wholesale trade window 381
  workspaces 71
Account number
  adding 434
Activating a Strike or Expiration 234
  multiple 235
Adding
  account number 434
  contracts to windows 46
  event sounds 115
  high and low sound alerts 150
  manual fills 361
  price averages and accumulations to the market grid 199
  product groups 77
  spacer rows to market grid 195
  spread tables 83
  tabs to market grid or spread matrix 193
  workspaces 69
Admin Alert Messages 101
Against Actuals Trade 389
  field descriptions 390
  submitting 391
Aggregate vs Net 424
Aggressive orders 410
Alerts Manager 150
Altering Orders in the Order Book 333
Amending strategies 244
Asset allocations 402
Associating a product to a product group 80

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Audit Trail 155
  column descriptions 157
  context menu 158
  customize columns 58, 161
  exchange announcements 160
  held orders 156
  history 156
  message types 159
  order messages 41
  properties 111
  quote audit trail 234
  storing files 162
  wholesale trading messages 381
Audit Trail tab 111
AuditLog 162
Auto Centering 261
Automatic Shutdown 42
  status of quotes 236
Autospreader
  properties 145
Autospreader tab 145
Autotrader
  formulas
    tick for brokertec 414
  generating an rtd formula 202
  tick formula for brokertec 414
Average Price 357
Average Price Highlighting 261
Average Price of Open Position 253

B

Basis Trade 386
  field descriptions 387
  submitting 388
Begin Trading 29
Best Limit Order 292-293
Best Price Highlighting 196
Big figure 419, 424
BL 292-293
Block Order Type 291
Block Trade 383
  field descriptions 384
  submitting 385
Block Trading 218
  accepting a sell side 220
  inquiry 221
  modifying 219
  submitting a buy side 219
Broken Workspace 73
BrokerTec 406, 409
  hold in timer 413
  leave checkbox 413
  placing passive and aggressive orders 410
  tick formula 414
  working-up orders 412
Butterfly Condor Matrix 316
  calculations 318
  canceling working orders 312
  click trading 312
  customizing 309
  features 310
  generating 317
  properties 313
  trading 311
Buy Side Keys in MD Trader 279

C

Calculating Profit and Loss in Fill Window 357
Canceling Working Orders
  spread matrix 312
Canceling/Replacing an order in the Order Book 335
CBOT
  cross order execution 214
Centering the Market in MD Trader 253
  using the keyboard 253
Changing
  an order with the order bar 209, 336
  block trades 219
  butterfly condor matrix 309
  button size on control panel 67
  column widths 60
  customer defaults profile 90
  default colors for Excel links 200
  event sounds 115
  fonts 54
  grid text or colors 55
  hotkeys 143, 283
  order change dialog box 224
  order quantity in md trader 254
  orders in the order book 334
  product group settings 79
  quantity buttons in market window 182
  quantity buttons in md trader 275
  quantity or price using the keyboard 223
  quantity or price using the mouse 182
  quotes 233
  row heights 60
  spread matrix 309
  strategies 244
  text colors 54, 119
  text style 54
  toolbar size 67

trigger price orders in the order book 337
viewable market grid columns 186
window color 54, 119
working order spread matrix 312
working orders in md trader 255
Click Trading 215
butterfly condor matrix 311
disable 215
enable 215
set default properties 216
spread matrix 311
trading 216
Cloning
md trader 252
Closing the Order Entry Pane 184
Color tab 116
changing colors of windows or text 54, 119
Colors
coding market depth 199
creating custom 54, 119
creating custom md trader 135
quote board 324
recognizing in time and sales 375
Column descriptions
fill window 437
order book 437
trade book 437
Command Bar 61
Common Administrative Tasks 45
changing the height or rows 60
changing the width of columns 60
filtering 50
formatting fonts 53
formatting grids 57
hiding rows or columns 58
moving rows or columns 58
populating windows with contracts 46
printing in X_TRADER 62
resizing a window grid 61
restoring hidden rows or columns 59
setting the default visible columns 57
using the frame command bar 61
Confirming the status of market orders 184
Consolidating Prices 262
Context-Sensitive Help 43
Context Menus
audit trail 158
fast fills pane 364
fills pane 352
market grid 190
md trader 252
order book 331
position pane 356
quote board 325
spread matrix 315
time and sales 377
trade book 367
Contracts Disappeared 73
Contracts vs Flow 432
Control Panel 63
adding a product group 77
adding a spread table 83
alerts manager 150
associating a product to a product group 80
changing the size of the toolbar 67
copying a spread table 84
creating a workspace 69
customer defaults setup 85
deleting a product group 79
deleting a workspace 73
disassociating a product from a product group 81
finding 63
icon and menu descriptions 146
opening a functional window 64
plug-ins 151
product group setup 74
properties setup 95
removing a spread table 84
saving a spread table 84
saving a workspace 70
spread tabes setup 82
toolbar 66
window menu 64
workspace setup 68, 72
Conventions
bold 25
italics 25
keyboard 25
keyboard formats 26
Copying
md trader screen 252
spread tables 84
Copyrights 2
Created Outrights and X_TRADER 240
Creating
a link from Excel 200
asset allocation 402
butterfly condor matrix 317
custom colors 55, 120
custom colors md trader 135
customer default profiles 89
customer profile 39
prof trades 397
quotes 233
rtd formula 202
spacer rows in market grid 195

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

spread matrix 308
spread strategies 241
tabbed market grid or spread matrix 193
user-defined price column 138, 263
workspaces 69
Credit
establishing 185
Cross Orders 212
cbot 214
Cross Trading 212
enabling 212
Custom Market strategies 240
Customer Defaults 85
changing profiles 90
creating profiles 89
customer list 93
deleting profiles 90
displaying in customer list 93
features 86
field descriptions 87
market-based 91
order entry pane 94
properties 102
read-only 91
setup 85
sharing 92
ttus integration 86
uneditable 86
Customer List 93
displaying customer names 93
order entry pane 94
Customizing EBSQuote Board 420
Customizing MD Trader 273
adding sound to 273
controlling the zoom feature 278
default quantity buttons 275
moving columns 278
resizing 278
Customizing the Quantity buttons
market window 182
md trader 275

D

Data
filtering 50, 53
formatting 53
sorting in the trade book 369
Deactivating a Strike or Expiration 234
multiple 235
Dealable best 419, 424
Default hotkeys 143
Default quantity
setting in md trader 183, 257
Deleting
customer defaults profile 90
manual fills 362
orders in md trader 255
using the keyboard 285
orders in the order book 340
after the delete request is sent 341
product groups 79
quotes 235
spread or strategy 244
working orders in spread matrix 312
workspaces 73
Disable
quoting 236
Disassociating a product from a product group 81
Displaying
fill details in the trade book 368
inside market mid-point 266
screen minimizer 48
small md trader 265

E

EBS 415
Big figure 419, 424
contracts with depth 424
local bids 424
notes 426
quote board 416
customizing 420
reading 419
rules 426
Enabling
click trading 215
hotkeys 143
keyboard trading in md trader 282
market depth 198
order bar 207
quoting 231
user-defined price column in md trader 138
Entering
asset allocations 402
order into the market 40
orders using the keyboard 222, 285
buy order in md trader 284
sell order in md trader 285
prof trades 397
EPIQ 203, 272
Equity orders 293

Establishing
available credit 185
link for theoretical pricing 200
Estimated Position In Queue (EPIQ) 203, 272
Eurex
block 218, 292
fast fills information 364
quantity display 187
Eurodollar Options 237
Euronext and Guaranteed Crossing 401
Example
floating depth window 206
spread matrix 310
Examples
consolidating prices 262
implied and outright combination 226
implied in 227
implied on implieds 228
implied out 227
implied quantities 228
laser line 277
mixing implied with direct markets 226
profit and loss 357
spread matrix outright price display 123
Excel
change default colors in market grid 200
creating a link from 200
timing of updates 200
using for theoretical and implied pricing 200
Excel Links
laser line in md trader 277
using in md trader 276
Exchange for swap 392
field descriptions 393
submitting 394
Exchanges
BrokerTec 406
EBS 415
ICE 427
order types 292
recognizing active 37
SFE 433
TOCOM 435
Executing
an order 180
Exiting 42
Expiration
(de)activating 234
(de)activating multiple 235
Export Data 158, 331, 352, 367

F

Fast Fills Pane 363
context menu 364
eurex information 364
notes 363
Field descriptions
fill window 437
order book 437
trade book 437
Field Descriptions
against actuals trade window 390
audit trail 157
audit trail tab 111
autospreader tab 145
basis trade window 387
block trade window 384
color tab 116
fill tab 106
flex options trade window 395
manual fills 360
market explorer 164
market explorer advanced 165
market grid 187
md advanced tab 138
md color tab 135
md display tab 131
md trader 246
md trading tab 125
order book top 329
order entry pane 172
order entry tab 102
orders tab 109
quote board tab 142
sounds tab 113
spread matrix tab 121
time and sales 372
time and sales tab 124
trading tab 96
File menu 147
Fill or Kill 292
Fill tab 106
Fill window
column descriptions 437
Fill Window 347
adding accont number 434
fast fills pane 363
fills alert dialog box 349
fills pane overview 350
manual fills 359
position pane 354
Fills Alert dialog box 349

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Fills pane
  column descriptions 437
Fills Pane 350
  context menu 352
  grid summary 351
  start of day fills 353
Filtering 50
  clearing 51
  clearing all 51
  effects on X_TRADER 53
  on quantity for specific contracts 378
  procedures 50
  removing auto filters 52
  saving 50
  setting 50
  setting auto filters 52
  time and sales 377
Fixing a Workspace 73
Flex Options Trade 395
  field descriptions 395
  submitting 396
Floating Depth Window 205
  examples 206
Floating Order Book 342
  keyboard 345
  using 343
Floating order entry
  quote board 325
Floating Order Entry 176
  quote board 325
  using multiple 179
Flow 432
FOK 292
Font
  formatting 53
Forex 415
Formatting
  fonts 53
  grid text or colors 55
  grids 57
  quantity buttons 182
  quantity buttons md trader 275
Formulas
  rtd generating 202
Frame Command Bar 61
Frequently asked questions 27

G

Game Pad Control in MD Trader 290
Generating
  butterfly condor matrix 317
  rtd formula 202
  spread matrix 308
Getting Started 29
  audit trail messages 41
  automatic shutdown 42
  begin trading 29
  context sensitive help 43
  creating a customer profile 39
  entering a market order 40
  exiting 42
  logging in
    exchange 30
    exchange without logging out 30, 34
    with different ID 30
  production mode 29
  simulation mode 29
  status colors 37
  support 28
  universal log in 34
  X_TRADER Pro 38
GIS 173, 339
Global Client Support Center 28
Grid
  changing 60
  formatting 57
Grid column descriptions 437
GTC 173, 339
GTD 173, 339

H

Held Orders 337
  audit trail messages 156
Help
  context sensitivity 43
  getting support 28
  menu 149
Hiding
  partial fills in the trade book 368
  rows or columns 58, 376
  windows 48
Highlighting in the Market Grid 196
Hold in timer 413
Holding Orders in the Order Book 337
Hotkeys 143, 279, 283

I

ICE 427
  understanding flow 432

Iceberg 294
characteristics 294
deleting 294
rounding 294
If Touched 292, 296
Immediate or Cancel 291
Implied Prices or Quantities 225
Implied In 227
Implied on Implieds 228
Implied Out 227
in X_TRADER 225
Implied Pricing
establishing a link for 200
using excel for 200
Implieds
quantities 228
Index 443
Indicator Columns in MD Trade 276
Invert price column 138
IOC 292
IT 292, 296

K

Keep MD Trader on top 266
Keyboard
centering the market in md trader 253
controlling quantity or price 223
EBS default keys 416
entering orders in the market grid 222
floating order book 345
md trader 279
procedures 284
unrestricted 281
order bar 210
procedures in md trader 279
combo dime 289
combo join 289
deleting orders 285
dime the bid 288
dime the offer 288
enabling keys 282
entering a buy 284
entering a sell 285
entering order quantity 285
hitting the bid 287
join the bid 288
join the offer 289
loading the net position 286
sending a market order 286
setting the limit price 286
sweeping the market 287
taking the offer 287
trading in the market grid 222

L

Laser Line 277
example 277
Leave checkbox 413
Legal notices 2
License 38
LIFFE Wholesale Trading 381
against actuals 389
audit trail messages 381
basis 386
block 383
euronext and guaranteed crossing 401
exchange for swaps 392
flex options 395
strategy trades 399
trading types 382
Limit If Touched 292, 296
Limit on Close 291
Limit on Open 291
Limit to Market 291
LIT 292, 296
Live-only contracts 204
Live only 204
LOC 292
Local bids in EBS 424
Local MD Trader Properties 260
Locking windows 48
Logging in
exchange 30, 34
exchange without logging out 30, 34
with different ID 30
LOO 292
LTM 292

M

Making a Block or Volatility Order Inquiry 221
Making a trade 180
Managing a Startup Workspace 72
Managing Quote Board Properties 324
Managing TradeSounds 129
Manual conventions 25
Manual Fills 359
adding 360
deleting 362
field descriptions 360
saving 362

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Market-based customer defaults 91
Market Depth 198
  color coding 199
  enable 198
Market Explorer 163
  advanced field descriptions 165
  field descriptions 164
  opening a window 168
  populating a window 168
  renaming contracts 167
  searching for a product 166
Market Grid 186
  adding price averages and accumulations to 199
  context menu 190
  customize columns 186
  establishing a link for theoretical and implied pricing 200
  field descriptions 187
  floating depth window 205
  generating an rtd formula 202
  highlighting in 196
  opening wholesale orders 197
  price trend indicators 197
  quoting additions to the market grid pane 229
  spacer rows 195
  tabbed grids 193
  using excel for theoretical and implied pricing 200
  using the market depth feature 198
Market If Touched 292, 296
Market Limit Market 103, 127, 291
Market On Close 292, 298
Market On Open 292, 297
Market order 297
Market to Limit 292, 299
Market Window 171
  butterfly condor matrix 316
  click trading 215
  cross trading 212
  eurex block trading 218
  implied prices and quantities 225
  market grid 186
  order change dialog box 224
  order entry pane 172
  order types and restrictions 291
  quoting overview 229
  spread matrix 307
  spread strategies 239
Match Price 358
MD Advanced tab 138, 264
MD Color tab 135
MD Display tab 131
MD Trader 245
  adding sound 273
  adding time and sales 274
  auto centering 261
  average price highlighting 261
  average price of open position 253
  changing order quantity 254
  changing working orders 255
  consolidating prices 262
  context menu 252
  control the zoom 278
  creating user-defined price column 138, 263
  customer profile 256
  customizing 273
    quantity buttons 275
  default quantity 183, 257
  deleting orders 285
  excel links in 276
  features 249
  field descriptions 246
  game pad control 290
  indicator columns 276
  inside market mid-point 266
  keep on top 266
  keyboard maps in 279
    buy side 279
    functions 279
    sell side 279
    unrestricted 281
  keyboard procedures in 279
    centering the market 253
    combo dime 289
    combo join 289
    deleting orders 285
    dime the bid 288
    dime the offer 288
    enabling keys 282
    entering a buy 284
    entering a sell 285
    entering order quantity 285
    hitting the bid 287
    join the bid 288
    join the offer 289
    loading the net position 286
    sending a market order 286
    setting the limit price 286
    sweeping the market 287
    taking the offer 287
  laser line 277
  limit price 286
  maximum trade quantity 270
  moving columns 278
  net change indicator 256
  one-click trading 267
  order types and restrictions 291
  populating 250

properties 260
local 260
resizing 278
sending an order 286
setting time in force 258
small md trader 265
stop orders 268
sweeping the market 287
text and grid colors 259
trade quantity 257
trading out a position 270
using 253
MD Trading tab 125
Mid-point in MD Trader 266
Minimizer 48
Minimum Volume 293, 300
MIT 292, 296
MKT 297
MLM 103, 127, 292
MOC 292, 298
Modifying a Eurex Block Order 219
MOO 292, 297
Moving
md trader columns 278
rows or columns 58
MTL 292, 299
MTL-IT 292, 296
Mutual Offset order 181
MV 293, 300

N

NDFs 415
Net change 256
Non-deliverable forwards 415

O

OCO 300
One-click Trading in MD Trader 267
Opening
a functional window 64
a functional window from market explorer 168
context sensitve help 43
fast fills pane 363
fill window 347
keyboard entry window 222
md trader 245
order book 327
order change dialog box 224
quote audit trail 234
time and sales 371
trade book 365
wholesale orders 197
wholesale trade window 381
workspaces 71
Order bar 143, 207
keyboard trading 210
modifying an order 209, 336
Order book
column descriptions 437
Order Book 327
altering orders 333
canceling and replacing orders 335
changing trigger price orders 337
context menus 331
deleting orders 340
field descriptions top 329
floating order book 342
grid summary 330
holding orders 337
remove stale orders 332
status inquiries 332
time in force (tif) 339
trader identification 328
Order cancels order 300
Order Change dialog box 224
using 224
Order Entry Pane 172
available credit 185
closing 184
control quantity and price with keyboard 223
control quantity and price with mouse 182
executing an order 180
field descriptions 172
floating order entry 176
multiple 179
mutual offset order 181
order status 184
quantity buttons 182
synthetic disclosed quantity orders 185
Order Entry tab 102
Order Types and Restrictions 291-292
best limit order (BL) 293
cross 212
iceberg 294
if touched 296
market 297
market on open 297
market to limit 299
minimum volume 300
order cancels order 300
stop 303
trailing stops 305

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Orders
altering in the order book 333
canceling/replacing in the order book 335
confirming status 184
deleting in order book 340
holding in the order book 337
quoting 229
remove stale from order book 332
status inquiries 332
Orders tab 109

P

P and L 357
P&L 357
Passive orders 410
Pinning rows 204
Placing passive and aggressive orders 410
Plug-ins 151
Populating
a functional window 168
market grid 168
md trader 250
quote board 320
time and sales 373
windows with contracts 46
Position pane
column descriptions 437
Position Pane 354
calculating profit and loss 357
context menu 356
grid summary 355
properties 106
Price Changing 182
Price Trend Indicators 197
Printing 62
Product Group
adding 77
associating a product 80
changing settings 79
deleting 79
disassociating a product 81
field descriptions 75
setup 74
Production Mode 29
Prof trades 397
Profit and Loss 357
Properties 95
audit trail tab 111
autospreader tab 145
color tab 116
EBSQuote Board 420
fill tab 106
hotkeys tab 143
md advanced 138, 263
md color tab 135
md display tab 131
md trading tab 125
order entry tab 102
orders tab 109
quote board tab 142
sounds tab 113
spread matrix tab 121
time and sales tab 124
trading tab 96

Q

Quantity or Price
controlling with keyboard 223
controlling with mouse 182
Questions 28
Quote Audit Trail 234
Quote board
property 413
Quote Board 319
color properties 324
context menu 325
features 320
floating order entry 325
managing properties 324
populating 320
reading 323
using floating order entry with 325
Quote Board tab 142
Quoting 229
activating a strike or expiration 234
additions to the market grid 229
deactivating a strike or expiration 234
deleting quotes 235
disabling 236
editing 233
enabling 231
generating 233
market mode 229
sending 233
status at shutdown 236
test mode 229
tracking quotes 234

R

Read-only customer defaults 91

Reading
  md trader net change indicator 256
  md trader text and grid colors 259
  quote board 323
  spread matrix 310
  time and sales window 375
Recognizing
  active exchanges 37
Recognizing Color Codes in Time and Sales 375
Recreating a Spread Strategy 243
Related documentation 26
Removing
  event sounds 115
  fast fills 363
  spread tables 84
  stale orders 332
Renaming an Existing Strategy 243
Renaming contracts 167
Resizing
  md trader 265
  toolbar 67
  window grid 61
Restoring contract names 167
Restoring Hidden Rows or Columns 59
Restrictions 291
RTD Formulas 202

S

Saving
  manual fills 362
  time and sales information 378
  workspaces 70
Screen minimizer 48
Searching for a Product 166
Selecting a Customer Profile in MD Trader 256
Sell Side Keys in MD Trader 279
Send quote order property 413
Setting
  auto filters 52
  default quantity in md trader 183, 257
  default visible columns 57
  filters 50
  maximum trade quantity in md trader 270
  md trader properties 260
  outright or spread price 313
  time in force in md trader 258
  trade quantity in md trader 257
Settings menu 148
SFE 433
SFEcustom market strategies 240
SGX
  market to limit 292, 299
  MTL 292, 299
Sharing
  customer defaults 92
Simulation Mode 29
Sorting the Trade Book 369
Sound tab 113
  adding an event sound 115
  adding to md trader 273
Sounds
  adding high and low alerts 150
  adding to md trader 273
  tradesounds 129
Spacer rows 195
Spread Matrix 307
  butterfly condor 316
  calculations 314
  canceling working orders 312
  click trading 312
  context menu 315
  customizing 309
  example 310
  features 310
  floating depth window 205
  generating 308
  implied quantites 228
  outright price example 123
  properties 313
  reading 310
  set outright or spread price 313
  tabbed 193
  trading 311
Spread Matrix tab 121
Spread Strategies 239
  adding 242
  created outrights and X_TRADER 240
  creating 241
  deleting 244
  recreating 243
  renaming an existing 243
  SFE custom market 240
  trading with 242
Spread Table
  adding 83
  copying 84
  removing 84
  saving 84
  setup 82
Start of Day Fills 353
Starting Plug-ins 151
Startup Workspaces 72

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Status
confirming market orders 184
inquiries 332
of exchanges 37
of quotes at shutdown 236
Stop Order 291, 303
in md trader 268
Stop trigger 268, 303
Storing audit trail 162
Strategies 239
adding 242
amending 244
creating 241
deleting 244
recreating 243
renaming 243
trading with 242
Strategy Wholesale Orders 399
Strike
(de)activating 234
(de)activating multiple 235
Submitting
a mutual offset order 181
against actuals trade 391
basis trade 388
block trade 385
eurex block order 219
flex options trade 396
Support 28
Synthetic Disclosed Quantity Orders 185

T

Tabbed windows 193
Table of contents iii
Theoretical Pricing
establishing a link for 200
using excel 200
Tick Formula 414
TIF 173, 339
Time and Sales 377
color codes 375
context menu 377
field descriptions 372
filtering on quantity of rspecific contracts 378
filters 377
hiding columns 376
in md trader 274
overview 371
populating 373
properties 379
reading 375
saving information 378
Time and Sales tab 124
Time In Force 173, 339
md trader 258
Timed Orders 291
Timing of Excel Updates 200
TOCOM 435
best limit order 292-293
BL 292-293
if touched 292, 296
IT 292, 296
market order 297
market to limit 292, 299
MKT 297
MTL 292, 299
Tokyo Commodities Exchange 435
Toolbar 66
changing size 67
Tracking Quotes 234
Trade book
column descriptions 437
grid summary 366
Trade Book 365
context menu 367
detail pane 366
display fill details 368
partial fill pane 366
partial fills 366, 368
sorting data 369
summary pane 366
TradeList 274
Trader Identification in Order Book 327
TradeSounds 129
Trading
BrokerTec 406
EBS 415
EBSQuote Board 416
eurodollar options 237
ICE 427
in yield 138
out a position in md trader 270
SFE 433
specialty exchanges 405
TOCOM 435
with a spread or strategy 242
with the butterfly condor matrix 311
with the keyboard in md trader 279
with the order bar 144, 207
with the spread matrix 311
Trading tab 96
admin alert messages 101
implied and outright combination example 226
implied with direct markets example 226

implieds in X_TRADER 225
Trailing stops 305
TStop 305
TT Minimizer 48
TT User Setup 86
TT_TRADER
exiting 42
TTUS 86

U

Unrestricted Keyboard Functions in MD Trader 281
User-Defined Price column 138, 263
Using
click trading in market grid 216
excel for theoretical and implied pricing 200
excel links in md trader 276
floating depth window 205
floating order book 343
floating order entry 176
multiple 179
frame command bar 61
laser line in md trader 277
market depth 198
mouse to control zoom 278
order bar 143, 207
order change dialog box 224
screen minimizer 48
tabbed market grid 193
tradesounds 129
Using MD Trader 253
average price of open position 253
centering the market 253
changing the order quantity 254
changing working orders 255
customer profile 256
deleting orders 285
local md trader properties 260
net change indicator 256
setting the default quantity 183, 257
setting the maximum trade quantity 270
setting the time in force 258
setting the trade quantity 257
text and grid colors 259

V

Viewing
audit trail history 156
EBS contracts with depth 419, 424
live-only contracts 204
market depth 198
profit and loss 357
time and sales 377
your estimated position in queue 203, 272
Vola 293, 305
Volatility Order
accept 220
inquiry 221
Volatility orders 293, 305

W

Wholesale Trading 381
against actuals 389
asset allocations 402
audit trail messages 381
basis 386
block 383
euronext and guaranteed crossing 401
exchange for swaps 392
flex options 395
prof trades 397
strategy trades 399
trading types 382
Window menu 64
Working-up orders 412
Workspace 68
creating 69
deleting 73
fixing 73
introduction 40, 68
multiple 68
opening 71
saving 70
setup 68
startup 72

X

X_TRADER
automatic shutdown 42
exiting 42
introduction 25
login 30
printing 62
trading system 27
universal login 34
X_TRADER Pro 27, 38

Trading Technologies International, Inc. Proprietary and Confidential Information

Y

Yield 138